

DFSMS Object Access Method Planning, Installation, and Storage Administration Guide for Tape Libraries

DFSMS Object Access Method Planning, Installation, and Storage Administration Guide for Tape Libraries

Note

Before using this information and the product it supports, be sure to read the general information under "Notices" on page 299.

Second Edition, March 2002

This edition applies to Version 1 Release 3 of z/OS™ (5694-A01) and to all subsequent releases and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions.

This edition replaces SC35-0427-00.

Order publications through your IBM® representative or the IBM branch office serving your locality. Publications are not stocked at the address below.

IBM welcomes your comments. A form for readers' comments may be provided at the back of this publication, or you may address your comments to the following address:

International Business Machines Corporation
RCF Processing, Department M86/050
5600 Cottle Road
San Jose, CA 95193-0001
United States of America

IBMLINK from US: STARPUBS at SJEVM5
IBMLINK from Canada: STARPUBS at TORIBM
IBM Mail Exchange: USIB3VVD at IBMMAIL
Internet: starpubs@us.ibm.com

If you would like a reply, be sure to include your name, address, telephone number, or FAX number.

Make sure to include the following in your comment or note:

- Title and order number of this book
- Page number or topic related to your comment

When you send information to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute the information in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

© **Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 1993, 2002. All rights reserved.**

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

Figures	ix
Tables	xi
About This Book	xiii
Required Product Knowledge	xiii
Referenced Publications	xiii
Accessing z/OS DFSMS Books on the Internet	xiv
Using LookAt to look up message explanations	xiv
Accessing Licensed Books on the Web	xv
How to Send Your Comments	xvi
How to Read Syntax Diagrams	xvi
Summary of Changes	xix
Summary of Changes for SC35-0427-01 z/OS Version 1 Release 3	xix
New Information	xix
Changed Information	xix
Chapter 1. Introduction to Tape Library Management	1
Automated Tape Storage	1
Automated Tape Library	2
Manual Tape Storage	2
Manual Tape Library	2
Object Access Method Support for Tape Libraries	3
ISMF Role with Tape Libraries	3
Installation Storage Management Policy Overview	4
System Groups in an SMS Configuration	5
Storage Groups and Automated Class Selections	5
Pre-ACS Routine Exit	6
Integrated Catalog Facility and the Tape Configuration Database	6
MVS Hardware Configuration Definition	7
Types of Tape Volumes	7
Private Tape Management	7
Scratch Tape Management	8
VTS Stacked Tape Management	8
Duplicate Volume Management	8
TotalStorage Automated Tape Library (3495) Subsystem Attachment	8
High Capacity Input and Output Facility	9
External High-Capacity Input and Output Facility	9
Manual Mode Terminal	10
Library Manager Application	10
Convenience Input and Output Facility	10
TotalStorage Automated Tape Library (3494) Subsystem Attachment	10
Cartridge Storage Cells	11
Tape Subsystems	11
Convenience Input and Output Station	12
High Capacity Input/Output Facility	12
Library Manager Application	12
Virtual Tape Server Subsystem of the ATLDS	13
Emulating 3490-Type Tape Devices (Virtual Devices)	13
Emulating 3490-Type Cartridges (Virtual Volumes)	14
VTS Subsystem Import and Export Functions	14
Tape Volume Cache	14

Storage Management of the Tape Volume Cache	15
Improved Cache Management	15
Deleting Expired Virtual Tape Server Logical Volume Data	15
Maintaining Data Fragments from Migrated Volumes	16
Fast Response for Nonspecific Mount Requests.	16
Using the 3590 Storage Capacity	16
Logical Library Partitioning	16
Operator Interface.	17
Logical Volume Inventory	17
Peer-to-Peer Virtual Tape Server	17
Geographically Dispersed Parallel Sysplex Support for Peer-to-Peer VTS	18
Entering a Tape Cartridge into a Tape Library.	19
Importing Logical Volumes into a VTS Subsystem	19
Checking the Volume Serial Number for Uniqueness	22
Using Global Resource Serialization with Cartridge Entry Processing	23
Using Global Resource Serialization in a Manual Tape Library	24
Tape Volume Requirements	24
Volume Serial Number Restrictions	25
Ejecting a Tape Cartridge from a Tape Library	25
Ejecting a Logical Volume from a VTS	26
Exporting Logical Volumes from a VTS Subsystem	27
Chapter 2. Planning for the Tape Library Support	31
Analyzing Your Processing Environment	31
Hardware	31
Manual Tape Library Hardware Considerations	33
Managing Multiple Media Formats	33
Tape Device Selection Information.	34
Software Volume Categories	35
TCDB Volume Error Status Field and Software Error Category in AT LDS	36
TCDB Volume Error Status Field and the MTL	37
TCDB Volume Expiration Date	37
Console Name Message Routing	38
Sharing a Tape Library Among Multiple Systems	39
Partitioning Tape Libraries among Multiple Sysplexes.	40
Sharing Tape Volumes between an SMSplex and a Non-MVS Platform	43
DFSMSrmm Support for Sharing a Tape Library Dataserver	44
Chapter 3. Installing Your Tape Library Support.	45
Verifying Prerequisites	45
Manual Tape Library Considerations	45
Peer-to-Peer VTS Subsystem Considerations	45
VTS Import/Export Considerations.	46
TDSI Coexistence Considerations	46
3590 Model E Coexistence Considerations	46
Considerations When Running MVS/ESA as a Guest under VM/ESA®	47
Tape Library Installation Checklist	47
Installation Procedures	48
Building the Library Inventory	49
Changing System Libraries	49
Creating the Global Resource Serialization Ring	51
Creating the Tape Configuration Database.	52
Creating the Hardware Configuration	54
IPLing the System.	55
Creating the SMS Definitions.	55
Creating the Installation Exit Routines	57

Validating the Configuration	57
Activating the SMS Configuration	58
Starting the OAM Address Space	58
Varying the Library Online	58
Display and Set the Cartridge Loader Media Type	58
Running the Job Stream	59
Library Subsystem Modifications	59
Adding Subsystems to a Library	59
Moving Subsystems Within a Library	60
Deleting Subsystems From a Library	60
Chapter 4. Defining and Monitoring Your Configuration.	63
Monitoring and Maintaining the Tape Configuration.	63
Typical Library Management Functions	63
Monitoring and Maintaining SMS Library Definitions	65
Changing z/OS Construct Definitions	65
Maintaining Tape Storage Group Definitions	65
Changing ACS Routines	65
Establishing Recovery Procedures.	66
Recovering Volume Catalogs.	66
Recreating Library Entries	66
Recreating Volume Entries	66
Disaster Recovery Site Considerations	66
TCDB Procedure for Retrieving Data from a Disabled IBM Automated Tape Library	67
Altering Private Tape Configuration Database Records	67
Changing from SMS-Managed to Non-SMS-Managed Requests	68
Changing the Use Attribute of Scratch Volumes	68
Using the Sample Exit for Volume Not In Library (CBRUXVNL)	69
Library Manager Database Volume List	69
Returning the Library Manager to an Operational Status.	69
Chapter 5. Operating the OAM Address Space	71
Overview of Operator Tasks	71
Message Format Conventions	71
Starting OAM	72
Varying a Tape Library Online or Offline.	73
Restarting OAM	74
Varying Tape Drives Online or Offline.	75
Ejecting a Specific Tape Volume	75
Specifying the Shelf Location.	76
Auditing a Volume.	77
Entering a Tape Volume into an MTL	78
Importing Tape Volumes into a VTS	78
Exporting Tape Volumes from a VTS	79
Disabling Cartridge Entry Installation Exit Processing	79
Re-enabling Installation Exit Processing.	80
Displaying the Cartridge Loader Scratch Media Type	81
Setting the Cartridge Loader Scratch Media Type	81
Assigning Categories to ATLDS Cartridge Loaders.	82
Assigning Media Types to MTL Cartridge Loaders	82
Media Selection in an ATLDS	82
Media Selection in an MTL	82
Displaying OAM Status	82
Displaying Library Status	85
Displaying Library Connectivity	86

Displaying Library Detail Status	87
Displaying Tape Drive Status	91
Displaying Storage Group Status	95
Displaying Tape Volume Status	97
Displaying Outstanding OAM Messages	101
Stopping OAM	102
Capturing OAM Diagnostic Data	102
Querying Active and Waiting OAM Tape Library Requests	103
Chapter 6. LCS External Services	109
Library Control System (LCS) External Services	109
Change Use Attribute (CUA)	109
Manual Cartridge Entry (MCE).	109
Cartridge Eject (EJECT)	109
Query Volume Residence (QVR)	110
Test Volume Eligibility (TVE)	110
Export Logical Volumes (EXPORT)	110
Import Logical Volumes (IMPORT)	110
Peer-to-Peer Mode Control (PTPMC)	110
Peer-to-Peer Data (PTPDATA).	110
CBRXLCS Macro Interface	111
Changing the Use Attribute of a Volume	111
Entering Cartridges into a Manual Tape Library	115
Ejecting a Cartridge.	120
Querying the Residence of a Volume	124
Testing the Eligibility of a Volume.	128
Exporting Logical Volumes from a VTS	130
Importing Logical Volumes into a VTS	131
Changing Library Operating Modes (Peer-to-Peer VTS Mode Control)	133
Obtaining Operational Mode Settings (Peer-to-Peer VTS Data).	137
CBRXLCS Assembler Macro Usage.	139
CBRXLCS Return Codes.	139
CBRXLCS Execution Environment	140
LCS External Services Parameter List (LCSPL)	141
Tape Data Information (CBRTDI Macro)	151
Tape Volume Information (CBRTVI Macro)	153
Tape Device Selection Information	157
Chapter 7. Installation Exits	159
Change Use Attribute Installation Exit (CBRUXCUA)	159
Cartridge Entry Installation Exit (CBRUXENT)	166
Cartridge Eject Installation Exit (CBRUXEJC)	174
Export Completion Processing.	176
Volume Not in Library Installation Exit (CBRUXVNL).	182
Invoking the Installation Exit	183
Processing Options for the Installation Exit	184
Logical Volume Considerations	184
Entering Tape Volumes in the Library Using the Installation Exit	184
Possible Error Conditions	185
Job Step Setup	185
Device Allocation.	186
Library Mount Processing	187
Appendix A. SAMPLIB Members	195
Sample Library Members.	195
SAMPLIB Member CBRSP LCS	196

SAMPLIB Member CBRSPUXC	209
SAMPLIB Member CBRSPUXE	217
SAMPLIB Member CBRSPUXJ	224
SAMPLIB Member CBRSPUXV	231
SAMPLIB Member CBRAPROC	245
SAMPLIB Member CBRSPSIM	246
SAMPLIB Member CBRSPPIIM	248
SAMPLIB Member CBRSPSXP	251
SAMPLIB Member CBRSPXP	254
Appendix B. Using ISMF Panels to Define and Monitor Your Configuration	257
ISMF for the Storage Administrator	257
Defining a Tape Library	257
Displaying Tape Library Attributes	264
Redefining a Tape Library	267
Altering a Tape Library	270
Copying Tape Library Definitions	273
Deleting a Tape Library Definition	274
Monitoring and Maintaining Tape Volumes	275
ISMF Mountable Tape Volume Application	276
Creating a List of Tape Libraries	283
Auditing Volumes in an Automated Tape Library	286
Altering the Volume Record	289
Ejecting a Volume from a Tape Library	295
Appendix C. Accessibility	297
Using assistive technologies	297
Keyboard navigation of the user interface.	297
Notices	299
Programming Interface Information	300
Trademarks.	300
Glossary	301
Index	307

Figures

1.	IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3495)	9
2.	IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) L10 Frame	11
3.	Software Volume Categories	36
4.	Sharing a Tape Library among Multiple Systems	39
5.	Partitioning a Tape Library	41
6.	CBRXLCS CUA Assembler H Macro Syntax	111
7.	CBRXLCS MCE Assembler H Macro Syntax	116
8.	CBRXLCS EJECT Assembler H Macro Syntax	120
9.	CBRXLCS QVR Assembler H Macro Syntax	124
10.	CBRXLCS TVE Assembler H Macro Syntax	128
11.	CBRXLCS EXPORT Assembler H Macro Syntax.	130
12.	CBRXLCS IMPORT Assembler H Macro Syntax	132
13.	Peer-to-Peer VTS Mode Control (PTPMC) Assembler H Macro Syntax	134
14.	Peer-to-Peer VTS Data (PTPDATA) Assembler H Macro Syntax	137
15.	The LCS External Services Parameter List—CBRLCSPL	141
16.	The Tape Data Information Assembler Mapping Macro—CBRTDI	151
17.	The Tape Volume Information Assembler Mapping Macro—CBRTVI	154
18.	The Tape Device Selection Information Assembler Mapping—CBRTDSI	158
19.	Fields Passed To The Installation Exit—CBRUXCUA	161
20.	Change Use Attribute Installation Exit Parameter List—CBRUXCPL	162
21.	Fields Passed to the Installation Exit—CBRUXENT	167
22.	The Cartridge Entry Installation Exit Parameter List—CBRUXEPL	170
23.	Fields Passed to the Installation Exit—CBRUXEJC	175
24.	The Cartridge Eject Installation Exit Parameter List—CBRUXJPL	178
25.	CBRUXVNL Input During Job Step Setup—No TCDB Volume Record	186
26.	CBRUXVNL Input During Job Step Setup—Existing TCDB Volume Record	186
27.	CBRUXVNL Input During Device Allocation—No TCDB Volume Record	187
28.	CBRUXVNL Input During Device Allocation—Existing TCDB Volume Record	187
29.	CBRUXVNL Input Library Mount Processing—No TCDB Volume Record	188
30.	CBRUXVNL Input Library Mount Processing—Existing TCDB Volume Record	188
31.	Volume Not in Library Installation Exit Parameter List—CBRUXNPL	189
32.	Sample Installation Management Package—CBRSPLCS	196
33.	Sample Change Use Attribute Installation Exit—CBRSPUXC	210
34.	Sample Cartridge Entry Installation Exit—CBRSPUXE	217
35.	Sample Cartridge Eject Installation Exit—CBRSPUXJ	225
36.	Sample Volume Not in Library Installation Exit—CBRSPUXV	232
37.	Sample CBRAPROC Program That Creates the OAM Member in PROCLIB	245
38.	Sample JCL for an Import List Volume Using a Scratch Volume	246
39.	Sample JCL for an Import List Volume Using a Private Volume	248
40.	Sample JCL for an Export List Volume Using a Scratch Volume	251
41.	Sample JCL for an Export List Volume Using a Private Volume	254
42.	ISMF Primary Option Menu Panel	258
43.	Library Management Selection Menu Panel	258
44.	Tape Library Application Selection Panel	259
45.	Tape Library Define Panel (Page 1 of 2)	260
46.	Tape Library Define Panel (Page 2 of 2)	262
47.	Tape Library Define Panel (Page 1 of 2)	263
48.	Tape Library Define Panel (Page 2 of 2)	264
49.	Tape Library Display Panel (Page 1 of 2)	265
50.	Tape Library Display Panel (Page 2 of 2)	267
51.	Tape Library Redefine Panel (Page 1 of 4)	268
52.	Tape Library Redefine Panel (Page 2 of 4)	269
53.	Tape Library Redefine Panel (Page 3 of 4)	269

54. Tape Library Redefine Panel (Page 4 of 4)	270
55. Tape Library Alter Panel (Page 1 of 4)	271
56. Tape Library Alter Panel (Page 2 of 4)	272
57. Tape Library Alter Panel (Page 3 of 4)	272
58. Tape Library Alter Panel (Page 4 of 4)	273
59. Copy Entry Panel	274
60. Confirm Delete Request Panel	275
61. Volume List Selection Menu Panel	277
62. Mountable Tape Volume Selection Entry Panel	277
63. Mountable Tape Volume List Panel (part 1 of 5)..	279
64. Mountable Tape Volume List Panel (part 2 of 5)..	280
65. Mountable Tape Volume List Panel (part 3 of 5)..	281
66. Mountable Tape Volume List Panel (part 4 of 5)..	282
67. Mountable Tape Volume List Panel (part 5 of 5)..	283
68. Tape Library List Panel (part 1 of 4).	284
69. Tape Library List Panel (part 2 of 4).	284
70. Tape Library List Panel (part 3 of 4).	285
71. Tape Library List Panel (part 4 of 4).	285
72. Confirm Audit Request Panel	287
73. Alter from the Mountable Tape Volume Alter Entry Panel.	289
74. Mountable Tape Volume Alter Entry Panel Displayed (ALTER Request)	290
75. Both OLD VALUE and NEW VALUE Reflect the Values Assigned to the Volume	291
76. NEW VALUE Blanked Out for Storage Group	291
77. New Storage Group Assigned After Storage Group was Altered to Blank	292
78. Confirm Alter Request Confirmation Panel	293
79. Private to Scratch Confirmation Panel.	294

Tables

1. Tape Storage Configurations	32
2. Change Use Attribute Return and Reason Codes	114
3. TDSI Processing for MCE—Volume Exists	118
4. TDSI Processing for MCE—No Volume Record Exists for Volume	118
5. Manual Cartridge Entry Return and Reason Codes	119
6. Cartridge Eject Return and Reason Codes	123
7. Query Volume Residence Return and Reason Codes	126
8. Test Volume Eligibility Return and Reason Codes	129
9. EXPORT Return and Reason Codes	131
10. IMPORT Return and Reason Codes	132
11. PTPMC Return and Reason Codes	136
12. PTPDATA Return and Reason Codes	138

About This Book

This book introduces OAM and its role in the support of tape libraries and explains how to do the following tasks:

- Plan and install OAM for use with the tape library
- Define your tape configuration
- Operate the OAM address space
- Invoke LCS External Services to perform various tape library functions
- Customize the installation exits

This book is for system programmers, storage administrators, and system operators who perform these tasks.

Required Product Knowledge

To understand OAM and tape libraries, you should be familiar with:

- DFSMSdfp
- Integrated catalog facility (ICF)
- Interactive Storage Management Facility (ISMF)
- Hardware configuration definition (HCD)

Referenced Publications

The following publications are referenced in this book:

Publication Title	Order Number
<i>z/OS DFSMS Access Method Services for Catalogs</i>	SC26-7394
<i>z/OS DFSMSdfp Diagnosis Guide</i>	GY27-7617
<i>z/OS DFSMSdfp Storage Administration Reference</i>	SC26-7402
<i>z/OS DFSMSdfp Diagnosis Reference</i>	GY27-7618
<i>z/OS DFSMSrmm Diagnosis Guide</i>	SY27-7619
<i>z/OS DFSMSrmm Implementation and Customization Guide</i>	SC26-7405
<i>z/OS DFSMSrmm Guide and Reference</i>	SC26-7404
<i>z/OS DFSMSrmm Command Reference Summary</i>	SX26-6022
<i>z/OS DFSMS Introduction</i>	SC26-7397
<i>z/OS DFSMS Installation Exits</i>	SC26-7396
<i>z/OS DFSMS: Managing Catalogs</i>	SC26-7409
<i>z/OS DFSMS Object Access Method Application Programmer's Reference</i>	SC35-0425
<i>z/OS DFSMS Object Access Method Planning, Installation, and Storage Administration Guide for Object Support</i>	SC35-0426
<i>z/OS DFSMS Migration</i>	GC26-7398
<i>DFSMS/MVS Program Directory</i>	Included in the product shipment. It cannot be ordered separately.
<i>z/OS DFSMS: Using the Interactive Storage Management Facility</i>	SC26-7411
<i>IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) Operator's Guide</i>	GA32-0449

Publication Title	Order Number
<i>IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) Introduction and Planning Guide</i>	GA32-0448
<i>IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3495) Installation Planning and Migration Guide</i>	GC35-0135
<i>IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3495) Introduction</i>	GA32-0234
<i>IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3495) Operator's Guide</i>	GA32-0235
<i>IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape System 3590 Introduction and Planning Guide</i>	GA32-0329
<i>IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape System 3590 Technical Guide</i>	GG24-2506
<i>IBM TotalStorage Peer-to-Peer Virtual Tape Server Planning and Implementation Guide</i>	SG24-6115
<i>Geographically Dispersed Parallel Sysplex Installation and Customization Guide</i>	
<i>z/OS MVS Initialization and Tuning Guide</i>	SA22-7591
<i>z/OS MVS Initialization and Tuning Reference</i>	SA22-7592
<i>z/OS Hardware Configuration Definition Planning</i>	GA22-7525
<i>z/OS DFSMS: Implementing System-Managed Storage</i>	SC26-7407
<i>MVS/ESA Storage Management Library: Leading a Storage Administration Group</i>	SC26-3126
<i>z/OS HCD User's Guide</i>	SC33-7988
<i>z/OS MVS Planning: Global Resource Serialization</i>	SA22-7600
<i>z/OS MVS Planning: Operations</i>	SA22-7601
<i>z/OS Security Server RACF Command Language Reference</i>	SA22-7687
<i>z/OS MVS System Commands</i>	SA22-7627
<i>z/OS MVS System Messages, Vol 4 (CBD-DMO)</i>	SA22-7634
<i>VM/ESA R2.0 Planning and Administration Guide</i>	SC24-5521
<i>VM/ESA R2.0 Running Guest Operating Systems</i>	SC24-5522

Accessing z/OS DFSMS Books on the Internet

In addition to making softcopy books available on CD-ROM, IBM provides access to unlicensed z/OS softcopy books on the Internet. To find z/OS books on the Internet, first go to the z/OS home page: <http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/zseries/zos>

From this Web site, you can link directly to the z/OS softcopy books by selecting the Library icon. You can also link to IBM Direct to order hardcopy books.

Using LookAt to look up message explanations

LookAt is an online facility that allows you to look up explanations for z/OS messages, system abends, and some codes. Using LookAt to find information is faster than a conventional search because in most cases LookAt goes directly to the message explanation.

You can access LookAt from the Internet at:

<http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/zseries/zos/bkserv/lookat/lookat.html>

or from anywhere in z/OS where you can access a TSO command line (for example, TSO prompt, ISPF, z/OS UNIX System Services running OMVS).

To find a message explanation on the Internet, go to the LookAt Web site and simply enter the message identifier (for example, IAT1836 or IAT*). You can select a specific release to narrow your search. You can also download code from the *z/OS Collection*, SK3T-4269 and the LookAt Web site so you can access LookAt from a PalmPilot (Palm VIIx suggested).

To use LookAt as a TSO command, you must have LookAt installed on your host system. You can obtain the LookAt code for TSO from a disk on your *z/OS Collection*, SK3T-4269 or from the LookAt Web site. To obtain the code from the LookAt Web site, do the following:

1. Go to <http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/zseries/zos/bkserv/lookat/lookat.html>.
2. Click the **News** button.
3. Scroll to **Download LookAt Code for TSO and VM**.
4. Click the ftp link, which will take you to a list of operating systems. Select the appropriate operating system. Then select the appropriate release.
5. Find the **lookat.me** file and follow its detailed instructions.

To find a message explanation from a TSO command line, simply enter: **lookat message-id**. LookAt will display the message explanation for the message requested.

Note: Some messages have information in more than one book. For example, IEC192I has routing and descriptor codes listed in *z/OS MVS Routing and Descriptor Codes*. For such messages, LookAt prompts you to choose which book to open.

Accessing Licensed Books on the Web

z/OS licensed documentation in PDF format is available on the Internet at the IBM Resource Link Web site at:

<http://www.ibm.com/servers/resourceLink>

Licensed books are available only to customers with a z/OS license. Access to these books requires an IBM Resource Link Web userid and password, and a key code. With your z/OS order you received a memo that includes this key code.

To obtain your IBM Resource Link Web userid and password log on to:

<http://www.ibm.com/servers/resourceLink>

To register for access to the z/OS licensed books:

1. Log on to Resource Link using your Resource Link user ID and password.
2. Click on **User Profiles** located on the left-hand navigation bar.
3. Click on **Access Profile**.
4. Click on **Request Access to Licensed books**.
5. Supply your key code where requested and click on the **Submit** button.

If you supplied the correct key code you will receive confirmation that your request is being processed. After your request is processed, you will receive an e-mail confirmation.

Note: You cannot access the z/OS licensed books unless you have registered for access to them and received an e-mail confirmation informing you that your request has been processed.

To access the licensed books:

1. Log on to Resource Link using your Resource Link userid and password.
2. Click on **Library**.
3. Click on **zSeries**.
4. Click on **Software**.
5. Click on **z/OS**.
6. Access the licensed book by selecting the appropriate element.

How to Send Your Comments

Your feedback is important in helping to provide the most accurate and high-quality information. If you have any comments about this book or any other DFSMS documentation:

- Send your comments by e-mail to:
 - IBMLink™ from US: starpubs@us.ibm.com
 - IBMLink from Canada: STARPUBS at TORIBM
 - IBM Mail Exchange: USIB3VVD at IBMMAIL
 - Internet: starpubs@us.ibm.com

Be sure to include the name of the book, the part number of the book, version and product name, and if applicable, the specific location of the text you are commenting on (for example, a page number or a table number).

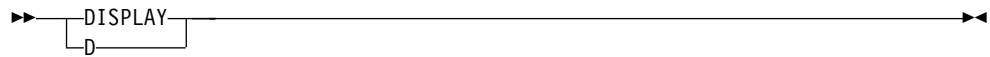
- Fill out one of the forms at the back of this book and return it by mail or by giving it to an IBM representative. If the form has been removed, address your comments to IBM Corporation, Department 61C, 9000 South Rita Road, Tucson, Arizona 85744-0001, U.S.A.

How to Read Syntax Diagrams

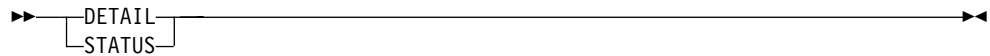
There is one basic rule for reading the syntax diagrams: Follow only one line at a time from the beginning to the end and code everything you encounter on that line.

The following rules apply to the conventions that are used in the syntax diagrams for all the OAM commands:

- Read the syntax diagrams from left to right and from top to bottom.
- Each syntax diagram begins with a double arrowhead (►►) and ends with opposing arrows (◄►).
- An arrow (→) at the end of a line indicates that the syntax continues on the next line. A continuation line begins with an arrow (►→).
- Commands and keywords are shown in uppercase letters.
- Some commands and keywords have alternative abbreviations; these appear as part of the stack for that command or keyword. For example, the alternative abbreviation for **DISPLAY** is **D**.



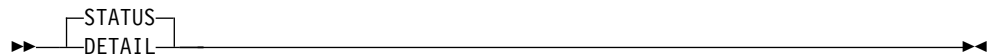
- Where you can choose from two or more keywords, the choices are stacked one above the other. If one choice within the stack lies on the main path, a keyword is required, and you must choose one. In the following example you must choose either **DETAIL** or **STATUS**.



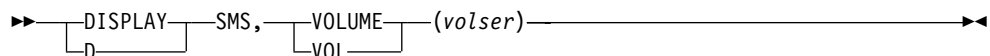
- If a stack is placed below the main path, a keyword is optional, and you can choose one or none. In the following example, **PURGE**, **KEEP**, and **LOCATION** are optional keywords. You can choose any one of the three.



- Where you can choose from two or more keywords and one of the keywords appears above the main path, that keyword is the default. You may choose one or the other of the keywords, but if none is entered, the default keyword is automatically selected. In the following example you may choose either **DETAIL** or **STATUS**. If neither is chosen, **STATUS** is automatically selected.



- Words or names in italicized, lowercase letters represent information that you supply. The values of these variables may change depending on the items to which they refer. For example, *volser* refers to the serial number of a volume, while *storgrp_name* refers to the name of a storage group.
- You must provide all items enclosed in parentheses (). You must include the parentheses. In the following example, you must supply the volume serial number (*volser*) and it must be enclosed in parentheses.



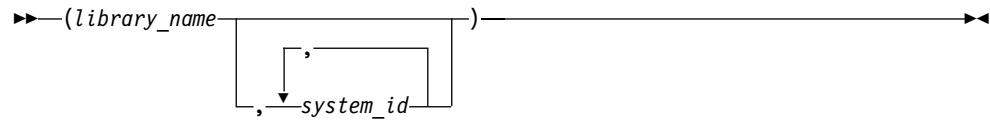
You would code this as follows:

D SMS,VOL(*volser*)

The variable *volser* is the serial number of the volume you wish to display.

- The repeat symbol shown below indicates that you can specify keywords and variables more than once. The repeat symbol appears above the keywords and variables that can be repeated. For example, when a comma appears in the repeat symbol, you must separate repeated keywords or variables with a comma.

In the following example, you may specify the *library_name* and one or more system identification numbers (*system_id*) that are separated by commas. You must enclose the name of the library and all of the system IDs in parentheses.



You would code this as follows:

```
(library_name, system_id, system_id, system_id)
```

The variable *library_name* is the name of the library you are working with, and *system_id* names three different instances of system identification numbers.

Summary of Changes

This book contains terminology, maintenance, and editorial changes. Technical changes or additions to the text and illustrations are indicated by a vertical line to the left of the change.

You may notice changes in the style and structure of some content in this book—for example, headings that use uppercase for the first letter of initial words only, and procedures that have a different look and format. The changes are ongoing improvements to the consistency and retrievability of information in our books.

Summary of Changes for SC35-0427-01 z/OS Version 1 Release 3

This book contains information previously presented in *z/OS DFSMS OAM Planning, Installation, and Storage Administration Guide for Tape Libraries* (SC35-0427-00).

The following sections summarize the changes to that information.

New Information

This edition includes the following new information:

- Information was added to “Chapter 1. Introduction to Tape Library Management” on page 1 describing the handling of mount and demount messages in an ATLDS environment.
- Information was added to “Chapter 1. Introduction to Tape Library Management” on page 1 describing the deletion of expired VTS logical volume data, so that the VTS does not continue to manage the data as though it were still active.
- Information was added to “Chapter 1. Introduction to Tape Library Management” on page 1 describing the Geographically Dispersed Parallel Sysplex™ (GDPS) support for Peer-to-Peer VTS. GDPS integrates Parallel Sysplex™ technology and remote copy technology to enhance application availability and improve disaster recovery.
- Information was added to “Chapter 6. LCS External Services” on page 109 describing the Peer-to-Peer Mode Control (PTPMC) and Peer-to-Peer Data (PTPDATA) functions. PTPMC allows you to change the current operating modes of the library. PTPDATA allows you to obtain operational mode settings and device-related information from the PTP VTS library.
- A new macro that returns tape data information, CBRTDI, is described in “Chapter 6. LCS External Services” on page 109. The CBRTDI macro is used to pass information about the composite Peer-to-Peer VTS library specified on the CBRXLCS PTPDATA request.

Changed Information

The following information was changed in this edition:

- The “Displaying Library Status” section of “Chapter 5. Operating the OAM Address Space” on page 71 was clarified to show that a status of ONLINE does not mean that a library is operational.
- Information was added to the “Displaying Library Detail Status” and “Displaying Tape Volume Status” sections of “Chapter 5. Operating the OAM Address Space” on page 71 to describe the corrupted token volume count function.
- The “Displaying Tape Drive Status” section of “Chapter 5. Operating the OAM Address Space” on page 71 was modified to show that the maximum number of tape drives that can be displayed is now 512.

- The “Displaying Tape Volume Status” section of “Chapter 5. Operating the OAM Address Space” on page 71 was modified to show two additional tape volume status messages.
- The tape volume information macro, CBRTVI, was modified to include new volume statuses and the corrupted token volume count. This macro is in “Chapter 6. LCS External Services” on page 109.
- “Appendix B. Using ISMF Panels to Define and Monitor Your Configuration” on page 257 was clarified to show the correct naming convention for tape library names.

Chapter 1. Introduction to Tape Library Management

The Object Access Method (OAM) is a component of DFSMSdfp, the base of the Storage Management Subsystem (SMS) of DFSMS. OAM uses the concepts of system-managed storage, introduced by SMS, to manage, maintain, and verify tape volumes and tape libraries within a tape storage environment.

Note: The management of data on tape volumes is not discussed in this manual. Refer to *z/OS DFSMS OAM Planning, Installation, and Storage Administration Guide for Object Support* for information on OAM's role in the storage of objects on tape volumes. Also, refer to *z/OS DFSMSrmm Guide and Reference* for the role of DFSMSrmm in the management of data on tape volumes.

In general, a tape library is a set of tape volumes and the set of tape drives where those volumes may be mounted. The relationship between tape drives and tape volumes is exclusive; a tape volume residing in a library (*library-resident tape volume*) can only be mounted on a tape drive contained in that library (*library-resident tape drive*), and a library-resident tape drive can only be used to mount a tape volume which resides in the same library. A tape library can consist of one or more tape subsystems.

When a volume is entered into a tape library, it is assigned to a tape storage group. A tape library can contain volumes from multiple storage groups, and a storage group can reside in up to eight libraries.

As new tape data sets are created, the installation allocates data sets to tape volumes in an SMS-managed tape library by associating one or more tape storage group names (using the SMS storage group ACS routine) with the allocation request. DFSMS ensures that only tape devices within the tape libraries associated with the tape storage groups are allocated to the request. Existing tape data sets on library-resident volumes are allocated to tape drives within the library where the volume resides.

Automated Tape Storage

Tape automation provides satisfactory solutions for many of the problems that occur when tape library storage requires human intervention. Mount times are reduced from minutes to seconds. The number of lost, misfiled, or damaged tapes decreases. Security is enhanced because the tape library hardware and tape cartridges can be kept in a secure area. Customers experience the benefits of a cost-effective, efficient, and automated method for storing their tape media, and they drastically reduce the amount of human intervention required to maintain their tape storage environments.

The IBM TotalStorage™ Enterprise Automated Tape Libraries (3495 and 3494) and their supporting software streamline and automate the roles of the storage administrator, tape operator, and the tape librarian. They also use the concepts of SMS to manage the tape volumes within the library.

For a discussion of the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3495) and the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494), see "TotalStorage Automated Tape Library (3495) Subsystem Attachment" on page 8 and "TotalStorage Automated Tape Library (3494) Subsystem Attachment" on page 10.

Automated Tape Library

An automated tape library dataser (ATLDS) consists of tape drives, tape cartridges, a tape cartridge storage area, input and output stations for inserting and removing cartridges, and a mechanism for moving tape cartridges among these areas. The volumes within an automated tape library are known as library-resident tape volumes. Tape volumes can also be located on shelves outside the automated tape library. These volumes are known as shelf-resident tape volumes. See Figure 1 on page 9 and Figure 2 on page 11 for examples of the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3495) and the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494).

Tape cartridges are stored and retrieved by an automated cartridge accessor. The cartridges are placed in an input station by the tape library operator. The cartridge accessor then scans the external volume label on the cartridge, carries the cartridge to the appropriate storage location, and places it into the library. When a volume mount is requested, the cartridge accessor retrieves the cartridge from the storage location, carries it to the requested drive, and mounts the cartridge in the drive. Upon completion of the tape operation, the tape cartridge is unloaded, the accessor retrieves it from the drive, and returns it to a storage location in the library.

However, the tape library operator can continue library operation during periods when the cartridge accessor is not operational. During this time the operator responds to commands displayed on the manual mode console. This is known as manual mode operation.

In an ATLDS environment, mount and demount messages are only issued to the system log and will not appear on the console.

Manual Tape Storage

Manual tape library management provides the advantages of system-managed tape in a non-automated environment. The tape library operator continues to use the MVS console to receive tape-related instructions. The library volumes can reside on a shelf near the tape library drives to satisfy mount requests. The grouping of volumes and drives provides system-managed support for manual tape libraries in multiple locations.

Manual Tape Library

A manual tape library (MTL) is an installation-defined set of tape drives and a customer-defined set of tape volumes with mount capability on those tape drives. The volumes can be physically stored in shelf storage located near the MTL, but since these volumes are specifically defined as residing in the MTL, they are known as library-resident volumes. When the volumes are logically ejected from the MTL, they become shelf-resident volumes.

In an MTL environment, the operator or tape librarian responds to commands at the MVS console, manually loading and unloading the tape cartridges. Before a tape cartridge can be used, the tape cartridge must first be logically entered into an MTL. Cartridges can be entered into an MTL through invocation of the CBRXLCS manual cartridge entry (MCE), general use programming interface, or through invocation of the LIBRARY ENTER command (see “Entering a Tape Volume into an MTL” on page 78 for more information).

Note: Operation of this support outside of the true stand-alone environment is not intended. To determine feasibility of this support within a non-IBM robotic

tape library, contact the manufacturer of the robotic tape library. Also, if a vendor's tape device, emulating a 3490E or IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape System 3590 native device, is defined to the library, the manual tape library support will treat this device as a real 3490E or as a real 3590 Model B. When entered into the library, the media must be defined as its emulated media. It is then the user's responsibility to manage media or device incompatibilities. This can be managed by keeping incompatible devices with the same emulated or real device type in separate libraries.

Object Access Method Support for Tape Libraries

OAM uses system-managed storage concepts within the SMS component of DFSMS to provide the management facilities for the physical movement and tracking of the tape volumes used within tape libraries.

There are three components of OAM:

- Object Storage and Retrieval (OSR)
- OAM Storage Management Component (OSMC)
- Library Control System (LCS)

This manual covers the use of the LCS component of OAM in support of tape libraries. For information on the roles of OSR, OSMC, and LCS in support of object data, refer to *z/OS DFSMS OAM Planning, Installation, and Storage Administration Guide for Object Support*.

OAM provides the following services in support of tape libraries:

- Cartridge entry, eject, audit, mount, and demount processing
- Operator command processing
- Tape configuration database (TCDB) management
- A set of tape library related services which may be used by the installation (see "Chapter 6. LCS External Services" on page 109)
- Installation exits that influence tape processing at four critical points:
 - Entering a cartridge into a tape library, or importing logical volumes into a VTS
 - Ejecting a cartridge from a tape library, or exporting logical volumes from a VTS
 - Changing the use attribute of a tape cartridge
 - Allowing the installation to enter a nonlibrary-resident cartridge into a tape library during allocation processing

See "Chapter 7. Installation Exits" on page 159 for more information on these installation exits.

- Unsolicited attention message processing.

Only a subset of the functions above actually execute within the OAM address space (entry, eject, audit, and unsolicited attention message processing). Cartridge mount and demount activity (job processing) does not require the OAM address space. However, since job processing often results in volumes being entered and error and status messages being displayed, it is recommended that the installation run with the OAM address space active whenever possible.

ISMF Role with Tape Libraries

The storage administrator performs library-related functions through the use of the Interactive Storage Management Facility (ISMF) library management panels.

ISMF serves two roles in tape library management. First, it allows the storage administrator to define tape libraries in the tape configuration database (TCDB). Second, it allows the storage administrator to define tape libraries in specified source control data sets (SCDSs), making them a part of the SMS configuration when that SCDS is activated. Upon activation of an SCDS that has tape libraries defined, an operator on any console within an SMS complex can issue commands targeted for any tape library within the SMS configuration. Each change associated with an SCDS does not take effect until that SCDS is activated. Changes to the TCDB take effect the next time an SCDS that includes that tape library is activated.

Note: Tape drives associated with either an automated tape library dataserwer or a manual tape library must be defined using the hardware configuration definition (HCD). For more information on HCD requirements, refer to “Creating the Hardware Configuration” on page 54 and to *z/OS HCD User’s Guide*.

ISMF allows the storage administrator to define, alter, list, and display:

- Tape library definitions
- Tape storage group definitions
- Data class definitions
- Storage class definitions

Managing the tape library’s volume inventory is also handled through ISMF. For more detailed information, refer to “Appendix B. Using ISMF Panels to Define and Monitor Your Configuration” on page 257 and *z/OS DFSMS: Using the Interactive Storage Management Facility*.

Installation Storage Management Policy Overview

Each installation defines a storage management policy that allows effective tape storage management without requiring user intervention. Through ISMF, the storage administrator and system programmer define an installation storage management policy in an SMS configuration.

An SMS configuration for tape libraries consists of the following elements:

- **Base configuration.** The base configuration identifies the systems and system groups in an SMS complex and contains installation defaults.
- **SMS constructs.** Constructs are lists of attributes that are assigned to data sets and storage areas. An SMS configuration can contain five construct types. The following describes all five constructs; however, SMS-managed tape uses only: storage group, storage class, and data class.
 - **Storage group** allows you to define a storage hierarchy and manage that hierarchy as if it were one large, single storage area.
 - **Storage class** allows you to define different levels of performance objectives and availability requirements for system-managed storage.
 - **Data class** allows you to define specific data attributes.
 - **Management class** allows you to define different backup, retention, and class transition characteristics.
 - **Aggregate group** allows you to group a collection of data objects that form a data type. This allows the data to be referred to collectively or individually.

An SMS configuration can contain multiple constructs of each type.

System Groups in an SMS Configuration

The systems that share the SMS configuration may be defined in one of two ways:

- As an individual system (the name of the system is known to SMS)
- As part of a system group (only the name of the group is known to SMS). There can be a maximum of 32-systems, system-group names, or both sharing the SMS configuration.

Although a system group may be defined to SMS, it is recommended that all systems connected to a tape library be defined as individual systems. If the tape library is connected to a system group, the installation loses the ability to vary the library online or offline to the individual systems that comprise the group. A VARY SMS,LIBRARY command directed to a system group causes the library to be varied online or offline to all the individual systems in the group. There is no way to direct a VARY SMS,LIBRARY command to an individual system that is part of the system group.

Storage Groups and Automated Class Selections

A tape storage group is a collection of tape cartridges that are located within one or more tape libraries. Only a tape storage group may be used in association with tape libraries. As part of the definition of a tape storage group, one to eight library names can be associated with the tape storage group. Tape storage groups can have on each system or system group in the SMS complex any one of the following four attributes:

ENABLED	The system can create and access data sets on any tape volume belonging to this storage group. This condition <i>can</i> be changed by the VARY SMS,STORGRP operator command.
NOTCON	The system cannot create or access data sets on any tape volume belonging to this storage group. This condition <i>cannot</i> be changed by the VARY SMS,STORGRP operator command.
DISNEW	The system cannot create a new data set which is the first data set on a tape volume. It can read an existing data set, extend an existing data set, and create a new data set that is not the first on a tape volume. This condition <i>can</i> be changed by the VARY SMS,STORGRP operator command.
DISALL	The system cannot create or access data sets on any tape volume belonging to this storage group. This condition <i>can</i> be changed by the VARY SMS,STORGRP operator command.

Tape storage groups can be associated with one or more tape libraries, but all volumes of a multivolume data set *must* be contained within a single library and a single storage group. If one of the volumes required in a multivolume data set request resides outside of the library, the volume not in library installation exit (CBRUXVNL) can be used to direct the volume back into the library.

When a private volume is entered into a tape library and the cartridge entry installation exit does not supply a storage group name, OAM sets the storage group name to blanks. The blank storage group name becomes the system default. The blank storage group is always enabled on all systems within the SMS complex.

It is a good idea for the storage administrator to assign all volumes in the blank storage group to other named storage groups as soon as possible. This allows an installation to take advantage of the storage group states (ENABLED, NOTCON,

DISNEW, and DISALL). Also, the storage group name can be used to direct a volume to a particular library or libraries, rather than to any library within the SMS complex. This ensures that a volume is reentered into the appropriate library following the ejection of that volume, and provides a filter for reducing the length of the volume list displayed through ISMF.

Automated class selection (ACS) routines are storage-administrator-defined routines that automatically identify the storage class, storage group, and data class that are used for allocation of volumes for new tape data sets. The storage group definitions in the active control data set (ACDS) contain the names of the libraries to which these volumes may be assigned. During allocation, these library names are used to find the associated named collection of tape devices or *device pool*. The device pool names are then used during allocation to find the associated device numbers for the tape drives that may be used to satisfy the request.

Note: When both DASD and tape storage groups are eligible for a new allocation through the ACS routine, SMS defaults to DASD over the tape storage group, choosing the more efficient device. The user cannot influence this decision after the ACS routine has made the storage group selection.

Pre-ACS Routine Exit

The pre-ACS routine exit (IGDACSXT) enables an external source, such as a tape management system, to provide input (through read-only variables) to the ACS routine to influence construct selection and assignment. The tape management system can use these variables to direct new allocations to a particular tape library to coordinate vaulting runs for backups or offsite storage. For more detailed information regarding this pre-ACS routine exit, refer to *z/OS DFSMS Installation Exits*.

Integrated Catalog Facility and the Tape Configuration Database

The integrated catalog facility (ICF) provides support for the following tape configuration database:

Volume catalog. A volume catalog (VOLCAT) is an ICF user catalog marked as a volume catalog. It contains only volume and library entries. There are two types of VOLCAT: general and specific. The TCDB may be shared by all or some of the systems and system groups in one or more SMSplexes that have connection to the tape library dataservers that are defined in the TCDB. The TCDB is the collection of all VOLCATs—the general and all the specifics.

The general VOLCAT

The default volume catalog contains all the library records as well as any volume records that are not recorded in a specific VOLCAT. Each system must have access to one and only one general VOLCAT. The general VOLCAT must be defined prior to defining a tape library. The name of the general volume catalog is hlq.VOLCAT.VGENERAL.

A specific VOLCAT

A volume catalog that contains a specific group of volume records based on the first character of the volume serial number. The name of the specific volume catalog is hlq.VOLCAT.Vx. For examples on defining VOLCATs, refer to “Creating the Tape Configuration Database” on page 52 or *z/OS DFSMS Access Method Services*.

Note: The “hlq” and the “x” in the name of the volume catalog, **hlq.VOLCAT.Vx**, stand for high-level qualifier and reference to valid character values (A–Z and 0–9) respectively. For information on changing high-level qualifiers on VOLCATs, refer to *z/OS DFSMS: Managing Catalogs*.

The following TCDB records are used in association with tape libraries:

- **Library record.** There is one library record for each tape library. The library record resides within the general VOLCAT. Each record contains information related to the library (for example, library name, library ID, and device type) and is created by the ISMF tape library define option.
- **Volume record.** Each volume record represents a tape volume. It can reside in the general or specific VOLCAT. It contains information related to a volume (for example, volume serial number, library name, and storage group name) and is created during cartridge entry processing.

Access method services provide users access to catalog entries for tape libraries and tape volumes, allowing them to create, alter, list and delete entries residing in the TCDB. However, access method services is used mainly as a recovery tool to repair damaged catalogs and should be used with caution whenever you create, alter, and delete TCDB entries. Incorrect use of this recovery tool can cause database (host, library manager, and tape management) conflicts. For example, IDCAMS ALTER can be used to change the use attribute of a volume in the TCDB, but it does not change the library manager's inventory record or the tape management system's database. When changing a volume's use attribute, use CBRXLCS FUNC=CUA or ISMF volume ALTER to keep the databases synchronized. For more information concerning recovery of catalog entries, see “Establishing Recovery Procedures” on page 66.

MVS Hardware Configuration Definition

MVS hardware configuration definition uses the LIBRARY parameter to define drives configured to a tape library. For more information on using HCD to define drives, refer to “Creating the Hardware Configuration” on page 54 and to *z/OS HCD User's Guide*.

Note: Tape drives associated with an automated tape library dataserer, a manual tape library, or as a stand-alone device must be defined using the hardware configuration definition (HCD).

Types of Tape Volumes

Unlike DASD or optical volumes, which are shared among many users, tapes are assigned to individuals or functions. They are retained for specified periods of time as required by the storage administration plan for your business. Tape cartridges that are assigned to a specific individual or function are considered *private*. Unassigned tapes are known as *scratch* and are used in response to a system scratch request, or assigned as a private tape in response to a nonspecific request from a user. The volume use attribute (whether the cartridge is private or scratch) is initially assigned by the cartridge entry installation exit (CBRUXENT) or set by the ISMF entry default use attribute.

Private Tape Management

You can use private volumes by explicitly requesting a specific volume serial number.

Scratch Tape Management

All scratch tapes within a library are contained within common scratch pools—one for each type of media in the library—and cannot be explicitly mounted by specifying a volume serial number. See page 261 for more information on scratch threshold processing. Once a tape is removed from a common scratch pool, it is assigned to a storage group, the volume use attribute is changed to private, and it remains private until it is returned to scratch status.

In an MTL environment, since there is no outboard category assignment and outboard selection of a particular scratch volume, the operator, as in the stand-alone environment, is free to mount an appropriate scratch volume. Additionally in an MTL environment, the scratch volume mounted must be of the appropriate media type for the request and it must have previously been entered into the library as a scratch volume in the MTL in which the allocated drive resides. The ability of the operator to mount a scratch volume, enables volume pooling to work in a fashion similar to the stand-alone environment. Refer to your tape management system for specific implementation details on volume pooling and the MTL. If an MTL resident scratch volume is mounted outside of the MTL environment, on a stand-alone device, the volume will remain scratch in the tape configuration database. Care should be taken to keep MTL resident scratch volumes separate from the stand-alone scratch pool.

Private tapes are returned to the common scratch pool through an ISMF ALTER request, through the use of the Library Control System (LCS) external services change use attribute function, or by a tape management system.

VTSS Stacked Tape Management

OAM does not keep volume records in the tape configuration database (TCDB) for the physical stacked volumes used in the VTSS. However, when logical volumes are exported from a VTSS, the stacked volumes containing the logical volumes are reported through messages and passed to the cartridge eject installation exit (CBRUXEJC). This is done so that a tape management system can track the physical stacked volume on which an exported logical volume resides.

Duplicate Volume Management

Special care must be taken to mount a volume with a duplicate volume serial number outside of an IBM managed tape library. When the duplicate volume serial number is requested, if a volume record exists for that volume in the tape configuration database (TCDB) indicating that the volume is library resident, the allocation for that request will be directed to the library in which the volume resides. To direct the allocation of the duplicate volume to a stand-alone device, a special reserved storage class name, DUPT@SMS, can be specified with the storage class parameter on the JCL with DISP=OLD. This will force allocation of this request to a stand-alone device.

TotalStorage Automated Tape Library (3495) Subsystem Attachment

The IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3495) is attached to host systems by a communications path to an IBM 3490 or 3490E control unit with the addition of a library attachment facility feature. The feature provides a microprocessor card and attachment cable for connection of each 3490 or 3490E control unit path to the library manager application. The equivalent of the library

attachment facility is built into the control unit for an IBM 3590. See “TotalStorage Automated Tape Library (3494) Subsystem Attachment” on page 10 for more information concerning these subsystems.

The ATLDS (see Figure 1) is capable of supporting multiple control units and tape drives. The details for each callout in Figure 1 are explained in the text that follows. See Table 1 on page 32 for more information concerning configuration capabilities, and “TotalStorage Automated Tape Library (3494) Subsystem Attachment” on page 10 for more details concerning the tape subsystems. For more detailed information regarding the hardware features of the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3495), refer to *TotalStorage Automated Tape Library (3495) Introduction*.

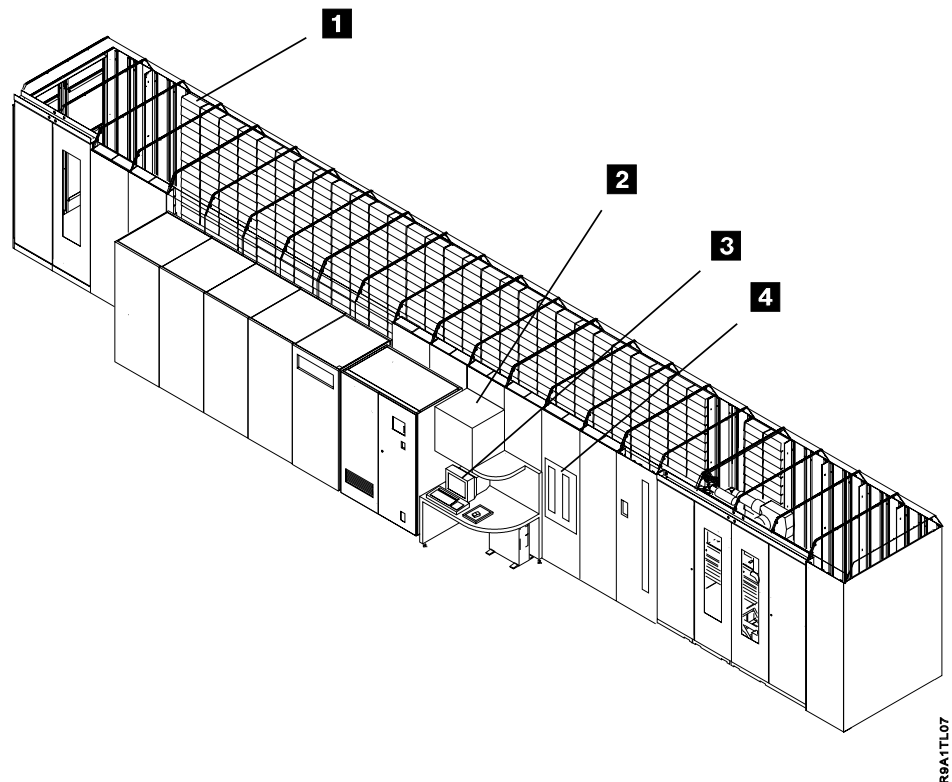


Figure 1. IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3495)

High Capacity Input and Output Facility

All 3495 ATLDS models can have an optional high-capacity input and output facility (Figure 1, item **1**) that reserves a section of the cartridge storage area to be used for input and output of large numbers of cartridges. This optional facility requires that the tape library be placed in *paused mode* (indicating that the cartridge accessor is not active) while the areas are being loaded and unloaded. The software term for the process of ejecting cartridges into the high-capacity output station is known as *bulk eject*, and the software term for the process of entering cartridges into an automated tape library dataserwer using the high-capacity input station is known as *bulk entry*.

External High-Capacity Input and Output Facility

The optional external high-capacity input and output station feature (not shown in Figure 1) allows the operator to add or remove up to 240 cartridges from the IBM

TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3495) without pausing automated operations or without the operator entering the 3495 enclosure.

Note: If the external high-capacity input and output station feature is installed, the high-capacity input and output facility cannot be enabled.

Manual Mode Terminal

A manual mode terminal (Figure 1 on page 9, item **2**) is located in the enclosure of the tape library and is used to assist the operator with manual mode operations when the cartridge accessor is not active. The library manager uses the manual mode terminal to inform the operator which volumes to mount and eject, and where to locate the volumes in the storage cells.

Library Manager Application

The library manager (Figure 1 on page 9, item **3**) is a licensed internal code application installed in the library controller that controls all operations in the tape library. The library manager controls tape library automation, communicates with the host through each control unit, and allows communication paths for operators and service personnel. The library manager is also used for service and test sessions and provides operator status information and control panels for the operator's use. Transaction logs and an error log are also provided as problem determination aids. For more information concerning the library manager for the 3495, refer to the *TotalStorage Automated Tape Library (3495) Introduction* and the *TotalStorage Automated Tape Library (3495) Operator's Guide*.

Commands are processed by the library manager and translated into requests for cartridge movement or database processing. The library manager database provides a cross-reference between a volume serial number, a volume's actual storage location, and a volume's category. See "Displaying Tape Volume Status" on page 97 for a list of valid volume categories and their descriptions.

Convenience Input and Output Facility

Each tape library has a convenience input and output station (Figure 1 on page 9, item **4**) for inserting cartridges into and ejecting cartridges from the tape library, without requiring the pausing of automated operations or operator entry into the tape library enclosure area. Each convenience input and output station has a capacity of 20 cartridges.

For more information on these hardware features, refer to *TotalStorage Automated Tape Library (3495) Introduction*.

TotalStorage Automated Tape Library (3494) Subsystem Attachment

The IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) (Figure 2 on page 11) can be attached to host systems by two methods. The first method is attachment to host systems by a communications path to the control unit of an IBM 3490E or an IBM 3590, or a combination thereof. The second attachment method stems directly from the library manager to AS/400® hosts through a host attachment feature. This attachment provides direct communication between the AS/400 host and the 3494 library manager.

The details for each callout in Figure 2 on page 11 are explained in the text that follows.

This ATLDS is capable of supporting multiple control units and tape drives. See Table 1 on page 32 for more information concerning configuration capabilities. For more detailed information on the hardware features of the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494), refer to *TotalStorage Automated Tape Library (3494) Introduction and Planning Guide*, and *IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) Operator's Guide*.

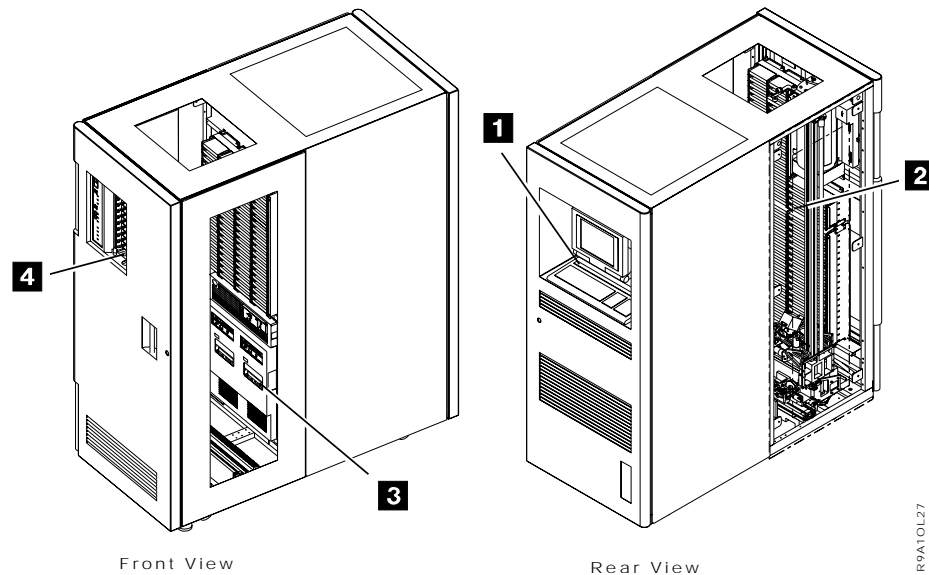


Figure 2. IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) L10 Frame

Cartridge Storage Cells

The cartridge storage cells (Figure 2, item **2**) are used to store the tape cartridges associated with this ATLDS. IBM Cartridge System Tape, IBM Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape, IBM High Performance Cartridge Tape, and IBM Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape are supported. For more information concerning cartridge capacities for the various configurations of the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494), refer to *TotalStorage Automated Tape Library (3494) Introduction and Planning Guide*.

Tape Subsystems

The 3494 uses the 3490E Magnetic Tape Subsystem and the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise High Performance Tape System, individually or in combination (Figure 2, item **3**). Each subsystem has its own integrated control unit. The 3490E models can read cartridges written by other 3480 and 3490 base models. For more information concerning the IBM 3490E models, refer to *3490 Introduction*.

The IBM TotalStorage Enterprise High Performance Tape System is capable of coexisting with 3490 and 3490E devices in the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3495) and with 3490E and 3590 Model E devices in the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494), or as a stand-alone tape drive. The 3590 consists of a controller and drive integrated in the same unit. The 3590 can be configured as a frame-mounted or rack-mounted model that is capable of ESCON[®] attachment to the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3495). It can also be configured for use within the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494).

The IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape System 3590 Model E High Performance Tape Subsystem is capable of coexisting with 3490E and 3590 Model B devices in the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) in 3590-1 emulation mode only, or as a stand-alone tape drive in 3490E or 3590-1 emulation mode. However, inside a IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494), the 3590 Model E Tape Subsystem is recognized by the SMS tape software support as a 3590 Model E device rather than by what it is emulating. This enables both 3590 Model B and 3590 Model E devices to coexist in the same library. The 3590 Model E Tape Subsystem can read cartridges written by the 3590 Model B Tape Subsystem.

The 3590 tape subsystems uses the IBM High Performance Cartridge Tape and the IBM Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape. These 1/2 inch magnetic medias provide serpentine 16-track recording with 8 passes (3590 Model B) making it capable of 128-track recording technology or with 16 passes (3590 Model E) making it capable of 256-track recording technology. This allows the user to take advantage of increased capacity and improved device speed.

The 3590 expands the storage capabilities and performance for these libraries by providing higher performance, a larger capacity cartridge, and increased reliability over previous tape subsystems. For more details on the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise High Performance Tape System, refer to the *IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape System 3590 Introduction and Planning Guide* and the *IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape System 3590 Technical Guide*.

Convenience Input and Output Station

The convenience input/output station (Figure 2 on page 11, item **4**) is an optional feature on the 3494 that is used for inserting cartridges into or ejecting cartridges from the ATLDS, without interrupting normal automated operations. For more detailed information on the convenience input/output features of the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494), refer to *TotalStorage Automated Tape Library (3494) Introduction and Planning Guide*.

High Capacity Input/Output Facility

The high-capacity input/output facility (not shown) is an option that reserves a section of the cartridge storage area to be used for the input/output of cartridges. Either a high capacity output facility or a high capacity input/output facility can be defined, but not both.

Library Manager Application

The library manager (Figure 2 on page 11, item **1**) is a licensed internal code application installed in the library controller that controls all operations in the tape library. The library manager communicates with the host through each control unit, and allows communication paths for operators and service personnel. The library manager is also used for service and test sessions and provides operator status information and control panels for the operator's use. Transaction logs and an error log are also provided as problem determination aids. For more information concerning the library manager for the 3494 ATLDS, refer to *TotalStorage Automated Tape Library (3494) Introduction and Planning Guide*.

Virtual Tape Server Subsystem of the ATLDS

The virtual tape server (VTS) subsystem (not pictured) in an ATLDS combines the random access and high performance characteristics of DASD with outboard hierarchical storage management and virtual tape devices and virtual tape volumes, providing significant reductions in the number of physical cartridges, devices, and automated libraries needed to store customer data. There are several key concepts of this subsystem:

- Emulating 3490-type tape devices (virtual devices)
- Emulating 3490-type tape volumes (virtual volumes)
- Import and export functions
- Tape volume cache
- Storage management of the tape volume cache
- Improved cache management
- Deleting expired virtual tape server logical volume data
- Maintaining data fragments from migrated volumes
- Fast response for nonspecific mount requests
- Use of the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape System 3590
- Automatic 3590 storage capacity utilization
- Logical library partitioning
- Operator interface with the library manager
- Logical volume inventory

Emulating 3490-Type Tape Devices (Virtual Devices)

From a host perspective, the virtual subsystem looks like multiple 3490E control units, each with 16 tape devices. Each emulated device is called a virtual tape device. The virtual subsystem handles all 3490 tape commands. Emulating a 3490-type tape device eliminates the need for host software changes to support the 3590-type tape device. There is no direct relationship between a virtual tape device and a real 3590 tape device. Each virtual device:

- Has a host device address
- Is included in the I/O generation for the system
- Is varied online or offline to a host
- Signals ready when a virtual volume is loaded
- Responds to and processes all 3490E tape commands
- Becomes not ready when a virtual volume is rewound and unloaded
- Indicates that it has a cartridge loader
- Can be associated with a pool of scratch volumes that allow very fast mount access for scratch mounts

Note: The active status of the cartridge loader depends on the availability of scratch volumes in the assigned pool.

Data is written and read as if it is stored on a real Standard or Enhanced Cartridge System Tape; however, within the subsystem it is really stored on DASD. All tape read and write commands are translated to read and write data records to or from DASD. Volumes residing on the DASD are called virtual volumes. For more information concerning virtual volumes, see “Emulating 3490-Type Cartridges (Virtual Volumes)” on page 14.

All host interactions with data in a VTS are through virtual volumes and associated virtual tape devices; there is no direct access to the data on a physical cartridge or device.

Emulating 3490-Type Cartridges (Virtual Volumes)

The virtual tape server (VTS) subsystem in a 3494 ATLDs uses virtual volumes for all interactions with host software. These virtual volumes and the data associated with them are stored in the tape volume cache not on a physical tape device or volume when they are being used by the host system. For more information on tape volume cache, see “Tape Volume Cache” and refer to *IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) Introduction and Planning Guide*. These virtual volumes emulate the functional characteristics of a cartridge system tape. Each virtual volume:

- Has a unique volume serial number
- Is loaded and unloaded on a virtual device
- Supports an IBM Standard Label
- Can be appended to after it was initially written from the beginning of the tape
- Signals the end of volume when the total number of bytes written reaches 400 MB for the emulated Standard Cartridge System Tape
- Signals end of volume when the total number of bytes written reaches 800 MB for the emulated Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape
- Has an advantage over a physical volume because the mount response time for a virtual volume request, specific (when in cache) or nonspecific, is faster, since there is no dependency on the physical movement of a cartridge or the loading delays of a physical drive

The tape volume cache of the virtual tape server enables the utilization of the 3590 tape technology. When a virtual volume is copied from tape volume cache to a 3590 cartridge, the volume then becomes a logical volume. A 3590 cartridge that contains logical volumes is referred to as a *stacked volume*. The VTS stacks multiple host created volumes onto a 3590 cartridge to create a stacked volume. The 3590 volumes used in a library that are used for stacking are identified through their volume serial numbers. When a 3590 cartridge, identified as a stacked volume, is inserted into a library, it becomes part of the volumes managed by the VTS and is not reported to the host as a newly inserted volume. Only the logical volumes specified at the library manager console are reported to the host. By buffering host created volumes, then later stacking them on a 3590 cartridge, the cartridge capacity of the 3590 technology is fully utilized. The cartridges used with this volume stacking technology emulate Cartridge System Tape or Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape to the host system. When a logical volume is moved from a 3590 cartridge to the tape volume cache, the volume becomes a virtual volume again.

VTS Subsystem Import and Export Functions

The virtual tape server (VTS) subsystem provides the ability to physically import (enter) and export (remove) logical volumes within the VTS. This support includes managing the physical removal of the 3590 cartridges containing stacked logical volumes from a VTS and the corresponding function for entering these cartridges into a VTS. These functions require interaction with the host and the tape management system software. See “Exporting Logical Volumes from a VTS Subsystem” on page 27 and “Importing Logical Volumes into a VTS Subsystem” on page 19 for more information.

Tape Volume Cache

The tape volume cache consists of a high performance array of DASD and storage management software. Virtual volumes are held in the tape volume cache when they are being used by the host system. Outboard storage management software manages which virtual volumes are in the tape volume cache and the movement of

data between the tape volume cache and physical devices. See “Pre-ACS Routine Exit” on page 6 for more information. The size of the DASD is made large enough so that more virtual volumes can be retained in it than just the ones currently associated with the virtual devices. After an application modifies and closes a virtual volume the storage management software in the subsystem makes a copy of it onto a physical tape. The virtual volume remains available on the DASD until the space it occupies reaches a predetermined threshold. Leaving the virtual volume in the DASD allows for fast access to it during subsequent requests. The DASD and the management of the space used to keep closed volumes available is called *tape volume cache*. Performance for mounting a volume that is in tape volume cache is quicker than if a real physical volume is mounted.

Storage Management of the Tape Volume Cache

Storage management software in the subsystem manages the contents of the tape volume cache. Virtual tape volumes are migrated from the tape volume cache to physical tape when they are no longer needed for fast access and recalled from tape to the tape volume cache when they are again requested to be mounted. The storage management software stacks multiple migrated files onto a 3590 tape, thereby utilizing its storage capacity. For more information on this volume stacking concept, see “Emulating 3490-Type Cartridges (Virtual Volumes)” on page 14.

Improved Cache Management

Improved cache management enables a customer, through their ACS routines, to select a cache preference group of 0 or 1. The storage class initial access response time (IART) parameter can be used to select the preference group. If the value specified in this parameter is greater than or equal to 100, the logical volume is associated with cache preference group 0. If the value specified is less than 100, the logical volume is associated with cache preference group 1, which is also the default. When space is needed in the cache, logical volumes associated with preference group 0 will be removed from the cache before logical volumes associated with preference group 1. Volumes are removed from preference group 0 based on their size, with the largest volumes being removed first. Volumes continue to be removed from preference group 1 based on a least recently used algorithm. Data written to the VTS for backup or long-term archival purposes can assign a storage class that specifies an initial access response time parameter greater than or equal to 100. With the appropriate support PTFs and micro-code installed, this support is available at DFSMS/MVS 1.4.0 and above.

Deleting Expired Virtual Tape Server Logical Volume Data

Logical volumes in a VTS are stored on physical stacked volumes after the host closes the logical volumes. Without the deletion of expired VTS logical volume data, the data that represents the contents of a logical volume on a physical stacked volume is not expired from the VTS point-of-view until the logical volume is rewritten or otherwise modified. This causes the VTS to continue managing the data as if it were still active, even though the user has actually scratched it. These “user-expired” logical volumes are maintained as active data by the VTS during reclaim processing. These volumes also needlessly consume physical stacked volume resources, thus requiring more physical stacked volumes in a VTS.

The deletion of expired logical volume data eliminates the need for the VTS to manage logical volume data that has already been expired at the host. At the same time, it provides a “grace period” during which the VTS continues to manage the data after the host has expired the data. The deletion times are associated with

categories that have the Fast Ready attribute. See *IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) Operator's Guide* for more information on defining the Fast Ready categories.

Maintaining Data Fragments from Migrated Volumes

When a virtual tape volume is no longer needed in the tape volume cache, the data it represents is not completely removed. A fragment of the data is kept on DASD. The data fragment includes information about the migrated virtual volume so that it can be recalled and it also includes the first several records from the last use of the volume.

Fast Response for Nonspecific Mount Requests

When a nonspecific mount is requested, data is written from the beginning of the tape, overwriting any existing data on the tape. Within a VTS subsystem, a nonspecific mount request is satisfied by accessing the data fragment in the tape volume cache associated with the virtual volume selected by the library manager to satisfy the request. No recall of the data from the previous usage of the volume is performed because the fragment contains the label information needed by the host tape management software to validate the use of the volume for a nonspecific mount request. The subsystem signals the host that the mount is complete when the fragment is accessed. The result is a very low mount response time because no physical movement or mounting of a cartridge is involved.

Using the 3590 Storage Capacity

One of the key features of the VTS is its capability to automatically use the 3590 tape technology cartridge storage capacity. With a VTS, volumes being created by the host applications are stored in a tape volume cache which is built from DASD devices. The size of the tape volume cache is greater than the capacity of a 3590 cartridge. The tape volume cache can potentially contain hundreds of tape volume images called virtual volumes, depending on the size of the volumes and tape volume cache. Through tape volume cache management policies, the VTS moves virtual volumes from the tape volume cache to a 3590 cartridge managed by the VTS subsystem. As virtual volumes are moved from the tape volume cache, they are stacked end to end on the cartridge and take up only the number of bytes written by the host, effectively using all of the storage capacity of the cartridge.

Logical Library Partitioning

To support the requirement that virtual tape server subsystems coexist with current 3490 and native 3590 subsystems in the same library, the library manager partitions the physical library into logical libraries: one library for *each* VTS subsystem (a physical library can contain up to two VTS subsystems) and another that contains all other subsystems. This must be done because a virtual tape server subsystem presents the image of 3490-type tape device and yet cannot read or write a real 3490 cartridge. By placing a virtual tape server subsystem in its own logical library, host software will not be able to attempt to allocate a virtual tape server device for a real 3490 mount, and likewise, the other way around.

A logical library can contain:

- A single virtual tape server subsystem
- The native 3490 or 3590 subsystems

Each logical library will have its own unique library sequence number and will look like a separate physical library to the hosts attached to the subsystem in that partition. The physical assets used by the subsystem are managed by the library manager in the library.

Operator Interface

The library manager console is used to perform the setup, management, and status functions needed to support a VTS subsystem.

Logical Volume Inventory

The database in the library manager is expanded to handle the large number of logical volumes that a VTS subsystem uses. There are also operator functions that allow you to add logical volumes by specifying a volume serial number range through the library manager console.

For more information concerning the usage, configuration, and characteristics of the virtual tape server, refer to *IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) Introduction and Planning Guide*.

Peer-to-Peer Virtual Tape Server

The IBM TotalStorage Peer-to-Peer Virtual Tape Server addresses data availability, system availability, remote copy and data vaulting desires for the VTS family. Virtual Tape Controllers exist between MVS hosts and the virtual tape servers to provide replication, transparent tracking, and synchronization of the Logical Tape volumes. The Peer-to-Peer VTS provides multiple copies of all tape data.

The Peer-to-Peer VTS Subsystem supports an immediate or deferred copy option. In deferred copy mode, the library schedules creation of the copy upon receiving the rewind/unload command from the host. The copy is then made in the background as VTS activity permits. In immediate copy mode, the copy is started upon receiving the host rewind/unload command and signals completion of the rewind/unload command when the copy operation is complete.

The Peer-to-Peer VTS Subsystem appears as one library image to the attached hosts. The single library image is referred to as the composite library. The underlying physical VTS libraries that make up the composite library are referred to as the distributed libraries. All three libraries (the composite library and two distributed libraries) will be defined to the host, whereas the drives and volumes will be defined and associated with the composite library.

The composite library will reflect the overall state of the VTS subsystems, with individual library status being reflected through the distributed libraries. For example, if one of the distributed libraries is in paused mode and the other is in automated mode, the overall status of the VTS composite library will be automated with messages to the host indicating which of the distributed libraries is paused. If one of the distributed libraries is taken offline at the library, the state of the composite will remain online and operational as long as one of the distributed libraries is operational.

Note: The Import/Export feature is not supported in a Peer-to-Peer VTS Subsystem.

Geographically Dispersed Parallel Sysplex Support for Peer-to-Peer VTS

The Geographically Dispersed Parallel Sysplex (GDPS) integrates Parallel Sysplex technology and remote copy technology to enhance application availability and improve disaster recovery. GDPS topology is a Parallel Sysplex cluster distributed across two sites, with all critical data mirrored between the sites. GDPS manages the remote copy configuration and storage subsystems, automates Parallel Sysplex operational tasks, and automates failure recovery from a single point of control, thereby improving application availability. GDPS supports all transaction managers (for example, Customer Information Control System [CICS] and Information Management System [IMS]) and data base managers (for example, DB2, IMS, and Virtual Storage Access Method [VSAM]).

The Peer-to-Peer VTS allows GDPS to include tape data in its management of data consistency and integrity across sites. A new I/O VTS selection option is provided for use with GDPS such that all virtual volumes are processed from a primary VTS and a copy is stored on the secondary VTS. GDPS has the control capability to “freeze” copy operations so that tape data consistency can be maintained across GDPS-managed sites. Additionally, GDPS can switch the primary and secondary VTSs, and synchronize system data sets such as catalogs, TCDB, and tape management databases with the Peer-to-Peer VTS after an emergency switchover.

The physical topology of a GDPS consists of a base or Parallel Sysplex cluster spread across two sites, with one or more z/OS systems at each site. GDPS uses the Parallel Sysplex cluster facilities to communicate between the systems. Each GDPS system joins the GDPS Parallel Sysplex cluster group. When a system joins a Parallel Sysplex cluster, GDPS automation will transfer GDPS policy and all GDPS status to the joining system.

If your installation is running Peer-to-Peer VTS under GDPS, take into account the following considerations:

- If the Peer-to-Peer VTS runs in immediate copy mode and is fully operational, the host control data sets for OAM and for your tape management software are consistent with the data on your logical volumes site-to-site as long as the volumes are copied.
- If a disaster occurs and you are running in immediate copy mode, there is no synchronization for open logical volumes. A rerun of the workload will inform you that you have no valid copy of the data.
- If a disaster takes place and you are in deferred mode, there is no synchronization for closed and open logical volumes. Open logical volumes at time of the disaster become invalidated; for closed logical volumes, it depends on which of the distributed libraries is the I/O VTS for that volume. If the I/O VTS is the remaining VTS, then the logical volumes are valid. If the I/O VTS is the damaged VTS and the copy process for a logical volume has not been completed, the logical volume is invalid. Remember that you are not able to have full control of the selection of the I/O VTS.
- The Peer-to-Peer VTS library under GDPS does *not* support logical software partitioning.

See the *Geographically Dispersed Parallel Sysplex Installation and Customization Guide* and the IBM Redbook *IBM TotalStorage™ Peer-to-Peer Virtual Tape Server Planning and Implementation Guide* (SG24-6115) for more information on GDPS.

Entering a Tape Cartridge into a Tape Library

To enter tape cartridges into an automated tape library dataserer, place the cartridges into an input station of the library. The following actions occur once the cartridges are placed in the input station:

- The library vision system reads the external label of each cartridge to be entered into the library.
- The library manager notifies all connected systems that there are cartridges to be entered into the tape library dataserer.
- The cartridge entry installation exit (CBRUXENT) is invoked to approve or deny the request to enter the cartridges into the library.
- The volume record in the TCDB is created or updated.

Note: To force cartridge entry processing to occur on a particular system, use the LIBRARY DISABLE command. For more information concerning this command, see “Disabling Cartridge Entry Installation Exit Processing” on page 79.

Tape cartridges are identified in a VTS at the library manager console through volume serial number ranges. When a 3590 cartridge, identified as a stacked volume, is entered into a library, the volume is recognized as being a VTS managed volume and is not reported to the host as a newly entered volume. Thus, a volume record for the stacked volume is neither created or maintained in the tape configuration database (TCDB). However, the volumes identified at the library manager console as being logical volumes are placed in the insert category and are processed as part of normal cartridge entry. A volume record for the logical volume is created and maintained in the TCDB. If a logical volume fails cartridge entry processing, the logical volume is purged from the library manager database. For information concerning entering logical volumes into a VTS, see “Importing Logical Volumes into a VTS Subsystem”.

Tape cartridges can be entered into a manual tape library through the use of the CBRXLCS manual cartridge entry (MCE) programming interface, or through use of the LIBRARY ENTER command. The following actions occur:

- The cartridge entry installation exit (CBRUXENT) is invoked to approve or deny the entry request.
- The volume record in the TCDB is created or updated.

For more information on manual cartridge entry (MCE), see “Manual Cartridge Entry (MCE)” on page 109. For more information on the LIBRARY ENTER command, see “Entering a Tape Volume into an MTL” on page 78.

Note: Sample program CBRSPCLCS can also be used to enter volumes into a manual tape library.

Importing Logical Volumes into a VTS Subsystem

To introduce logical volumes with data into a VTS library or to reintroduce logical volumes back into a VTS to reuse the volume serial numbers, the volumes must be imported into the library. An import can be performed at the host, with a list of logical volumes to import, or at the library manager, if a single logical volume is to be imported. For more information concerning importing a single logical volume, see “Importing A Single Logical Volume at the Library Manager” on page 22.

An import operation performed at the host begins with the customer or the tape management system writing the list of volumes to be imported into a library on a logical volume in the library. This logical volume then becomes the import list volume. The import list volume indicates:

Import all logical volumes

The list of volumes written on file sequence one is a list of stacked volumes to be imported into the VTS. All logical volumes residing on the stacked volumes specified are imported.

Import specific logical volumes

In this case, the list of volumes is a list of stacked and logical volume pairs; each stacked volume is followed by the logical volume to import.

An import option can also be specified along with the volume serial numbers of the stacked and logical volume pairs. If the import option is omitted (blank), the data contents of the logical volume are copied into the VTS subsystem and a data fragment file entry and the library manager record are created. If the option specified indicates "SCRATCH", only the data fragment file entry and the library manager record are created (data contents not copied). If the option specified indicates "INITIALIZE", only a library manager record for the volume is created. If a logical volume serial number is not included with the stacked volume serial number, the import option specified applies to all logical volumes on the stacked volume.

File sequence two is written and later updated by the library manager to record the import status of each requested logical volume. All files must be written in the library specified format. Refer to *IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) Operator's Guide* for details regarding the library specified format. See "SAMPLIB Member CBRSPSIM" on page 246 and "SAMPLIB Member CBRSPPIIM" on page 248 for sample JCL that can be used to write the two required files on the import list volume.

The required stacked volumes containing logical volumes to be imported must be entered into the library prior to initiating the import operation at the library. If the import operation is initiated before the volumes have been entered and placed in the import category, the import operation immediately fails.

Once the import list volume is written and the stacked volumes are entered into the library, the host needs to notify the library of the logical volume being used for the import operation and to initiate the import operation at the library. The CBRXLCS external services programming interface FUNC=IMPORT or the LIBRARY IMPORT command can be used to initiate the import operation and to identify the import list volume. See "Import Logical Volumes (IMPORT)" on page 110 and "Importing Logical Volumes into a VTS" on page 131 for more information. Only one import operation can be queued or in progress at a time in a physical library. This is a different restriction than for export processing which allows one export operation at a time in each VTS subsystem. Also, if an export operation is already queued or in process, an import operation initiated to the same VTS subsystem as the export operation fails. However, an import operation initiated to a different VTS subsystem is allowed.

When all of the requested logical volumes on a stacked volume have been imported, the library manager places the logical volumes in the insert category to be processed as part of normal cartridge entry processing. There are additional flags that are passed to the cartridge entry installation exit (CBRUXENT) to indicate that the volume is a logical volume and that it has been imported. The logical volume

flag is also set for non-imported logical volumes entered into a VTS. This provides a mechanism for the tape management system to track logical volumes.

For the import operation to continue with minimal host delays, it is important for a host that owns the TCDB records for the logical volumes being imported to have the OAM address space available to process the volumes in the insert category. This enables the import category to be processed without delays and allows the library to continue with the next stacked volume.

Note: If an import operation is initiated and no host processes the logical volumes added to the insert category within 60 minutes, the VTS terminates the import operation. This termination is equivalent to a cancel initiated by an operator at the library manager console. See “Canceling an Import Operation” for more information.

All attached hosts are notified once the import operation is complete. This enables the import completion status to be reported independently of the status of the host that initiated the import operation. If the attached host has the import list volume in its TCDB, messages are issued with the completion results of the import operation. See “Import Status Messages” on page 22 for more information.

To release the import stacked volumes from the library, the operator can selectively eject the volume or volumes from the library at the library manager. Another operator option is to alter the volume from the import category to the insert category which would allow the stacked volume to be entered into a VTS or a non-VTS library for reuse as a scratch stacked volume or as a physical scratch volume. Before reusing an import stacked volume, make sure that all the logical volumes on the stacked volume either have been successfully imported, or that the data on the logical volumes is no longer needed.

If using DFSMSrmm as your tape management system, use the SEARCHVOLUME subcommand with CONTAINER(*volser*) to verify that no logical volumes are still associated with the stacked volume. This verification should indicate that all logical volumes have been imported. To reuse the volume as a scratch stacked volume, enter the volume into a VTS library. To reuse the stacked volume as a scratch physical volume, enter the volume into a non-VTS library. The new physical volume will be automatically added to the DFSMSrmm control data set if DFSMSrmm is used. For more information regarding DFSMSrmm commands, refer to *z/OS DFSMSrmm Guide and Reference*.

Note: When a logical volume is successfully imported, the original exported copy of the logical volume is not altered. Care should be taken not to import this level of data again or changes made to the imported copy will be lost.

Canceling an Import Operation

If needed, the LIBRARY IMPORT,*volser*,CANCEL command or the CBRXLCS external services programming interface FUNC=IMPORT with the cancel option can be used to cancel an executing import operation to expedite other work or to quiesce library activity in preparation for maintenance. A cancel from the host is normally effective immediately, except for the period of time when host insert processing is occurring for logical volumes that are being imported from a stacked volume. In this case, the host cancel takes effect after host insert processing is completed. The host cancellation method is the preferred method for canceling an import operation. However, in addition to the host cancellation methods, an import operation can also be explicitly canceled at the library manager, if there is no host available to cancel the import operation. Differences in the cancel methods will

occur during host insert processing. If the explicit cancel occurs during host insert processing, the import operation terminates and logical volumes that are still assigned to the insert category are left in the insert category to be processed by the host when it is available.

The status of all logical volumes requested for import is found in the status file of the import list volume after the import operation completion. Exported stacked volumes that were provided for import and were completed prior to the cancel are not affected by the cancel.

Import Status Messages

As the library is processing an import operation, status messages are reported to all attached hosts. This results in OAM issuing message CBR3750I. Status messages are issued at the following key processing points:

- When import processing begins for a stacked volume
- When the library completes importing the requested logical volumes on a stacked volume (i.e., the volumes are in the insert category to be processed by the host)
- When the import processing is complete for a stacked volume (i.e., all of the requested logical volumes on the stacked volume have been processed by OAM)
- When processing completes for the import operation

The library may also issue message CBR3750I if an error occurs during the import operation that temporarily or permanently stops the operation.

Importing A Single Logical Volume at the Library Manager

There may be instances in which an exported logical volume is needed during job processing and the logical volume has not previously been imported. To expedite this process, the library allows an operator to initiate a single volume import operation at the library manager. The operator enters the stacked volume containing the logical volume to import and indicates which logical volume is being imported. This eliminates the need for the host to write the logical list volume discussed in "Importing Logical Volumes into a VTS Subsystem" on page 19.

To further assist in this process, when a logical volume is exported from the library, the volume record in the TCDB is updated with a shelf location of `STACKED=volser` (if the TCDB record is retained and the shelf location is blank). The volume not in library installation exit sample program, CBRSPUXV, also recognizes a shelf location of `STACKED=volser` and displays the stacked volume. This allows the operator to identify the specific stacked volume on which the requested logical volume resides. If an installation is not using this default support, nor DFSMSrmm, custom modifications to the volume not in library installation exit will need to be made.

The sample volume not in library exit supplied by DFSMSrmm also takes into account whether an exported logical volume is being requested and will display the stacked volume on which the logical volume resides.

As with a host initiated import operation, when the single volume import operation is complete, all hosts attached to the VTS subsystem that performed the operation will be notified of this completion. Only one import operation, host or library initiated, is allowed per physical library.

Checking the Volume Serial Number for Uniqueness

When entering tape cartridges into a tape library, OAM checks each volume serial number in the insert category for uniqueness (see "Volume Serial Number

Restrictions” on page 25). If there is already an SMS-managed DASD or optical volume with the same volume serial number as the tape volume being entered, the cartridge entry is rejected. Also, if the media type of the volume being entered does not match the media type of the volume in the TCDB, cartridge entry is rejected. For cartridge entry processing into a manual tape library, only DASD volumes are checked for uniqueness.

If OAM determines that the volume serial number is unique, it obtains the tape volume record from the TCDB. Depending on whether or not a record is found, several different actions can occur:

- Tape volume record is not present (for a newly entered cartridge, normal cartridge entry occurs).
- Tape volume record indicates the volume is in another library (In an automated tape library environment, a check is made to determine if the volume still resides in the other library. If the volume does not reside in that library, entry processing continues. In a manual tape library environment, since a check cannot be made, entry is denied).
- Tape volume record indicates volume is in this library (In an automated tape library environment, entry processing continues. In a manual tape library environment, since the possibility of a duplicate exists, entry is denied.).
- Tape volume record indicates volume shelf-resident (normal cartridge reentry).

Before the volume record is created or updated, the cartridge entry installation exit (CBRUXENT) is called to set or verify values for many of the record fields. See “Cartridge Entry Installation Exit (CBRUXENT)” on page 166 for a list of fields.

Using Global Resource Serialization with Cartridge Entry Processing

Cartridge entry processing is normally serialized, that is, one system performs cartridge entry for the entire SMS complex. This is accomplished by sending one or more SYSTEMS level enqueues around a global resource serialization ring. For DFSMS/MVS V1R3, the resource names are:

```
QNAME=SYSCBR  
RNAME-CARTRIDGE_ENTRY_libname
```

With DFSMS/MVS V1R4 and above, a second enqueue is also obtained to preserve the already existing serialization that is in place with DFSMS/MVS V1R3. This additional serialization eliminates the need for coexistence support at the lower release levels and sets in place an authorized enqueue. The resource names are:

```
QNAME=SYSZCBR  
RNAME-CARTRIDGE_ENTRY_libname
```

When DFSMS/MVS V1R3 is no longer supported, the first enqueue using SYSCBR will be eliminated.

Note: OAM already sends a SYSTEMS level enqueue around the global resource serialization ring, so there is no need to include the QNAME or RNAME in the SYSTEM inclusion RNL. The QNAME and RNAME are provided for documentation purposes.

It is possible to perform cartridge entry processing without the global resource serialization ring. The consequences of unserialized processing are as follows:

1. Cartridge entry occurs concurrently in all processors. Each processor handles a subset of the entered volumes.
2. Some additional processing overhead takes place, due to concurrent processing of the same list of volumes.

3. The cartridge entry installation exit is entered once for each volume on each processor. The installation must account for this possibility when writing the exit.

The use of the global resource serialization ring is recommended.

Note: The global resource serialization ring (GRS) discussion does not pertain to cartridge entry processing.

Using Global Resource Serialization in a Manual Tape Library

To serialize tape configuration database (TCDB) updates during cartridge entry, eject and change use attribute processing, a systems level enqueue, at the volume serial number level, is sent around a global resource serialization ring. The resource names are:

```
QNAME=SYSZCBR
RNAME=MTL_VOLSER_volsername
```

Note: OAM already sends a SYSTEMS level enqueue around the global serialization ring, so there is no need to include the QNAME or RNAME in the SYSTEM inclusion RNL. The QNAME and RNAME are provided for documentation purposes.

The use of the global resource serialization ring is recommended. Without this serialization, simultaneous processing of the same volser may result in a double increment or decrement of the appropriate scratch count.

Tape Volume Requirements

The ATLDS and the MTL support the use of the IBM Cartridge System Tape or its American National Standards Institute (ANSI) equivalent. The following cartridge types are supported in the ATLDS and the MTL:

- MEDIA1 IBM Cartridge System Tape
- MEDIA2 IBM Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape
- MEDIA3 IBM High Performance Cartridge Tape
- MEDIA4 IBM Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape

Each volume is identified by a unique volume serial number.

The following requirements are enforced for cartridge system tape volumes:

- All physical volumes residing in an ATLDS must have a supported external barcode label readable by the automated tape library dataserer vision system unless the unlabeled tape facility at the library manager is being used.
- All volumes residing in a MTL should also have a supported machine readable external label to be compatible with the ATLDS.
- All private volumes must have either an internal IBM standard tape label or an International Organization for Standardization American National Standards Institute (ISO/ANSI) label, unless bypass label processing (BLP) or nonlabeled tape (NL) is specified.
- All private volumes must have identical internal and external volume serial numbers, unless BLP or NL is specified. The internal volume serial number is recorded in the tape volume label (VOL1 label).
- BLP or NL may be requested for input processing on specific volume serial references. It may also be requested for output processing on specific or nonspecific references.
- All volume serial numbers in the same SMS complex must be unique across tape, DASD, and optical environments.

- A scratch volume cannot be requested using a specific volume serial number.
- All volumes of a multivolume data set should reside in the same library, or all should reside outside a library; however, if they do not, the installation will be given the chance to enter the volumes through the volume not in library installation exit (CBRUXVNL).
- All volumes of a multivolume data set must belong to the same tape storage group.
- All volumes of a multivolume data set must be recorded using the same tape recording technology.
- Volumes of a multivolume data set may be an intermix of media types supporting the same recording technology.

Accessing the Tape Volumes

Because tape volumes can reside either inside libraries or on shelves outside the library, physical procedures for accessing volumes vary according to their location:

- When a library-resident volume is requested, the system mounts it on a tape drive in the tape library containing the volume.
- When a shelf-resident volume is requested, the installation is given the opportunity to enter the volume into a tape library by using the volume not in library installation exit. If the volume is not entered into the library, the system requests the volume be mounted on a nonlibrary device (stand-alone tape drive).

Note: Shelf storage may be local to the computer facility and, therefore, accessible to the operator, or it may be located at another location.

Volume Serial Number Restrictions

When a physical tape volume is entered into an ATLDS or MTL, the cartridge must have an external label (readable by machine, human, or both). If the volume is assigned the private use attribute on entry into the tape library, a magnetically recorded volume serial number on the tape volume label must be present and match the volume serial number on the external label. This label is not checked on entry into the tape library, so if there is an error, it is not detected until the volume has been mounted and the label has been read. If the volume is assigned the scratch use attribute and no volume serial number exists for it, a new volume label with a matching volume serial number is written whenever the data set is opened for output on the tape. For a scratch volume with an existing volume serial number that does not match the volume serial number on the external label, the internal label is rewritten to match the external label. In the case of an MTL scratch volume, since the label process is not automated, it is recommended that the IEHINITT utility (or RMM equivalent EDGINERS) be used to pre-label the scratch cartridge, otherwise the operator may be prompted for the volume serial number when the volume is first mounted for output.

Ejecting a Tape Cartridge from a Tape Library

Ejecting a cartridge from a tape library breaks the connection between the cartridge and the library in which it resided. Cartridges may need to be moved to a different location and must therefore be ejected from the library in which they currently reside so they may be put into a library at the new location. Once the cartridges are ejected from the library in which they reside, they are no longer associated with that library and are not eligible to be mounted in the library without going through the cartridge entry process.

In the automated tape library environment, there is currently a limit on the number of eject requests that device services can have queued across all libraries from a single system. This queue limit is currently set at 1600. For this limit to be as

transparent as possible, OAM will not send more than 100 eject requests to a single library from a single system. If OAM receives more than 100 eject requests for a given library, it will wait until an eject request completes before sending another request to that library. However, if the OAM address space is stopped or restarted with an SCDS activation, rather than purging the remaining eject requests, OAM will try and send down as many of the remaining eject requests as it can before reaching the device services queue limit of 1600. Additionally, there is a Peer-to-Peer VTS Subsystem limitation. This library will only accept up to 1000 eject requests across all connected systems. Given these limitations (and potential storage constraints when processing thousands of outstanding eject requests), we recommend that you limit the number of outstanding eject requests at any given time to no more than a couple thousand per system. Then, as the outstanding eject requests complete, more can be initiated.

Cartridges can be ejected from a tape library in the following ways:

- OAM can eject the tape cartridge automatically following an unsuccessful cartridge entry attempt.
- An operator can eject the tape cartridge using the MVS LIBRARY EJECT command. See “Ejecting a Specific Tape Volume” on page 75 for more information concerning this command.
- A storage administrator can specify an EJECT line operator next to a volume serial number on an ISMF Mountable Tape Volume List panel. See “Ejecting a Volume from a Tape Library” on page 295 for more information.
- An application program can issue the CBRXLCS macro with the EJECT function. For more information on this macro and its functions, see “Chapter 6. LCS External Services” on page 109.

Before a cartridge can be ejected from a tape library, the cartridge eject installation exit (CBRUXEJC) is invoked to approve or deny the eject request. See “Cartridge Eject Installation Exit (CBRUXEJC)” on page 174 for more information.

Note: Manually removing volumes from a 3494 tape library for the purpose of ejecting them is not supported. The volumes which are manually ejected from a library are still library-resident in the TCDB causing an out of synchronization condition with the library manager database. Volumes must be ejected following the methods above.

When a tape volume residing in a manual tape library is ejected, no automated movement of the cartridge takes place. It is up to the operator to physically remove the tape cartridge from the storage racks associated with the manual tape library.

After the eject request completes, the invoker of the eject request is notified of its success or failure and the volume record in the TCDB is updated or deleted.

Note: For information concerning exporting or removing a logical tape volume from a VTS, see “Exporting Logical Volumes from a VTS Subsystem” on page 27 and “Ejecting a Logical Volume from a VTS”.

Ejecting a Logical Volume from a VTS

If a logical volume is in a fast ready category at the VTS, it can be ejected (purged) from the library using the methods described in “Ejecting a Tape Cartridge from a Tape Library” on page 25. An export operation for the purpose of deleting a logical scratch volume is not required. If a logical volume is in the insert category, it can also be ejected (purged) using the same methods after a TCDB record is manually

created or updated indicating that the volume resides in the library. For information concerning an export operation, see “Exporting Logical Volumes from a VTS Subsystem”.

Exporting Logical Volumes from a VTS Subsystem

To remove a set of logical volumes from a VTS, the operator or the tape management system should first run a vaulting-type operation at the host to determine the list of logical volumes to be exported. This list is then written in volume serial number and destination pairs as the first file on an available logical volume. This volume then becomes the export list volume. This export list volume must reside in the library where the volumes to be exported reside and it must be written in a library specified format. Two more files are also written on this export list volume. File sequence two is a file reserved for future use. File sequence three is written and later updated by the VTS to record the export status of each logical volume listed in the export list. All three files must be written in the library specified format. Refer to *IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494) Operator's Guide* for details regarding the library specified format. See “SAMPLIB Member CBRSPSXP” on page 251 and “SAMPLIB Member CBRSPXP” on page 254 for sample JCL that can be used to write the three required files on the export list volume. The DFSMSrmm SEARCHVOLUME command with the CLIST option can be used to create this export list. For more information on this command, refer to *z/OS DFSMSrmm Command Reference Summary*.

Once the export list volume is written, the LIBRARY EXPORT command or the CBRXLCS external programming interface FUNC=EXPORT can be used to identify the export list volume and to initiate the export operation at the library. For more information, see “Export Logical Volumes (EXPORT)” on page 110 and “Exporting Logical Volumes from a VTS” on page 130. Only one export operation can be queued or in progress at a time in each virtual tape server subsystem. Also, if an import is currently queued or in progress, an export operation cannot be initiated to the same virtual tape server subsystem.

The library then mounts the export list volume and determines the list of volumes to export and the destination or destinations for the logical volumes. Logical volumes with the same destination will be grouped together on the same stacked media. This lets a single export operation cover multiple destination sites. The library then begins writing the export logicals on stacked volumes. On the third file of the export list volume, the library records the status of each logical volume being exported; this can be referred to as the export status file. If a volume cannot be exported because it is currently in use or does not exist in the library, the export status file indicates the error that occurred as well as reflects the successful export of each logical volume. Each exported stacked volume contains a volume map identifying the contents of the stacked volume, logical volume data fragment files for each logical volume successfully copied, and the logical volumes themselves. A single export operation may result in many stacked volumes being exported with multiple volumes per destination.

As the library manager finishes with a stacked volume, the logical volumes are assigned to the exported category. The volumes in this category are then processed by OAM. Volume export processing is similar to eject processing; however, in addition, the cartridge eject installation exit (CBRUXEJC) is passed the container volume serial number of the stacked cartridge on which the logical volume resides. This is information that the tape management system will want to record. The tape management system's acceptance of the eject is implicit (there is no opportunity to fail the eject). However, in an environment where a common TCDB is shared by

more than one tape management system and each tape management system has its own database, the tape management system can return UXJIGNOR, Return Code 12, to allow another tape management system who “owns” the exported volume to process. If UXJIGNOR is returned from the CBRUXEJC installation exit, the logical volume remains in the exported category; otherwise, each logical volume is then purged from the library manager inventory and the host TCDB volume record is kept or purged, depending on the disposition specified by the installation exit or defaults set for the library when it was defined using ISMF.

Once all logical volumes residing on a stacked cartridge have been successfully purged from the library manager inventory, the export operation continues at the library, filling another stacked volume for the destination currently being processed. The completed stacked cartridge can then be released by an operator at the library manager either on an individual completion basis, or after a set of volumes has been processed. For the export operation to continue with minimal host delays, it is important for a host that owns the TCDB records for the logical volumes being exported to have the OAM address space available to process the volumes in the exported category. This enables the exported category to be processed without delays and allows the library to continue with the next stacked volume.

Note: If an export operation is initiated and no host processes the exported category within 60 minutes, the VTS terminates the export operation. This termination is equivalent to a cancel initiated by an operator at the library manager console. See “Canceling an Export Operation” for more information.

Once the export operation is complete, all hosts attached to the VTS subsystem that performed the operation are notified of this completion. This enables export completion status to be reported independently of the status of the host that initiated the export operation. If the attached host has the export list volume in its TCDB, messages are issued with the completion results of the export operation. Status messages are also issued at key processing points throughout the export operation. See “Export Status Messages” on page 29 for more information.

Canceling an Export Operation

Because an extensive list of export volume candidates could take considerable time to complete, it may be necessary to cancel an export operation to expedite other processing or to quiesce the library activity in preparation for maintenance. The `LIBRARY EXPORT,volser,CANCEL` command or the CBRXLCS external services programming interface `FUNC=EXPORT` with the cancel option can be used for this purpose. A cancel from the host is normally effective immediately, except for the period of time when host purge processing is occurring for logical volumes being exported to the exported stacked volume. In this case, the host cancel takes effect after host purge processing is completed for the exported stacked volume.

The host cancellation method is the preferred method for cancelling an export operation. However, in addition to host cancellation methods, an export operation can also be explicitly cancelled at the library manager if there is no host available to cancel the export operation. Differences in the cancel methods will occur during host purge processing. If the explicit cancel occurs during host purge processing, the export operation terminates and logical volumes in the exported category are placed in the insert category (none of these logical volumes will be exported) and the host will perform insert processing on these logical volumes when it is available. The exported stacked volume will go back into the pool of usable scratch stacked volumes.

The status of all logical volumes requested for export is found in the status file of the export list volume after the export operation completes. Exported stacked volumes that were completed and placed in the export hold category prior to the cancel are not affected by the cancel.

Export Status Messages

As the library is processing an export operation, status messages are reported to all attached hosts. This results in OAM issuing operator message CBR3750I. Status messages are issued at the following key processing points:

- When export processing begins for a particular destination
- When the library completes a stacked volume and the logical volumes are in the exported category and ready for host processing
- When the library completes a stacked volume and it is ready to be released (ejected) by an operator
- When processing completes for a particular destination
- When processing completes for the export operation

The library may also issue message CBR3750I if an error occurs during the export operation that temporarily or permanently stops the export operation.

Using Global Resource Serialization with Export Processing

To prevent multiple hosts from attempting to simultaneously process logical volumes in the export category, a SYSTEMS level enqueue, similar to cartridge entry processing, is used. The resource names are:

```
QNAME=SYSZCBR  
RNAME=EXPORTED_CATEGORY_1ibname
```

It is possible to perform export processing without the global resource serialization ring. The following are consequences of unserialized processing:

1. Export completion processing occurs simultaneously in all processors. Each processor handles a subset of the exported volumes.
2. Some additional processing overhead takes place, due to concurrent processing of the same list of volumes.
3. The cartridge eject installation exit is entered once for each volume on each processor. The installation must account for this possibility when writing the exit.

Due to these consequences, the use of the global resource serialization ring is recommended.

Chapter 2. Planning for the Tape Library Support

In many ways, planning is the most important phase of a product's implementation and administration cycle. Time spent in planning is fully repaid in time, effort, and money saved by a well-implemented installation and a smooth transition to full system integration. This chapter identifies key areas that must be addressed during the planning stage for tape library support, as well as installation procedures to follow when you are ready to install OAM. Rather than repeat large amounts of information available elsewhere, this chapter focuses specifically on issues related to tape library dataservers and provides references to other resources.

Analyzing Your Processing Environment

Installing a new product is rarely an isolated event. Planners must evaluate how the environment is affected by the new product, as well as how to customize the new product to integrate it with the existing components. This section presents hardware and media requirements and considerations.

Hardware

Drive types supported in a tape library:

3480	Identified in JCL statements as UNIT=3480. Only supported in the MTL.
3490	Sometimes referred to as a base 3490. It is identified on JCL statements as UNIT=3480X. Supported in the 3495 ATLDS and in the MTL.
3490E	It is identified on JCL statements as UNIT=3490. Supported in the 3495 and 3494 ATLDS and in the MTL.
3590-1	It is identified on JCL statements as UNIT=3590-1. Supported in the 3495 and 3494 ATLDS and in the MTL as a 3590 Model B Tape Subsystem.
3590-E	It is identified on JCL statements as UNIT=3590-1 or UNIT=3490. Supported in the 3494 ATLDS and in the MTL, in 3590-1 emulation mode only, as a 3590 Model E Tape Subsystem.

Notes:

1. The 3495 ATLDS can be configured with 3490, 3490E, and 3590 Model B tape subsystems.
2. The 3494 ATLDS can be configured with 3490E, 3590 Model B, and 3590 Model E tape subsystems.
3. The MTL can be configured with 3480, 3490, 3490E, 3590 Model B, and 3590 Model E tape subsystems.

Note: Due to the compaction incompatibility between the 3480 and the base 3490 (3480X) both of these device types are not allowed in the same manual tape library.

The hardware configurations described in Table 1 on page 32 can be used separately or in specific combinations to create or modify your tape storage environment.

Table 1 on page 32 describes hardware configurations that can be used separately or in specific combinations to create or modify your tape storage environment.

Table 1. Tape Storage Configurations

Library Model	Subsystem Device Type	Library Attachment	Media Supported		Recording Technology	Noncompacted Data Capacity
3495 L20, L30, L40, L50	3490	Yes	MEDIA1	(R/W)	18	200MB
	3490E	Yes	MEDIA1 MEDIA1/2	(R) (R/W)	18 36	200MB 400MB, 800MB
	3590-1*	Yes	MEDIA3/4	(R/W)	128	10GB, 20GB
3494 L10	3490E	Yes	MEDIA1 MEDIA1/2	(R) (R/W)	18 36	200MB 400MB, 800MB
	3590-1*	Yes	MEDIA3/4	(R/W)	128	10GB, 20GB
	3590-E** (3590-1 emulation)	Yes	MEDIA3/4 MEDIA3/4	(R) (R/W)	128 256	10GB, 20GB 20GB, 40GB
MTL	3480	N/A	MEDIA1	(R/W)	18	200MB
	3490	N/A	MEDIA1	(R/W)	18	200MB
	3490E	N/A	MEDIA1 MEDIA1/2	(R) (R/W)	18 36	200MB 400MB, 800MB
	3590-1*	N/A	MEDIA3/4	(R/W)	128	10GB, 20GB
	3590-E** (3590-1 emulation)	N/A	MEDIA3/4 MEDIA3/4	(R) (R/W)	128 256	10GB, 20GB 20GB, 40GB
STAND ALONE	3480	N/A	MEDIA1	(R/W)	18	200MB
	3490	N/A	MEDIA1	(R/W)	18	200MB
	3490E	N/A	MEDIA1 MEDIA1/2	(R) (R/W)	18 36	200MB 400MB, 800MB
	3590-1*	N/A	MEDIA3/4	(R/W)	128	10GB, 20GB
	3590-E** (3490E emulation)	N/A	MEDIA3/4 MEDIA3/4	(R) (R/W)	128 256	10GB, 20GB 20GB, 40GB
	3590-E** (3590-1 emulation)	N/A	MEDIA3/4 MEDIA3/4	(R) (R/W)	128 256	10GB, 20GB 20GB, 40GB

Table 1. Tape Storage Configurations (continued)

Library Model	Subsystem Device Type	Library Attachment	Media Supported	Recording Technology	Noncompacted Data Capacity
<p>Note:</p> <p>MB = 1 048 576 bytes</p> <p>GB = 1 073 741 824 bytes</p> <p>(R) = Read only</p> <p>(R/W) = Read and write</p> <p>MEDIA1 = IBM Cartridge System Tape</p> <p>MEDIA2 = IBM Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape</p> <p>MEDIA3 = IBM High Performance Cartridge Tape</p> <p>MEDIA4 = IBM Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape</p> <p>*3590-1 represents the 3590 Model B Tape Subsystem and is a system defined esoteric.</p> <p>**3590-E represents the 3590 Model E Tape Subsystem and is not a system defined esoteric. It is supported in a library as a 3590 Model E tape subsystem rather than what it is emulating.</p> <p>For information concerning cartridge storage feature options and cartridge capacities for these tape devices, refer to <i>TotalStorage Automated Tape Library (3494) Introduction and Planning Guide</i>, <i>3480 Magnetic Tape Planning and Migration Guide</i>, <i>3490 Models A01, A02, A10, A20, B02, B04, B20, and B40 Introduction</i>, <i>3490 Planning and Migration Guide</i>, and <i>IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape System 3590 Introduction and Planning Guide</i>.</p> <p>The library models indicated can be configured with any combination of correlating tape subsystem devices. These configurations may vary in the number of drives, slots, and media type supported in the libraries.</p> <p>OAM is not aware of the type and number of channel attachments used to connect the supported Magnetic Tape Subsystems to the ESA/370 or ESA/390[®] processor. Any number and type (serial or parallel) of channel attachments supported by these subsystem configurations and the processor to which they are attached may be used.</p>					

Manual Tape Library Hardware Considerations

Operation of this support outside of the true stand-alone environment is not intended. To determine feasibility of this support within a non-IBM robotic tape library, contact the manufacturer of the robotic tape library. Also, if a vendor's tape device, emulating a 3490E or 3590 native device, is defined to the library, the manual tape library support will treat this device as a real 3490E or as a real 3590 Model B. When entered into the library, the media must be defined as its emulated media. It is then the user's responsibility to manage media or device incompatibilities. This can be managed by keeping incompatible devices with the same emulated or real device type in separate libraries.

Managing Multiple Media Formats

The management of data on tape volumes is not discussed in this manual. Refer to *z/OS DFSMS OAM Planning, Installation, and Storage Administration Guide for Object Support* for information on OAM's role in the storage of objects on tape volumes. Also, refer to *z/OS DFSMSrmm Guide and Reference* for the role of DFSMSrmm in the management of data on tape volumes.

Your planning strategy must include consideration of multiple media formats and a choice of cartridge system tapes. The TCDB provides the tape device selection information (TDSI) that determines the data class attributes assigned to a volume. Depending on the IBM subsystems, and available features, and interchange requirements between stand-alone and library-resident tape drives, multimedia considerations should include:

- Should compaction be used?

- Does the tape subsystem write in 18-track, 36-track, 128-track, or 256-track format?
- Does the tape subsystem use IBM Cartridge System Tape, IBM Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape, IBM High Performance Cartridge Tape, or IBM Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape?

Compaction Considerations: Compacting data may increase effective storage capacity. The 3490E subsystem uses the improved data recording capability (IDRC) as the default mode. IDRC is a standard feature on the 3490 subsystems. The 3590 subsystem uses an improved compaction algorithm to increase effective cartridge data capacity.

18-Track, 36-Track, 128-Track and 256-Track Considerations: The 3490 subsystem writes data in the 18-track format. Data written in the 18-track format can be retrieved or read by the 3490E. All 3490E subsystems write data in the 36-track format, which doubles the storage capacity of a tape cartridge. The 3590 Model B Tape Subsystems write data in the 128-track format and the 3590 Model E Tape Subsystems write data in the 256-track format.

Note: Data written on the 3490E subsystem cannot be read by either a 3480, 3490, or 3590 subsystem. Data written on a 3590 Model E Tape Subsystem is incompatible with any other tape subsystem; however, data written on a 3590 Model B Tape Subsystem can be read on a 3590 Model E Tape Subsystem.

Tape capacity considerations: It is important to keep in mind the capacities of the tape cartridges you are using within the tape library to allow the most efficient use of the storage space available. Table 1 on page 32 depicts the capacity differences between the tape cartridge types.

Tape Device Selection Information

The device selection attributes of a tape volume are recorded in the tape device selection information (TDSI) fields of the tape volume record. The TDSI fields are set when a cartridge is entered into a library. The installation should provide a cartridge entry installation exit to assist in the process of setting the TDSI fields. See “Cartridge Entry Installation Exit (CBRUXENT)” on page 166 for more information concerning this cartridge entry installation exit. See “TDSI Coexistence Considerations” on page 46 for more information on TDSI. The following TDSI is assigned to the tape volume:

- Recording technique—specified as unknown, 18-track, 36-track, 128-track, or 256-track
- Media type—specified as unknown, MEDIA1, MEDIA2, MEDIA3, or MEDIA4
- Compaction—specified as unknown, none, or compacted
- Special attribute—may be set to none or read-compatible

3490 Read-compatibility processing allows a MEDIA1 cartridge written on a base 3490 device using 18-track recording technique to be mounted and read on a 3490E device. Data originally written to a volume using a base 3490 can be *over-written* using a 3490E device as long as the recording starts at the load point of the volume. However, using a 3490E device to write *additional* data starting in the middle of a volume originally written by a base 3490 is not permitted, since this *intermixes* the 18-track and 36-track recording techniques on the same volume.

In a nonlibrary environment, the allocation process provides two system-defined esoteric unit names—SYS3480R and SYS348XR — that allow the installation to specify that the volume is used for read-only purposes so that 3490E drives become eligible for allocation.

3590 Read-compatibility processing allows a MEDIA3 or MEDIA4 cartridge written on a 3590 Model B Tape Subsystem using the 128-track recording technique to be mounted and read on a 3590 Model E Tape Subsystem. Data originally written to a volume using a 3590 Model B drive can be over-written using a 3590 Model E device as long as the recording starts at the load point of the volume. However, using the 3590 Model E device to write additional data starting in the middle of a volume originally written by a 3590 Model B device is not permitted, since this intermixes the 128-track and 256-track recording techniques on the same volume.

In a nonlibrary environment, there are no equivalent 3590 system-defined esoteric unit names.

For a request for an SMS-managed volume, the JCL UNIT specification is ignored, so read-compatibility must be handled in a different manner. There is a special attribute field included in the TDSI that can be set to read-compatible, allowing 3490E drives to become eligible to handle requests for 18-track recorded volumes and 3590 Model E drives to become eligible to handle 128-track recorded volumes. Your installation is responsible to set the read-compatible special attribute in either of the following manners:

- Using the cartridge entry installation exit (CBRUXENT).
- Using the access method services ALTER VOLUMEENTRY service. (For more information on access method services, refer to *z/OS DFSMS Access Method Services*.)

Once the attribute is set, it remains set until the volume is returned to scratch. To request read-compatibility for a single usage of the volume, you can specify `LABEL=(,,,IN)` on the DD statement of your JCL.

Software Volume Categories

Figure 3 on page 36 identifies the software categories used in support of the ATLDs. Refer to “TCDB Volume Error Status Field and Software Error Category in ATLDs” on page 36 for a discussion of the software error category.

CATEGORY (in HEX)	NAME	DEFINITION
0001	MEDIA1	Cartridge system tape common scratch pool*
0002	MEDIA2	Enhanced capacity cartridge system tape common scratch pool*
0003	MEDIA3	High performance cartridge tape common scratch pool
0004	MEDIA4	Extended high performance cartridge tape common scratch pool
000E	ERROR CATEGORY	Scratch volumes for which the software detected an error during processing
000F	PRIVATE CATEGORY	Specific volume category
Note: If the tape library is partitioned, the categories used are derived from the base software categories. See "Partitioning Tape Libraries among Multiple Sysplexes" on page 40 for more information concerning partitioning support.		

Figure 3. Software Volume Categories

TCDB Volume Error Status Field and Software Error Category in ATLDS

When a hardware or software error is detected, the volume error status field in the tape configuration database (TCDB) is updated to reflect the error, and the volume may also be placed in the software error category in the library manager database.

More specifically, when a software error is detected for a scratch volume, this results in the volume being placed in the software error category in the library manager database. See "Software Volume Categories" on page 35 for more information on the software volume category. The setting of an error category prevents the volume from being selected for future nonspecific (scratch) mount requests. In addition, the error status field in the TCDB volume record is updated to reflect the software error condition.

Detecting Software Errors for Private Volumes

A software error detected for a private volume results in an update to the volume record in the TCDB with the appropriate error status; however, since private volumes are requested by volser and not by a category value, there is no need to place private volumes in the software error category.

Detecting Hardware Errors for Volumes

When a hardware error is detected (for either scratch or private volumes), the error is tracked in the library manager database and in the TCDB. Since the library manager tracks hardware-related errors for volumes, there is no need to place the volume in the software error category.

Resetting the Volume Error Status Field

There are several ways to reset the volume error status field in the TCDB and, if applicable, move the volume out of the software error category:

- General use programming interface CBRXLCS FUNC(CUA) can be used to change the volume's use attribute from SCRATCH to PRIVATE, PRIVATE to

SCRATCH, PRIVATE to PRIVATE, or SCRATCH to SCRATCH. See “Change Use Attribute (CUA)” on page 109 for more information on how use this interface. If the only purpose of the CBRXLCS invocation is to reset the volume error status field, CBRXLCS FUNC(CUA) from SCRATCH to SCRATCH or PRIVATE to PRIVATE accomplishes this (it is not necessary to actually change the volume’s use attribute). Invoking CBRXLCS FUNC(CUA) will also move a volume out of the software error category.

- The ISMF volume ALTER command or line operator can be used to update specific fields in the TCDB volume record, including the volume error status field. If no other changes to the volume are required, invoke ISMF ALTER to change the volume’s use attribute from PRIVATE to PRIVATE or SCRATCH to SCRATCH. Changing the volume’s use attribute from SCRATCH to PRIVATE or from PRIVATE to SCRATCH using ISMF ALTER also resets the volume’s error status field. Invoking ISMF ALTER against a volume record also moves a volume out of the software error category.
- If a volume is ejected from the library where it resides and is reentered into the same library, or a different library, the volume error status field and software error category resets upon entry.
- A successful audit of a volume resets a hardware error in the TCDB (such as misplaced volumes), but it does not clear a software error in the TCDB. Since hardware errors do not result in the volume’s category being changed, audit never alters the setting of a volume in the error category. If a scratch volume has a software error associated with it, a successful audit of the volume leaves the volume error condition set in the TCDB and leaves the volume in the error category.

Note: Also keep in mind that resetting a hardware error condition in the volume’s TCDB volume record does not clear the condition in the library manager database.

Displaying Scratch Volume Counts

Whenever you use the DISPLAY SMS,LIBRARY command, the scratch volume counts that are displayed reflect the number of scratch volumes in the scratch media categories. If a scratch volume is in the software error category, it is not included in this count because it is not considered a usable scratch cartridge.

Displaying Software Error Category Count

Use the DISPLAY SMS,LIBRARY to display the number of scratch volumes currently in the software error category associated with a particular library. See “Displaying Library Detail Status” on page 87 for more information on this command.

TCDB Volume Error Status Field and the MTL

When a software error is detected, the volume error status field in the tape configuration database (TCDB) is updated to reflect the error, however there is no equivalent software error category. In a manual tape library environment, the setting of this field is for informational use only. An operator can attempt to mount a cartridge with an error condition and if the error condition no longer exists, it will be cleared. Additionally, see “Resetting the Volume Error Status Field” on page 36 for more information.

TCDB Volume Expiration Date

When an expiration date is specified when writing a data set, the volume’s expiration date is recorded in the TCDB Volume Expiration Date field. If an expiration date pre-exists for the volume, the later date becomes the new expiration date. If the pre-existing date is later than the new date, the pre-existing date is

retained. However, if special “never expire” dates 99365 or 99366 are involved, these special dates take precedence. Special “never expire” dates appear in ISO format as 1999/12/31 for 99365, and 1999/12/32 or 1999/13/01 for 99366.

Console Name Message Routing

Through console name message routing support, an MVS console can be associated with each tape library. Instead of routing library specific messages to all consoles associated with the messages’ routing codes, they are routed to a specific library console.

For critical messages that need to be broadcast to a wider audience, the messages will be issued to the library console and to the MVS consoles associated with the routing codes. For example:

CBR3758E Library *library-name* operation degraded.

Associating Console Names with Tape Libraries

When the storage administrator defines a tape library using the ISMF Tape Library Define panel, an MVS console name can be associated with the tape library. The console name is stored in the library record in the TCDB. The console name is also passed to the following installation exits:

- Cartridge Entry Installation Exit (CBRUXENT)
- Cartridge Eject Installation Exit (CBRUXEJC)
- Change Use Attribute Installation Exit (CBRUXCUA)
- Volume Not in Library Installation Exit (CBRUXVNL)

The console name specified on the ISMF Tape Library Define panel must also be defined in the CONSOLxx member of PARMLIB for each system connected to the library.

Defining an Alternate MVS/ESA™ Operating System MCS Console

You can define an alternate MVS/ESA operating system MCS console using an active 3270 session on the library manager machine console. You may want to have an active MVS MCS console on the same machine running the library manager; this allows the person managing the library manager console to perform the following tasks:

- Display and change the status of the tape library and its associated tape drives
- Display the host status of a tape volume within the tape library
- Display or change the status of an SMS TAPE storage group
- Receive library specific MVS messages

Taking Advantage of Console Name Message Routing

To take advantage of console name message routing, the installation must configure each sysplex sharing the library in one of the following ways:

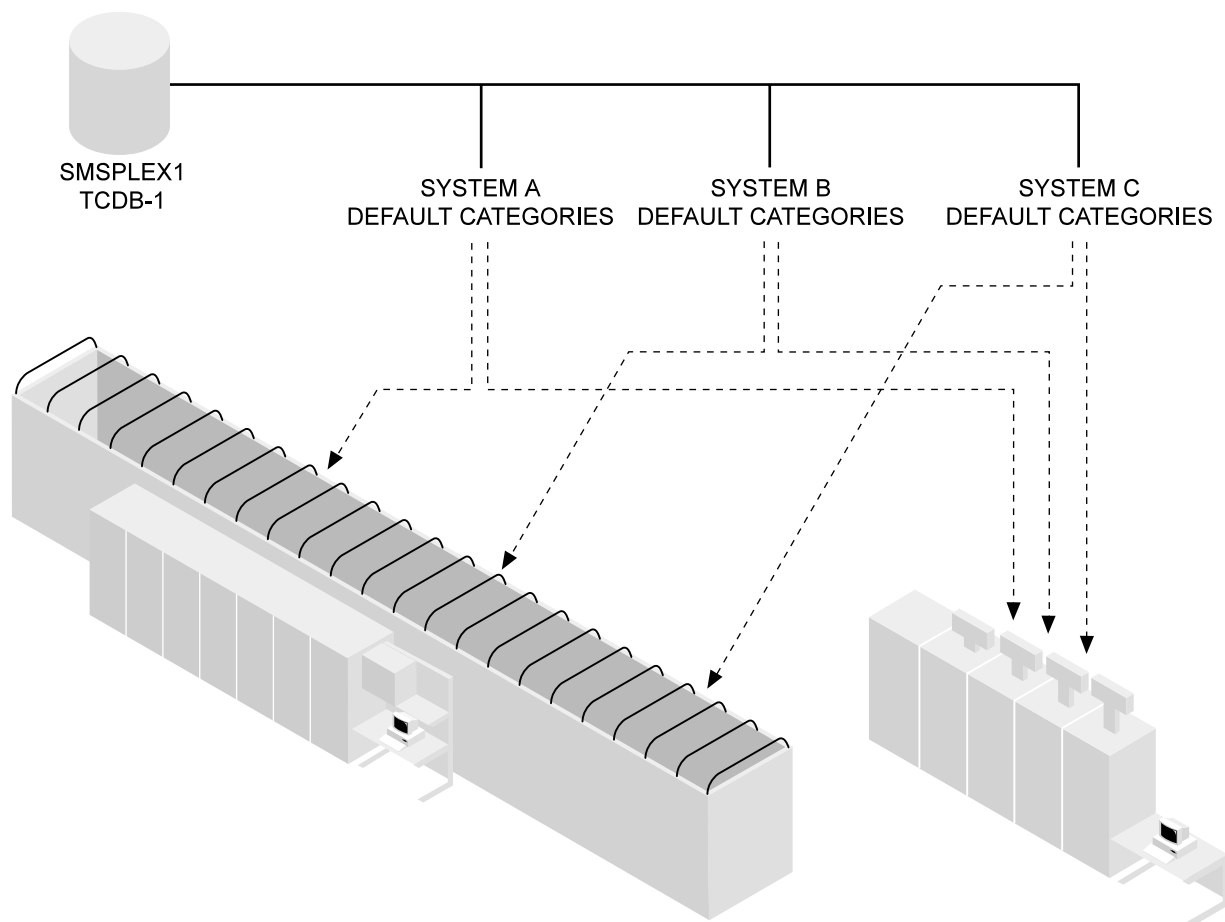
- In a JES3 environment, the console name associated with the library must be attached to the current JES3 global processor, and must be switchable to any local processor capable of becoming the global. The console should be defined in the JES3 initialization deck as an MCS console by specifying TYPE=MCS and using the UNIT keyword on the CONSOLE statement (not the DEVICE statement) to establish the logical association to the actual device number on the individual processors.
- In a cross system communication facility (XCF), define a physical console to receive tape library-specific messages. Make sure each system in the sysplex has that console defined with the same name. A separate console can be used per library.

- In a JES2 environment without XCF, each system must have a separate physical console, and all consoles must have the same name.

If more than one sysplex shares the library, each sysplex must have a separate physical console. If there is a single TCDB, then all consoles must have the same name. If there is a separate TCDB for each sysplex, then each sysplex may have a unique console name.

Sharing a Tape Library Among Multiple Systems

The ATLDS and the MTL may be shared among multiple systems and, in some cases, among multiple SMS complexes. In all cases, it is the responsibility of the installation to ensure that an individual library-resident tape drive not be allocated by two systems concurrently. This means that the tape drive can be online to only one SMS complex. In addition, if the SMS complex where the tape drive is online does not have JES3 or equivalent support for the sharing of tape drives, the tape drive can be online to only one system. To ensure that volumes intended for VM use are not made available to SMS, the installation should assign a recognizable volume serial number range to VM and a different range to SMS. The cartridge entry installation exit, through use of the *ignore* return code, prevents SMS from using the wrong set of volumes. See Figure 4 for an example of sharing a tape library among systems.



One SMSplex and One TCDB. All Systems Access Both Libraries.

Figure 4. Sharing a Tape Library among Multiple Systems

The ATLDS and the MTL can also be shared among multiple SMS complexes, provided the following restrictions are observed:

- There must be a single shared tape configuration database among all systems in all SMS complexes. This means there is one general volume catalog, and at the most one specific volume catalog for each valid initial volser character.
- The library name associated with the hardware library ID must be the same in each SCDS. The library console name and the scratch volume message thresholds must also be the same. The entry default data class, entry default use attribute, eject default, and system connectivity status can be different in each SCDS.
- There is a single pool of scratch volumes to be shared among all the SMS complexes. This pool consists of separate library manager categories for each of the supported media types.

Managing Private Volumes in a Library Sharing Environment

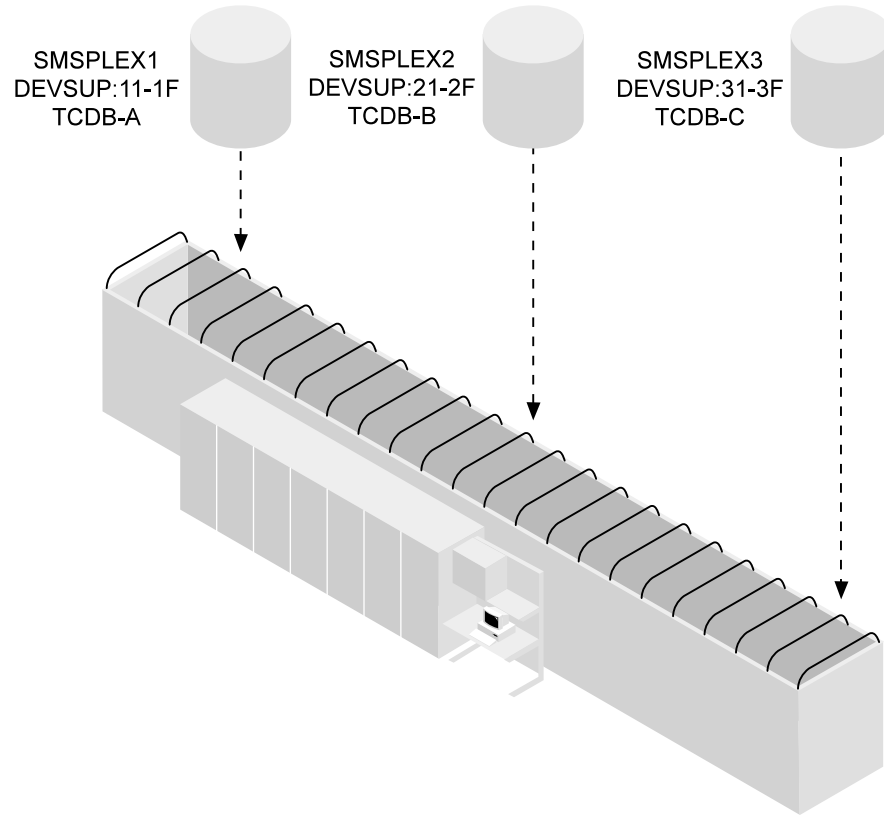
There are two options for the management of private volumes:

1. The simpler option allows sharing of private volumes among all systems in all SMS complexes. This requires that each SCDS have the same set of tape storage group definitions. All storage groups with the same name must reside in the same set of libraries, though the storage group state on each system in the SMS complex can vary. The cartridge entry installation exit must also be the same on all systems.
2. The other option, which proves more difficult, is to restrict access to private volumes to a single SMS complex. Each SCDS can have its own set of tape storage groups; an attempt to use a private volume in a SMS complex where its assigned storage group does not exist causes the job to fail. When existing private volumes are entered into the library, the cartridge entry installation exit must recognize the volumes which belong to its particular SMS complex. If this is not possible, the volumes may be assigned to the blank storage group at cartridge entry time, then selectively assigned to the proper storage group by the storage administrator at some later time.

No matter which private volume management mechanism is selected, it should be noted that a permanent association between the volume and a particular SMS complex is not possible. When the volume use attribute is changed from private to scratch, the volume becomes eligible for use on any system sharing the ATLDS, or the MTL.

Partitioning Tape Libraries among Multiple Sysplexes

Partitioning a tape library is dividing the resources in the library—tape drives and tape volumes—among multiple systems or sysplexes, or both, for their exclusive use. The set of tape drives and tape volumes which belong to one or more systems or sysplexes, or both may not be used by a nonsharing system or sysplex without manual intervention. Each sharing partition may be either an MVS platform or a non-MVS platform. A single MVS platform may consist of one or more systems or sysplexes, or both, connected to a shared tape configuration database (TCDB); this group of sharing systems or sysplexes, or both, is referred to as a TCDBplex. Multiple TCDBs may each contain configuration information about the library and some subset of the volumes in the library. Partitioning may thus be viewed as dividing a physical library into multiple logical libraries, with each logical library (TCDBplex) represented by one TCDB. Figure 5 on page 41 provides a pictorial description of library partitioning.



Three SMSplexes and Three TCDBs. Each SMSplex Accesses the Library.

Figure 5. Partitioning a Tape Library

Changing the Library Manager Category Assignments in an ATLDS

To partition a library among multiple TCDBplexes requires separation of the scratch pools; that is, each TCDBplex must have a separate library manager category for each scratch media type (cartridge system tape, enhanced capacity cartridge system tape, high performance cartridge tape, and extended high performance cartridge tape). For logical completeness, the error and private volume categories should also be unique to each TCDBplex. The default category assignments are described in Figure 3 on page 36.

To change the default category assignments, instead of applying the partitioning USERMOD, the installation can now specify the categories in PARMLIB member DEV SUPxx. The category specification parameters enable the installation to change the default category assignments associated with a system or sysplex, or both. It is the responsibility of the installation to ensure that all systems or sysplexes, or both, associated with the same TCDB (TCDBplex) use the same category assignments. For a discussion of the partitioning-related DEV SUPxx parameters, refer to *z/OS MVS Initialization and Tuning Reference*.

In a partitioned library, it is recommended that the installation use DEV SUPxx to change the default categories associated with each TCDBplex. This means that no TCDBplex uses the default categories, so there are no volumes in those categories. If the DEV SUPxx parameters are inadvertently removed from one system, scratch mount requests are directed to the empty default categories and the mount

requests fail. If there is a TCDBplex that is using the default categories, volumes may be mounted by the system where the DEVSUPxx parameters were removed. If a scratch volume from a default category is mounted on the system where the parameters were removed, it is not used since there is no tape volume record in the TCDB. The volume is assigned to the error category with resultant disruption in library operations in the TCDBplex that owns the default categories.

Processing Default Categories When Using DEVSUPxx in an ATLDS

If an installation has been running with its tape libraries in unpartitioned mode for some period of time, the tape volumes will already be assigned to default categories. When the partitioning related DEVSUPxx parameters are used, special processing is necessary to move volumes to the new categories established through DEVSUPxx:

- Modify the DEVSUPxx PARMLIB member associated with each system or sysplex, or both, in each TCDBplex.
- IPL all systems in the TCDBplex to activate the DEVSUPxx changes.
- Ensure that no jobs which require scratch mounts in a library are run. This may be done by varying all library-resident tape drives offline to all systems.
- Start the OAM address space and make sure that all tape libraries are online. The tape drives must remain offline.
- Obtain a list of volumes whose storage group name is '*SCRATCH*' using the ISMF Mountable Tape Volume Application. It is a good idea to do this one library at a time by also specifying the library name.
- Use the ISMF ALTER command (not the line operator) to change the volume use attribute for all volumes in the list from scratch to scratch. This causes the library manager category for each volume to be changed from the default value to the new value established through DEVSUPxx. All volumes in the default scratch categories and in the error category are changed to the new DEVSUPxx scratch categories.
- It is not necessary to change the category of private volumes. When a private volume is returned to scratch, its category will be changed to one of the new scratch categories.
- Vary the tape drives online as appropriate, and start to run normal tape job streams.

Separating the Volumes for Use in Different TCDBplexes

To ensure that only one TCDBplex has access to any single tape volume, assign a separate range of volume serial numbers to each TCDBplex. Cartridge Entry Installation Exit (CBRUXENT) may be used to accept volume serial numbers in the range assigned to the TCDBplex when they are entered, but to ignore volume serial numbers that are outside the range. Each system in the TCDBplex must have the same installation exit. Each different TCDBplex must have installation exit logic that accepts a different range of volume serial numbers.

DFSMSrmm offers a facility (the REJECT ANYUSE command in PARMLIB member EDGRMMxx) that allows an installation to specify those volume serial numbers that are not to be used in this TCDBplex. See "DFSMSrmm Support for Sharing a Tape Library Dataserver" on page 44.

Handling Tape Drives in a Partitioned ATLDS

When a tape library is partitioned, each tape drive may be online in only one sysplex. If the sysplex does not have JES3 or equivalent support for the sharing of tape drives, the tape drive may be online to only one system within the sysplex. A tape drive may be switched from one sysplex to another by varying the drive offline in the old sysplex and then varying it online in the new sysplex.

To provide optimum tape library performance, assign one of the scratch media types to be preloaded into the integrated cartridge loader (ICL) on each 3495 library-resident tape drive. Varying the drive offline in one place and then online in another place does not change which media type has been assigned to the ICL. If the drive is now online in a different sysplex, the category for the preloaded scratch media type is not one that is defined in the new sysplex. A `LIBRARY DISPCL` or `DISPDRV` command displays the category as currently assigned. As part of switching the device to the new sysplex, the operator should use `LIBRARY SETCL` to assign the scratch media type; this causes the assignment of a category that is defined in the new sysplex. In response to the command, the Library Manager unloads the cartridges that are currently in the ICL and replaces them with cartridges from the scratch category in the new sysplex. See “Displaying the Cartridge Loader Scratch Media Type” on page 81, and “Setting the Cartridge Loader Scratch Media Type” on page 81 for more information.

Handling Tape Drives in a Partitioned MTL

When a tape library is partitioned, each tape drive may be online in only one sysplex. If the sysplex does not have JES3 or equivalent support for the sharing of tape drives, the tape drive may be online to only one system within the sysplex. A tape drive may be switched from one sysplex to another by varying the drive offline in the old sysplex and then varying it online in the new sysplex.

To provide optimum tape library performance, first determine which TCDBplex is to own the cartridges in the cartridge loader. For the systems associated with that TCDBplex, use the `LIBRARY SETCL` command to associate the cartridge loader with a particular media type or `ANY` (this must be done on each system). To ensure that the other non-owning TCDBplex systems don't attempt to index another system's cartridges, use the `LIBRARY SETCL` command on those systems to set the cartridge loader to `NONE`. Also by default, after an IPL the cartridge loader will be set to `NONE`. See “Displaying the Cartridge Loader Scratch Media Type” on page 81, and “Setting the Cartridge Loader Scratch Media Type” on page 81 for more information.

Ability to use MTL Drives as Stand-Alone

Through use of the `MTLSHARE` keyword, a manual tape library device on one system can be used on another system as a non-library (stand-alone) device. Specification of the `MTLSHARE` keyword on the non-MTL (stand-alone) systems also ensures that the cartridge loader can only be indexed on the systems using the device as a manual tape library device. This prevents the stand-alone environment from using scratch cartridges assigned to the manual tape library. For additional information see “Manual Tape Library Considerations” on page 45.

Sharing Tape Volumes between an SMSplex and a Non-MVS Platform

All library-resident tape volumes used by an SMSplex must be defined in the tape configuration database. This means that cartridge entry must occur on an SMS system. Therefore, all volumes to be used exclusively by SMS, and all volumes to be shared by SMS and a non-MVS platform must be entered on an SMS system. Either the Cartridge Entry Installation Exit or `DFSMSrmm` may be used to control which cartridges are accepted. Other considerations include:

- If the volumes already contain useful data, they should be assigned the private volume use attribute.
- If the volumes do not contain useful data and they are to be written on the non-MVS platform, they should be assigned the private volume use attribute to prevent their use as scratch volumes by SMS.
- If the volumes do not contain useful data and they are to be written on the SMS system, they may be assigned the scratch volume use attribute.

- All references to the volumes from a non-MVS platform should be specific volume serial number references.
- Private volumes should be returned to scratch only on an SMS system.
- An attempt to mount a volume on one platform will fail if the volume is already in use on another platform.
- Cartridges should be ejected only from an SMS system.

DFSMSrmm Support for Sharing a Tape Library Dataserver

DFSMSrmm provides support for easier installation control over sharing a tape library dataserver. DFSMSrmm provides a cartridge entry installation exit that can be used to help partition volumes in a single tape library dataserver across multiple sysplexes. This can include both VM and MVS platforms, as well as multiple SMSplexes. Support for partitioning with VM is provided based on volume naming convention, and at the individual volume level for volumes defined to DFSMSrmm on MVS. With a single tape configuration database across multiple MVS systems and complexes, a single DFSMSrmm control data set is required. All volumes can be used on any or all systems with no partitioning possible. With carefully selected parameters for DFSMSrmm, you can also partition the tape library dataserver across multiple MVS systems as long as you have a one-to-one correspondence of tape configuration database to DFSMSrmm control data sets. You must use the DFSMSrmm facilities to ensure that a single volume is defined in only a single tape configuration database and its associated DFSMSrmm control data set. Refer to *z/OS DFSMSrmm Implementation and Customization Guide* for implementation details for these scenarios.

Chapter 3. Installing Your Tape Library Support

This chapter explains how to install and customize your tape library environment.

To simplify the installation process, a library of sample jobs and other useful data sets (SAMPLIB) is shipped with the product. This chapter includes instructions for using SAMPLIB ("Appendix A. SAMPLIB Members" on page 195 contains listings of the SAMPLIB members), and an installation checklist to assist you with the software installation of your tape library. Before running any SAMPLIB member, remember to change the JCL to reflect your installation's requirements (for example, accounting information and data set names).

Verifying Prerequisites

Before proceeding with the installation checklist, verify that the hardware and media requirements "Analyzing Your Processing Environment" on page 31 have been met. For more information on prerequisites for DFSMS and z/OS, refer to *z/OS DFSMS Migration*. Ensure that all the prerequisites have been installed and thoroughly tested to verify that they operate correctly in your processing environment before proceeding with any other installation steps.

Manual Tape Library Considerations

With supporting PTFs, the manual tape library is supported on DFSMS/MVS 1.5.0 and on z/OS V1R1. Coexistence support is also provided on DFSMS/MVS V1R2, V1R3 and V1R4 and is built into the full-support PTFs. The coexistence support recognizes a new system keyword **MTLSHARE**, which enables devices residing at MTL defined UCBs to be treated as stand-alone devices. In some instances (coexistence-only level), with a shared IODF, usage of this keyword is implied by the system, in other cases, this keyword can be specified to either override the IODF MTL definition (on full support systems) or without a shared IODF (coexistence or full support), to indicate that stand-alone devices are being used elsewhere as manual tape library devices. Usage of this keyword also tells the system that the cartridge loaders are to be owned by the systems recognizing and treating the devices as MTL resident library devices. This prevents MTL resident scratch volumes from being indexed and incorrectly used by the stand-alone systems. With OS/390 V2R7 and above, the MTLSHARE keyword, if used, must be specified in the LOADxx member of SYS1.IPLPARM or SYS1.PARMLIB. On earlier release levels, the MTLSHARE keyword, if used, must be specified in the DEVSUPxx member of SYS1.PARMLIB. With a shared SCDS, the manual tape library should only be enabled on those systems that fully support and are using the devices in the context of a manual tape library. For additional migration-related information, refer to *z/OS DFSMS Migration*.

Peer-to-Peer VTS Subsystem Considerations

System levels that do not fully support the Peer-to-Peer VTS Subsystem (DFSMS/MVS V1R3), or support the library but do not have the supporting PTFs installed on the system (DFSMS/MVS V1R4 or V1R5), are able to use the Peer-to-Peer VTS Subsystem; however, coexistence PTFs are required. For adequate usability and error reporting capabilities, at least one of the sharing systems must have the full support PTFs installed.

The coexistence support recognizes if an attention message is associated with a distributed library and ignores the attention message. Without this support, attention messages from the distributed libraries would be handled as if they came from the composite library, resulting in the operational status of the library being overlaid.

For field miscellaneous equipment specification (MES) procedures for software considerations when coupling the VTS subsystems, refer to the web site <http://www.ibm.com/support/techdocs>.

VTS Import/Export Considerations

System levels that do not support the Import/Export function (DFSMS/MVS V1R3), or support the function but do not have the supporting PTFs installed on the system (DFSMS/MVS V1R4 or V1R5) are able to share a virtual tape server library that exploits this function. Additionally, these levels of DFSMS are also able to share a TCDB containing the exportable and importable volumes. Coexistence PTFs are required to allow the sharing of these resources.

The coexistence support handles errors when a down-level system attempts to perform functions using logical volumes that are export pending or have been exported at the VTS. It also prevents imported logical volumes from being processed on a down-level system.

TDSI Coexistence Considerations

Built into the DFSMS/MVS V1R3 base are coexistence considerations for up-level media types and recording technologies. This support recognizes when it is dealing with up-level tape device selection information (TDSI) information and acts accordingly. For example, during cartridge entry processing, a volume whose media type and/or recording technology is not supported at this system level will be left in the insert category to be processed by a system that understands the up-level TDSI values. Also, if the TCDB is being shared across multiple system levels, volume records containing up-level TDSI information will not be displayed through ISMF. This support also prevents operator commands, job requests, and CBRXLCS requests for up-level volumes from being honored. This prevents the system from processing up-level media that it does not fully understand.

3590 Model E Coexistence Considerations

The OAM coexistence support included in "TDSI Coexistence Considerations" handles MEDIA3 and MEDIA4 volumes with 256TRACK recording technology. However, an additional coexistence PTF is required on DFSMS levels that recognize MEDIA3 and MEDIA4 but do not have all of the 3590 Model E support installed. This additional support coexists with (by leaving in the insert category) a tape management system returning 256-track recording technology in the cartridge entry installation exit (CBRUXEPL).

Also, system levels that support the 3590 Model B device, but do not have all of the 3590 Model E support installed and enabled are able to share a library with full support systems; however, device services coexistence PTFs will be required to prevent the 3590 Model E devices from coming online. Without the coexistence PTFs installed, a 3590 Model E device would appear to the lower-level systems as a 3590 Model B device and the TDSI information recorded in the tape configuration (TCDB) volume record would incorrectly indicate 128-track. To avoid subsequent job failures (with the wrong device type getting allocated), and to avoid having to manually update the TCDB (to correctly show 256-track), it is critical that the

coexistence support be installed. Installing the full support and enabling PTFs on all systems enables full exploitation of library devices on all attached hosts.

Considerations When Running MVS/ESA as a Guest under VM/ESA®

If MVS/ESA is run as a guest under the VM/ESA operating system, STDEVOPT LIBRARY CTL must be specified in the VM directory entry for the VM user ID under which the MVS/ESA guest operating system is IPLed. The STDEVOPT statement specifies the optional storage device management functions available to a virtual machine. The LIBRARY operand with CTL tells the control program that the virtual machine is authorized to issue tape library commands to an IBM Automated Tape Library Dataserver. If the CTL parameter is not explicitly coded, the default of NOCTL is used. NOCTL specifies that the virtual machine is not authorized to issue commands to a tape library, and this results in an I/O error when MVS tries to issue a command to the library. For further information on the STDEVOPT statement, refer to *VM/ESA Planning and Administration Guide* and *VM/ESA Running Guest Operating Systems*.

Tape Library Installation Checklist

This section provides a checklist to assist in your installation of the tape library dataserver support. Refer to “Installation Procedures” on page 48 for more detailed information regarding each of these checklist items. Check off each item as it is completed within your installation.

“Building the Library Inventory” on page 49

- ☐ 1. Build the library inventory.

“Changing System Libraries” on page 49

- ☐ 2. Update PARMLIB.
 - ☐ a. Update SCHEDxx PARMLIB member.
 - ☐ b. Update IGDSMSxx PARMLIB member.
 - ☐ c. Update IEFSSNxx PARMLIB member.
 - ☐ d. Update CONSOLxx PARMLIB member.
 - ☐ e. Update DEVSUPxx PARMLIB member.
 - ☐ f. Update COMMNDxx PARMLIB member.
- ☐ 3. Update PROCLIB, by running CBRAPROC SAMPLIB member.

“Creating the Global Resource Serialization Ring” on page 51

- ☐ 4. Create the global resource serialization ring. (Optional, depending upon your installation.)

“Creating the Tape Configuration Database” on page 52

- ☐ 5. Define the volume catalogs.
 - ☐ a. Define general volume catalog.
 - ☐ b. Define specific volume catalogs (optional, depending upon your installation).
 - ☐ c. Connect the volume catalogs to the SMS complex.
 - ☐ d. Define the RACF® facility class profile. RACF is a component of the Security Server for z/OS.
 - ☐ e. Authorize the storage administrator to the RACF facility class.

“Creating the Hardware Configuration” on page 54

- ___ 6. Define tape drives using HCD.

“IPLing the System” on page 55

- ___ 7. IPL the system.

“Creating the SMS Definitions” on page 55

- ___ 8. Define the base SCDS.
- ___ 9. Define tape libraries.
- ___ 10. Define tape storage groups.
- ___ 11. Define storage classes.
- ___ 12. Define data classes.
- ___ 13. Define and test ACS routines.

“Creating the Installation Exit Routines” on page 57

- ___ 14. Create a cartridge entry installation exit routine (optional, depending upon your installation).
- ___ 15. Create a change use attribute installation exit routine (optional, depending upon your installation).
- ___ 16. Create a cartridge eject installation exit routine (optional, depending upon your installation).
- ___ 17. Create a volume not in library installation exit routine (optional, depending upon your installation).

“Validating the Configuration” on page 57

- ___ 18. Validate the configuration.

“Activating the SMS Configuration” on page 58

- ___ 19. Activate the SMS configuration.

“Starting the OAM Address Space” on page 58

- ___ 20. Start the OAM address space.

“Varying the Library Online” on page 58

- ___ 21. Vary the library online.

“Display and Set the Cartridge Loader Media Type” on page 58

- ___ 22. Display and set the cartridge loader media type.
 - ___ a. Display the cartridge loader media type.
 - ___ b. Set the cartridge loader media type.

“Running the Job Stream” on page 59

- ___ 23. Run the job stream.

Installation Procedures

This section provides details to assist in the installation of tape library support in your storage environment.

Building the Library Inventory

1 *Build the library inventory.*

To initially load the library manager inventory in an ATLDS, insert tape cartridges into the library storage slots and start the teach operation at the library manager console. In a virtual tape server (VTS) library, the logical volumes are identified at the library manager console through volume serial number ranges. All cartridges are placed in the insert category by the library manager for later cartridge entry processing by the host. It is later during OAM address space initialization and the host going through vary online processing that the cartridges in the insert category are processed and the records in the TCDB are created. As the host processes each cartridge in the insert category, the cartridge entry installation exit (CBRUXENT) is invoked to approve or deny the entry of the cartridge.

If the volumes in the library are shared between an MVS and a non-MVS platform, see “Sharing Tape Volumes between an SMSplex and a Non-MVS Platform” on page 43. If the volumes are already owned by a non-MVS platform and are no longer in the insert category, the TCDB volume records must be manually created in order for MVS to have use of the volumes. Because this bypasses the Cartridge Entry Installation Exit, the volumes may also need to be added to your tape management system.

To initially load the MTL inventory, the general-use programming interface, CBRXLCS FUNC=MCE, or the LIBRARY ENTER command may be used. Also check with your tape management system to determine what support they may provide for building the MTL inventory.

Changing System Libraries

After using SMP/E to install z/OS, change the system libraries using the following procedures.

2 *Update PARMLIB.*

2a *Update SCHEDxx PARMLIB member.*

Note: This step is documented for your information in case you use this book as reference material. With z/OS V1R1 this step is no longer needed.

Add the following to the SCHEDxx member:

PPT	PGMNAME(CBROAM)	/* OAM ADDRESS SPACE	*/
	KEY(5)	/* USE DFP PROTECT KEY	*/
	NOSWAP	/* NONSWAPPABLE	*/
	SYST	/* PROGRAM IS SYSTEM TASK--WILL NOT BE TIMED*/	

This entry adds the OAM initialization module (CBROAM) to the system program properties table (PPT). CBROAM gets control in PSW key 5 when its address space is started and is nonswappable.

2b *Update IGDSMSxx PARMLIB member.*

Update the IGDSMSxx PARMLIB member to include the following OAM-related keywords:

OAMPROC(procname)

Optional parameter that specifies the procedure name to be used to start the

OAM address space. Specify this keyword to start the OAM address space automatically during IPL. The procedure name can be from 1 to 8 characters, and there is no default.

OAMTASK(taskid)

Optional parameter that specifies the identifier to be used to start the OAM address space. If you specify this keyword without the **OAMPROC** keyword, it is ignored. This identifier can be from 1 to 8 characters, and there is no default. Code the **OAMTASK** keyword if you prefer to use an identifier other than the *procname* when starting the OAM address space. *taskid* is the identifier that is used on the START command. *taskid* corresponds to the 'identifier' parameter of the MVS START command documented in *z/OS MVS System Commands*.

These optional parameters are used when you want the OAM address space to start automatically as part of SMS initialization. "OAM" can be used as the procedure name, the task identifier, or both.

Note: For examples of the OAM START command and more information concerning the identifier parameter, see "Starting OAM" on page 72. For more information on the START command, refer to *z/OS MVS System Commands*. Also, for more details concerning these optional parameters and other keywords associated with the IGDSMSxx PARMLIB member, refer to *z/OS DFSMSdfp Storage Administration Reference*.

2c Update IEFSSNxx PARMLIB member.

Add or update the OAM1 entry in the IEFSSNxx PARMLIB member.

```
OAM1,CBRINIT[, 'MSG=xx']
```

where:

MSG=xx Specifies the format of OAM message text:

- MSG=EM specifies message text is in mixed-case English.
- MSG=EU specifies message text is in uppercase English.

If the MSG parameter is omitted, the default is mixed-case English.

OAM1 is the name of the subsystem, and CBRINIT is the name of the initialization module executed at IPL time.

2d Update CONSOLxx PARMLIB member.

To define a library console to MVS that allows console name message routing, perform the following steps:

- Update PARMLIB member PARMLIB(CONSOLxx).
 - Add console definitions for each library in your SCDS; an example follows:

```
CONSOLE DEVNUM(device number)
        NAME(library console name)
        UNIT(terminal type)
        AUTH(SYS,IO)
        (...)
```

- The library console name matches the console name defined in your SCDS using the ISMF library definition panel.

The authorities (SYS and IO) are suggested in order to perform the modify commands for OAM and the VARY commands for MVS.

Refer to *z/OS MVS System Commands* and *z/OS MVS Planning: Operations* for further information regarding multiple console support (MCS) definitions.

2e Update *DEVSUPxx PARMLIB* member.

Normally, when a scratch volume recorded in 36-track mode is mounted on a 3490 drive that reads and writes in 18-track mode or a scratch volume recorded in 256-track is mounted on a 3590 Model B device that reads and writes in 128-track mode, the operating system rejects the mounted volume and asks for another volume to be mounted. This is because the data set labels on the volume cannot be read and validated. If you wish the volume to be used, create a *DEVSUPxx* member of *PARMLIB* and specify *VOLNSNS=YES*.

If you are partitioning an ATLDS, use the *DEVSUPxx* library partitioning-related parameters to change the system default category assignments. Refer to *z/OS MVS Initialization and Tuning Reference* for more information regarding *DEVSUPxx*.

For the capability to share MTL devices as stand-alone, see “Manual Tape Library Considerations” on page 45 for potential usage of the *MTLSHARE* keyword.

3 Update *PROCLIB*, by running *CBRAPROC SAMPLIB* member.

Sample jobs are provided in *SAMPLIB* to assist you in making the needed additions to *PROCLIB*. Before running each *SAMPLIB* member:

- Update the *JOB* statement.
- Ensure that the high-level qualifier on the *//OUT DD JCL* statement matches the naming standard at your installation.

Run *SAMPLIB* member *CBRAPROC* (see “*SAMPLIB* Member *CBRAPROC*” on page 245) to create member *OAM* in *PROCLIB*. The following member is created as the default:

```
//OAM PROC OSMC=YES,MAXS=2,UNLOAD=9999,EJECT=LRW,RESTART=YES
//IEFPROC EXEC PGM=CBROAM,REGION=0M,
// PARM=( 'OSMC=&OSMC,APLAN=CBROAM,MAXS=&MAXS,'
// 'UNLOAD=&UNLOAD,EJECT=&EJECT,RESTART=&RESTART' )
//SYSABEND DD SYSOUT=A
```

Note: The default can be used since most of the parameters are only applicable if *OAM* is used to store objects. For more information concerning the *RESTART* parameter, see “Restarting *OAM*” on page 74. For information concerning the other parameters associated with this procedure statement, refer to *z/OS DFSMS OAM Planning, Installation, and Storage Administration Guide for Object Support*.

Creating the Global Resource Serialization Ring

4 Create the global resource serialization ring.

If you are going to share an ATLDS among two or more systems in an SMS complex, a global resource serialization ring may be created to include all sharing systems. This allows *OAM* to serialize the cartridge entry process for more efficient operation. For general information about global resource serialization, refer to *z/OS MVS Planning: Global Resource Serialization*.

The global resource serialization configuration is defined in member *GRSCNFxx* of *PARMLIB*, which is described in the *z/OS MVS Initialization and Tuning Guide*. The following resource names are obtained at the *DFSMS/MVS V1R3* level:

QNAME-SYSCBR
RNAME-CARTRIDGE_ENTRY_libname

In addition to this, the following resource names are obtained with subsequent releases:

QNAME-SYSZCBBR
RNAME-CARTRIDGE_ENTRY_libname

For export processing, the following resource names are used:

QNAME-SYSZCBBR
RNAME-EXPORTED_CATEGORY_libname

For manual tape library processing, the following resource names are used:

QNAME-SYSZCBBR
RNAME-MTL_VOLSER_volsername

For a further discussion of the resource names used by OAM during cartridge entry processing, see “Using Global Resource Serialization with Cartridge Entry Processing” on page 23. For further information regarding resource names used by OAM during VTS export processing, see “Using Global Resource Serialization with Export Processing” on page 29. For further information regarding resource names used with manual tape library processing, see “Using Global Resource Serialization in a Manual Tape Library” on page 24.

Note: OAM already sends a SYSTEMS level enqueue around the global resource serialization ring, so there is no need to include the QNAME or RNAME in the system inclusion RNL. The QNAME and RNAME are provided for documentation purposes.

Creating the Tape Configuration Database

5 Define the volume catalogs.

Use the AMS DEFINE command to define the general volume catalog hlq.VOLCAT.VGENERAL. The general VOLCAT is the default volume catalog and contains all of the library records as well as any volume records that do not reside in a specific volume catalog. This volume catalog must exist before any tape library can be defined.

If a large number of tape volumes have the same first character in the volume serial number, it may be advisable to define specific volume catalogs (hlq.VOLCAT.Vx), where x is the first character of the volume serial number.

Note: The letter **V** is reserved exclusively as the first character in a VOLCAT volume serial number. It readily identifies the volume serial number as belonging to a VOLCAT. To avoid confusion with the VOLCAT naming conventions, the letter **V** is restricted from being used as the first character of a tape library name. Any other character is valid.

Refer to the *z/OS DFSMS Access Method Services* manual for more information on the DEFINE command and the *z/OS DFSMS: Managing Catalogs* for more information on estimating the size of the catalogs. Keep in mind that each virtual tape server can contain thousands of volumes.

5a Define general volume catalog.

The following example shows how to define the general volume catalog, hlq.VOLCAT.VGENERAL.

```
//DEFVCAT JOB ...
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=IDCAMS
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSIN DD *
        DEFINE USERCATALOG -
            (NAME(hlq.VOLCAT.VGENERAL) -
             VOLCATALOG -
             VOLUME(338001) -
             CYLINDERS(1 1))
/*
```

The catalog parameters are:

NAME	Specifies the volume catalog, hlq.VOLCAT.VGENERAL.
VOLCATALOG	Specifies that the user catalog is a volume catalog.
VOLUME	Specifies that the user catalog is to reside on volume 338001.
CYLINDERS	Specifies that one cylinder is allocated to the catalog and that when the catalog is extended, it extends in increments of one cylinder.

All other parameters are allowed to default.

Note: The system uses “SYS1” as the default high-level qualifier (*hlq*). You may choose any other high-level qualifier in its place. For more information on changing the high-level qualifiers for VOLCATs, refer to *z/OS DFSMS: Managing Catalogs*.

5b Define specific volume catalogs.

The following example shows how to define a specific volume catalog, hlq.VOLCAT.VT. The catalog contains all the volume entries for tape volumes with the first character of “T” in the volume serial number.

```
//DEFVCAT JOB ...
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=IDCAMS
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSIN DD *
        DEFINE USERCATALOG -
            (NAME(hlq.VOLCAT.VT) -
             VOLCATALOG -
             VOLUME(338001) -
             CYLINDERS(1 1))
/*
```

The catalog parameters are:

NAME	Specifies the volume catalog, hlq.VOLCAT.VT.
VOLCATALOG	Specifies that the user catalog is a volume catalog.
VOLUME	Specifies that the user catalog resides on volume 338001.
CYLINDERS	Specifies that one cylinder is allocated to the catalog and that when the catalog is extended, it extends in increments of one cylinder.

All other parameters are allowed to default.

Note: The system uses “SYS1” as the default high-level qualifier (*hlq*). You may choose any other high-level qualifier in its place. For more information on changing the high-level qualifiers for VOLCATs, refer to *z/OS DFSMS: Managing Catalogs*.

5c *Connect the volume catalogs to the SMS complex.*

Connect the volume catalogs to all other systems in the SMS complex that use the tape library.

Use the AMS IMPORT command to connect the general volume catalog, *hlq.VOLCAT.VGENERAL* and any specific volume catalog, *hlq.VOLCAT.Vx*.

The following function must be performed on each system in the SMS complex except the one where the catalogs have been defined.

```
IMPORT CONNECT VOLCATALOG OBJECTS((hlq.VOLCAT.VGENERAL) operands)
IMPORT CONNECT VOLCATALOG OBJECTS((hlq.VOLCAT.Vx) operands)
```

5d *Define the RACF facility class profile.*

Define the RACF facility class profile for access to the tape configuration database.

If you use RACF to protect your system resources, enter the following command from an authorized TSO session:

```
RDEFINE FACILITY STGADMIN.IGG.LIBRARY options
```

5e *Authorize the storage administrator to the RACF facility class*

The storage administrator TSO logon ID must be authorized for READ-level access to the facility class. Enter the following command to authorize the storage administrator for READ-level access.

```
PERMIT STGADMIN.IGG.LIBRARY CLASS(FACILITY) ACCESS(READ) ID(logonID)
```

Refer to *z/OS Security Server RACF Command Language Reference* for more information.

Creating the Hardware Configuration

6 *Define tape drives using HCD.*

Use the MVS hardware configuration definition (HCD) to define the tape drives that belong to the tape library. For an automated tape library device, specify the LIBRARY parameter as YES. For a manual tape library device, specify the MTL parameter as YES. The LIBRARY and MTL parameters are mutually exclusive.

The devices in an ATLDS are recognized as tape library devices as they are initialized during IPL and during IODF activation. The devices in an MTL are recognized as MTL devices only through the IODF definition.

When you define the tape drives in an ATLDS, you can optionally specify the LIBRARY-ID and LIBPORT-ID parameters. If a tape drive is then busy or unavailable at system IPL, the drive is configured based on the information provided in the optional parameters and a subsequent IODF activate should not be required. Without specification of the optional parameters, tape drives that are busy or unavailable at system IPL are not included in the library control blocks built by the system and are not eligible for allocation until the tape drives become available and

an IODF ACTIVATE is issued. When you define the tape drives in an MTL, since the devices are not self-defining during IPL or IODF activation, the LIBRARY-ID and LIBPORT-ID parameters must be specified. As with an ATLDS, the LIBRARY-ID specified must match the LIBRARY-ID specified on the ISMF define panel and can be any unique five-digit hexadecimal number. The LIBPORT-ID identifies all devices attached to a specified control unit and should start with subsystem "01." For further information, see "IPLing the System". Refer to *z/OS HCD User's Guide* for additional information about using the HCD.

Note: For a Peer-to-Peer VTS Subsystem, the LIBRARY-ID specified should be the composite library ID.

Because a library may contain emulated devices, successful communication to at least one device in a subsystem must be made to determine if the devices defined through HCD are real or emulated. If the communication cannot be made during system IPL, the devices in the subsystem will not be considered eligible for allocation until successful communication has been established with the MVS VARY, ONLINE command. This will prevent the wrong device from being considered in allocation recovery.

IPLing the System

7 *IPL the system.*

Use the new I/O configuration definition that contains the library tape drive definitions to IPL the system. This also activates the OAM1 subsystem. The system issues the following messages and you can use them to verify a successful IPL of the system.

CBR8001I OAM1 subsystem initialization starting.

Note: If your installation is not using OAM to store objects, and is strictly using OAM for tape library management, ignore the following messages when they are displayed during IPL:

CBR8007I No DB2 SSID or the DB2 SSID value of "NONE" has been specified. OTIS subsystem cannot successfully initialize.

CBR8002I OAM1 subsystem initialization completed.

Devices Unavailable at IPL: If message IEA438I is issued during system IPL indicating that devices were not available during the IPL process (perhaps they were in use on another system), perform the following steps:

1. Issue the MVS VARY command to vary the devices online.
2. Issue the ACTIVATE command to activate the IODF containing the devices that were unavailable.

If your installation is using OAM for object support (DASD, optical, or tape), refer to *z/OS DFSMS OAM Planning, Installation, and Storage Administration Guide for Object Support* for more information.

Creating the SMS Definitions

Creating Definitions with ISMF: ISMF provides a series of panels through which SMS constructs can be defined. Refer to *z/OS DFSMS: Using the Interactive Storage Management Facility* for detailed information about using ISMF. Use ISMF to:

- Define the base SCDS
- Define the libraries in the tape configuration database
- Define storage groups
- Define storage classes
- Define data classes
- Write and test ACS routines
- Validate the SCDS

Before proceeding with the following topics, study the relevant information concerning creating the SMS definitions in “Appendix B. Using ISMF Panels to Define and Monitor Your Configuration” on page 257, and the *z/OS DFSMSdfp Storage Administration Reference*. This book, along with the online ISMF functional and help panels, explains the items you specify using ISMF.

8 Define the base SCDS.

The procedure for defining a source control data set is provided in *z/OS DFSMSdfp Storage Administration Reference*. It is possible to define several source control data sets describing different configurations; however, only one SCDS can be activated at any time.

9 Define the tape libraries.

You need to define your tape library to add the library record to the TCDB and the library definition to the specified SCDS. Choose option 3, DEFINE, on the ISMF Tape Library Application Selection panel (Figure 44 on page 259) to display the ISMF Tape Library Define panel shown in Figure 45 on page 260 and in Figure 46 on page 262. When defining the Peer-to-Peer VTS Subsystem, remember to define not only the composite library but also the underlying distributed libraries.

10 Define tape storage groups.

Use ISMF to define your tape storage groups and the library names associated with the storage groups. For more information on how to define tape storage groups, refer to *z/OS DFSMSdfp Storage Administration Reference*, *MVS/ESA SML: Leading a Storage Administration Group*, and *z/OS DFSMS: Implementing System-Managed Storage*. To direct allocation to a Peer-to-Peer VTS Subsystem, the composite library should be used and not the associated distributed libraries.

11 Define storage classes.

Use ISMF to define storage classes that cause the installation storage group filter routine to select tape storage groups. The storage class determines whether or not a request is SMS-managed. If a storage class is not assigned, the request is not SMS-managed.

12 Define data classes.

Define data classes to direct your nonspecific requests to a specific media type and recording technology, and to specify whether compaction is required. Choose option 4 on the ISMF Primary Option Menu panel to display the ISMF Data Class Define panel to define your data classes.

13 Write and test ACS routines.

Create or modify the installation's storage class, data class, and storage group ACS routines to select tape constructs for certain types of new data requests. There can be only one set of ACS routines in an active configuration. Refer to *z/OS DFSMSdfp Storage Administration Reference* for information on using ISMF to define ACS routines.

Creating the Installation Exit Routines

14 *Create a cartridge entry installation exit routine—CBRUXENT.*

If all cartridges entered into the library have the same use attribute and the same tape device selection information (TDSI), these values can be assigned using the entry default use attribute and the entry default data class on the library definition.

If cartridges are to have different use attributes, TDSI, or both, you need to write a cartridge entry installation exit routine. You may use SYS1.SAMPLIB member CBRSPUXE as a model. Otherwise, the system uses the installation exit provided with DFSMSrmm. For detailed information on the installation exit, see "Cartridge Entry Installation Exit (CBRUXENT)" on page 166.

15 *Create a change use attribute installation exit routine—CBRUXCUA.*

If you need to influence the process of changing a volume's use attribute (for example, by preventing the return of a private volume to scratch), you need to create an installation exit routine of your own. You may use SYS1.SAMPLIB member CBRSP LCS as a model. Otherwise, the system uses the installation exit provided with DFSMSrmm. For detailed information on the installation exit, see "Change Use Attribute Installation Exit (CBRUXCUA)" on page 159.

16 *Create a cartridge eject installation exit routine—CBRUXEJC.*

If you want to be able to prevent the ejection of a cartridge from the library or to change the tape volume record for an ejected cartridge, you need to create an installation exit of your own. You may use SYS1.SAMPLIB member CBRSPUXJ as a model. Otherwise, the system uses the installation exit provided with DFSMSrmm. For detailed information on the installation exit, see "Cartridge Eject Installation Exit (CBRUXEJC)" on page 174.

17 *Create a volume not in library installation exit routine—CBRUXVNL.*

If you want to be able to insert a volume into a tape library during job set up, device allocation, or library mount processing to prevent job failures, you need to create an installation exit routine of your own. You may use SYS1.SAMPLIB member CBRSPUXV as a working model. Otherwise, the system uses the installation exit provided with DFSMSrmm. For detailed information on the installation exit, see "Volume Not in Library Installation Exit (CBRUXVNL)" on page 182.

Note: Customer written installation exits are optional.

Validating the Configuration

18 *Validate the configuration.*

You cannot use tape libraries until a configuration containing all the elements described in this chapter are defined and validated. Refer to *z/OS DFSMSdfp Storage Administration Reference* for information about validating the configuration that you have just defined.

Activating the SMS Configuration

19 *Activate the SMS configuration.*

Activate the SMS configuration that contains the library definitions. Only one SCDS can be activated at any time. Activating another SCDS or reactivating the current SCDS while OAM is running causes OAM to restart by default, unless RESTART=NO is specified on the OAM PROCLIB member. During this reinitialization, all libraries are set either online or offline according to the attributes defined in the activated SCDS.

Note: How soon OAM is notified of the SCDS activation depends on the time interval specified with the INTERVAL keyword in the IGDSMSxx PARMLIB member.

Starting the OAM Address Space

20 *Start the OAM address space.*

Start the OAM address space using the MVS START command. See “Starting OAM” on page 72 for the syntax of the START command. Or the system programmer can update the IGDSMSxx member of PARMLIB to start OAM automatically during MVS IPL. “Changing System Libraries” on page 49 includes information concerning updating the IGDSMSxx member of PARMLIB.

Note: The OAM address space must have been started on at least one of the systems connected to each library to complete the definition of the library or libraries in the TCDB. This completed information in the TCDB is needed to properly run subsequent job streams.

Varying the Library Online

21 *Vary the library online.*

Vary the library online using the SMS VARY command. See “Varying a Tape Library Online or Offline” on page 73 for the syntax of the VARY command.

If the library was defined as online to the system, it is brought online as part of OAM address space initialization.

Display and Set the Cartridge Loader Media Type

22 *Display and set the cartridge loader media type.*

22a *Display the cartridge loader media type.*

Use the MVS LIBRARY DISPCL or the LIBRARY DISPDRV command to display the scratch volume media type assigned to the cartridge loader of each

library-resident tape drive. See “Displaying the Cartridge Loader Scratch Media Type” on page 81 and “Displaying Tape Drive Status” on page 91 for the command syntax.

22b *Set the cartridge loader media type.*

Use the MVS LIBRARY SETCL command to set the media type of scratch volumes to be loaded into the cartridge loader of each library-resident tape drive. See “Setting the Cartridge Loader Scratch Media Type” on page 81 for the command syntax.

Running the Job Stream

23 *Run the job stream.*

You can now run a job stream that uses library-resident volumes.

Library Subsystem Modifications

This section discusses the steps that are necessary when tape subsystems are added, moved or deleted. A cable change within a library that switches ports so that existing subsystems are now associated with different subsystem IDs should be treated as if the subsystems had been physically moved.

For an existing library, prior to modifying the subsystem configuration, use the VARY SMS command to VARY the library offline to each attached host. After the necessary IODF ACTIVATES or optional IPL, use the LIBRARY DISPDRV command to verify that the correct number of devices appear in the library configuration and that no device appears multiple times in the display for that library.

Adding Subsystems to a Library

The simplest way to add new subsystems to a new or existing library is to add previously undefined library devices to the physical end of the library. This keeps the existing subsystems associated with the same subsystem IDs and the new subsystems associated with the next sequential subsystem IDs. To add subsystems to a new or existing library, perform the following steps:

1. Use the MVS hardware configuration definition (HCD) to add the new tape devices to the existing or a new IODF.
2. Activate the IODF containing the new tape devices using the MVS ACTIVATE command.
3. Vary the devices online to MVS using the MVS VARY command.
4. Once again activate the IODF containing the new tape devices to complete the configuration activity using the MVS ACTIVATE command.

Note: Steps 1–4 can be replaced with a system IPL using the IODF that was created in step 1.

If one or more of the subsystems being added to the physical end of the library (library A) had previously existed in another library (library B), perform the following steps:

1. Use the MVS hardware configuration definition (HCD) to delete all devices from library B.
2. Activate the IODF that has the devices from library B removed using the MVS ACTIVATE command.

3. Use HCD to add all of the devices that are now in library A and in library B.
4. Activate the IODF that has all the devices defined using the MVS ACTIVATE command.
5. Vary the devices online to MVS using the MVS VARY command.
6. Once again, activate the IODF containing all of the tape devices to complete the configuration activity using the MVS ACTIVATE command.

Note: Steps 1–6 can be replaced with a system IPL using an IODF containing all of the moved or new devices, or both.

If the subsystems being added are not added to the physical end of the library, refer to “Moving Subsystems Within a Library”.

Moving Subsystems Within a Library

If existing subsystems are physically moved within a library so that the subsystems are now associated with different subsystem numbers (for example, if the new subsystems are not added to the physical end of the library), perform the following steps to properly rebuild the new configuration:

1. Use HCD to delete all devices from the library or libraries involved (multiple libraries might be involved if the devices came from another library).
2. Activate the IODF that has all the devices from the libraries removed using the MVS ACTIVATE command.
3. Use HCD to add all of the devices that are now in each affected library.
4. Activate the IODF that has all the devices defined using the MVS ACTIVATE command.
5. Vary the devices online to MVS using the MVS VARY command.
6. Once again, activate the IODF containing all the tape devices to complete the configuration activity using the MVS ACTIVATE command.

Note: Steps 1–6 can be replaced with a system IPL using the IODF containing all of the library devices.

Deleting Subsystems From a Library

If existing subsystems are physically removed from a library, then perform the following steps to accurately reflect the new configuration:

1. Use HCD to delete all devices from the library.
2. Activate the IODF that has the devices from the library removed using the MVS ACTIVATE command.
3. Use HCD to add all of the devices that are now in the library.
4. Activate the IODF that has all the devices defined using the MVS ACTIVATE command.
5. Vary the devices online to MVS using the MVS VARY command.
6. Once again, activate the IODF containing all of the tape devices to complete the configuration activity using the MVS ACTIVATE command.

Note: Steps 1–6 can be replaced with a system IPL using an IODF that has the deleted devices removed.

If the deleted subsystems are then added to another library, follow the steps documented in “Adding Subsystems to a Library” on page 59.

The sections above assume that as subsystems are added, moved, or deleted, previously existing subsystems may now be associated with different subsystem IDs. The sections above also document the steps necessary regardless of whether the subsystem IDs at the library manager have changed.

If the steps documented in the sections above are not followed, you may have the same device being configured in multiple device pools or the appearance of more drives than are actually in the library, or both, resulting in subsequent failures during library processing.

Chapter 4. Defining and Monitoring Your Configuration

This chapter discusses typical administration tasks for defining and monitoring the SMS configuration associated with your tape library:

- Monitoring and maintaining the tape configuration
- Monitoring and maintaining SMS constructs and definitions
- Establishing recovery procedures
- Retrieving data from a disabled IBM automated tape library

Monitoring and Maintaining the Tape Configuration

ISMF makes it possible to monitor and maintain information associated with the tape configuration database, the source control data set, and the tape volumes that reside in automated and manual tape libraries.

Typical Library Management Functions

The ISMF Library Management option allows you to generate lists of tape libraries and volumes, display the attributes of a tape library, alter definitions that were originally defined, add new definitions, audit tape libraries and tape volumes, and eject tape volumes from the tape library.

This section discusses the effects of some typical configuration maintenance tasks. See “Appendix B. Using ISMF Panels to Define and Monitor Your Configuration” on page 257 for information concerning the use of ISMF with tape libraries, and refer to *z/OS DFSMS: Using the Interactive Storage Management Facility* for detailed information about using ISMF.

Defining Tape Libraries

The first time a tape library is defined, the storage administrator enters all the appropriate attribute definitions associated with the tape library being defined on the ISMF define panels. Once all the information is entered, an entry containing that information is added to the tape configuration database (TCDB). Also, a tape library definition is added to the specified source control data set (SCDS). For more detail concerning defining tape libraries using ISMF, refer to “Defining a Tape Library” on page 257.

When you attempt changes to the attribute definitions of an existing tape library, the information residing in the TCDB associated with the tape library is displayed through a Redefine panel. Changing any of the attributes previously defined results in an update to the TCDB and to the specified SCDS. For more information on redefining tape libraries, refer to “Redefining a Tape Library” on page 267.

Note: Only one SCDS can be activated at any time. Activating another SCDS or reactivating the current SCDS while OAM is running causes OAM to restart by default, unless RESTART=NO is specified in the OAM PROCLIB member. During this restart, all libraries are set to either online or offline according to the attributes defined in the SCDS. After the restart completes, display all libraries to verify that they are set to the desired operational state.

Altering the Tape Library Definition

Altering a tape library definition results in an update to the corresponding library record in the TCDB and the SCDS. For more information on altering a tape library, see “Altering a Tape Library” on page 270.

Note: The altered library definition takes effect when the SCDS is activated and OAM is restarted.

Managing the Tape Volume

The ISMF Library Management function also assists in the maintenance and verification of the tape volumes within the tape library dataservers through the use of the Mountable Tape Volume Application available from the Tape Library Application Selection panel (option 1—LIST).

Note: If the TCDB is being shared across multiple system levels, volume records containing TDSI information that are not understood by the level of software on the system are not displayed when a volume list is requested from ISMF. This prevents the system from processing volume records containing TDSI information that is not understood by the system.

Using the Mountable Tape Volume Application, storage administrators can use line operators or ISMF commands to perform inventory tasks against tape libraries and tape volumes. The following functions can be performed using the Mountable Tape Volume Application:

- **AUDIT** a volume, a list of volumes, or a tape library

Note: The audit functions are not supported in an MTL.

- **ALTER** the use attribute, storage group, shelf location, or owner information of a volume or list of volumes
- **EJECT** a single tape volume

For more detail on the use of the Mountable Tape Volume Application, see “ISMF Mountable Tape Volume Application” on page 276.

Auditing the Tape Library Volume in an ATLDS

The AUDIT function in an ATLDS helps you verify the physical location of tape volumes within the library. It verifies whether or not a library volume resides in the location listed for that volume in the library manager inventory. The volume records in the TCDB identify the libraries where the volumes reside. If the TCDB records do not match the library manager inventory when an audit is performed, the TCDB records, the inventory, or both, must be corrected. The AUDIT function does not perform any corrective actions; messages are issued and the volume error status field in each tape volume record is updated, but the purpose of the audit is verification only. For more information concerning auditing tape volumes with ISMF, see “Auditing Volumes in an Automated Tape Library” on page 286.

Note: In an environment with multiple systems at different software levels but sharing a common TCDB, library audits should be performed on the system with the highest software level. A library audit on a lower software level does not include higher release level volumes if they are media types unknown to the lower level software.

Altering the Tape Volume Record

ISMF allows you to alter the use attribute, storage group, shelf location, and owner information of a single tape volume or a list of tape volumes through the use of the ALTER line operator or the ISMF ALTER command. These commands are used from the Mountable Tape Volume List panel (see Figure 63 on page 279). For more detail regarding the ISMF alter commands, see “Altering the Volume Record” on page 289.

Ejecting the Tape Volume With the EJECT Line Operator

The EJECT line operator is used to eject a single library-resident volume from a tape library with the option of keeping or purging the associated tape volume record within the TCDB. The EJECT line operator command is used from the Mountable Tape Volume List application of ISMF. For more information concerning this line operator and the Mountable Tape Volume List, see “Ejecting a Volume from a Tape Library” on page 295 and Figure 63 on page 279.

Monitoring and Maintaining SMS Library Definitions

ISMF library management makes it possible to monitor and make changes to the SMS library definitions. Refer to *z/OS DFSMS: Using the Interactive Storage Management Facility* for detailed information about using ISMF.

Changing z/OS Construct Definitions

As installation requirements change, it may be necessary to update data class, storage group, and storage class definitions in your ACS routines. Definitions for these constructs can be modified using the ISMF ALTER panels.

These updates must be done with caution because volumes that do not require processing after the definitions are changed are not affected by the change, even though they are assigned to the group to which the new definition applies. The updated definitions are used *only* for volumes entering the system or processed by the system after the change.

Maintaining Tape Storage Group Definitions

New storage groups may be needed for separation of new types of volumes. In addition to defining the new tape storage groups, it is necessary to modify the ACS routines to use the new tape storage groups.

It is important to consider when designing these changes that existing volumes do not change their storage group assignments until they are changed to scratch and then back to private.

Changing ACS Routines

As mentioned above, ACS routines may need to be changed to support changes in storage group, data class, or storage class definitions. Defining new storage groups, data classes, or storage classes has no effect unless the ACS routines are changed to select those new constructs.

ACS routines can be changed to provide initial class defaults for new volumes. Defining new classes does not always mean new values for parameters; a new class can have the same parameters as an existing class. A new class may be created to make the relationship between a class and an application more understandable. This action makes it possible to modify parameters later to fit the needs of one application without affecting other applications.

A Final Note of Caution about Changing SMS Library Definitions: Changing existing library definitions may not affect all volumes associated with those definitions. Only those being stored after the library definitions have been changed are affected.

Establishing Recovery Procedures

As part of your disaster recovery plan, you should establish and test procedures for recovering the following entities:

- Tape configuration database
- Library entries in the volume catalog
- Volume entries in the volume catalog

Recovering Volume Catalogs

OAM attempts to keep volume catalog entries current. This cannot be accomplished if the catalog entry does not exist or if the catalog is unusable (for example, because of I/O errors). Recovery of the catalog may be required. Standard catalog recovery procedures apply to recovering volume catalogs. Those procedures usually involve making an image copy (for example, IDCAMS EXPORT) at certain intervals and restoring that copy (for example, IDCAMS IMPORT) to recover an unusable catalog, then applying changes to individual records based on some ICF transaction log (for example, SMF records).

Note: For further information on the use of IDCAMS with catalog entries, refer to *z/OS DFSMS Access Method Services*.

Recreating Library Entries

If library entries are added or deleted after the image copy is made, restoring an image copy does not complete the recovery; you must also recreate those added or deleted entries. Use IDCAMS CREATE or IDCAMS DELETE to create or to delete the library entries.

If library entries are modified after the image copy is made, use IDCAMS ALTER to update the library entry to its current state.

Note: Attempt this level of recovery only if the transaction log recovery cannot be used. For further information on the use of IDCAMS with library entries, refer to *z/OS DFSMS Access Method Services*.

Recreating Volume Entries

If volume entries are added or deleted after the image copy is made, restoring an image copy does not complete the recovery; you must also recreate those added or deleted entries. Use IDCAMS CREATE or IDCAMS DELETE to create or to delete the volume entries.

If volume entries are modified after the image copy is made, use IDCAMS ALTER to update the volume entry to its current state.

Note: Attempt this level of recovery only if the transaction log recovery cannot be used. For further information on the use of IDCAMS with volume entries, refer to *z/OS DFSMS Access Method Services*.

Disaster Recovery Site Considerations

If you plan to run your disaster recovery test on a system where there is no tape library, then you must EXPORT DISCONNECT the TCDB from that remote system so that normal stand-alone drive allocation paths are used by SMS and MVS allocation. Your ACS routines should also be reviewed and changed, if necessary, to ensure that they are not assigning a tape storage group that forces the allocation to a tape library.

Note: For further information on the use of IDCAMS EXPORT of VOLCAT, refer to *z/OS DFSMS Access Method Services*.

TCDB Procedure for Retrieving Data from a Disabled IBM Automated Tape Library

There may be a time when you might experience a problem that could disable your IBM automated tape library. The following procedure provides instructions for retrieving data from an IBM automated tape library after a serious library manager failure occurs with the PC controller. By following this procedure, you can allocate your library volumes to stand-alone devices to retrieve your data after a few modifications to the TCDB and possibly the job stream. This procedure is only a short-term solution and should only be used if there is an immediate need for the data in the disabled IBM automated tape library.

Altering Private Tape Configuration Database Records

Alter the TCDB for each private volume serial number from the disabled library that you plan to use. Use IDCAMS or a utility from your tape management system that invokes the IDCAMS facility. The LOCATION field in the TCDB must be altered from LIBRARY to SHELF. When altering the LOCATION field, IDCAMS also modifies the LIBRARYNAME field to SHELF. This field value change allows the private volume serial numbers to be used outside the library for non-SMS-managed requests. After the library manager is back online, and the volumes are returned to their home cells, the LOCATION and LIBRARYNAME fields in the TCDB must be altered. The LOCATION field must be altered back to LIBRARY and the LIBRARYNAME field must be altered to reflect the library name where the volumes reside.

The following are examples for the JCL for IDCAMS:

```
//ALTERVOL JOB 'NAME',MSGCLASS=H,MSGLEVEL=(1,1),CLASS=A
//*****
//*ALTER THE LOCATION FIELD TO SHELF FOR OAM100
//*****
//ALTER EXEC PGM=IDCAMS
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN DD *
    ALTER VOAM100-
    VOLUMEENTRY-
    LOCATION(SHELF)
/*
//
```

```

//ALTERVOL JOB 'NAME',MSGCLASS=H,MSGLEVEL=(1,1),CLASS=A
//*****
//*ALTER THE LOCATION FIELD TO LIBRARY AND THE
//*LIBRARYNAME FIELD TO ATLF4007 FOR OAM100
//*****
//ALTER EXEC PGM=IDCAMS
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSIN DD *
  ALTER VOAM100-
    VOLUMEENTRY-
    LOCATION(LIBRARY)-
    LIBRARYNAME(ATLF4007)
/*
//

```

Changing from SMS-Managed to Non-SMS-Managed Requests

JCL jobs and applications that refer to scratch requests or to altered shelf-resident private volumes using DISP=NEW can be changed from SMS-managed to non-SMS-managed requests in one of two ways:

1. Modify the JCL or application associated PARMLIB member so that the requests are treated as non-SMS-managed requests.
2. Activate a new SCDS that treats the existing JCL and applications with no modifications as non-SMS-managed requests.

By changing to a non-SMS-managed request in the ACS routine, MVS allocation selects a non-SMS-managed device during the allocation process. Examine the constructs and the criteria used in the ACS routines to determine what requests need to be changed to non-SMS-managed.

Note: If storage groups selected from the ACS routine span multiple libraries, scratch allocations are automatically directed to the other libraries.

Changing the Use Attribute of Scratch Volumes

If you are using scratch volumes from the disabled library, then after the disabled library is back online either:

1. Use ISMF to alter the use attribute and the storage group, or
2. Code a CBRXLCS CUA™ invocation to change the use attribute from S to P and the appropriate storage group from *SCRTCH*

Either of these procedures must be done before any scratch requests are submitted. If one of them is not performed, then previously written data may be overwritten on the next scratch request to that library since the scratch volumes used still exist in a scratch category in the library manager inventory.

If you are using scratch volumes outside the disabled library, then after the disabled library is back on-line, enter those newly written volumes into the library and assign a use attribute of P and a storage group to preserve the data written on the volumes.

JCL jobs and applications that are referencing existing data on the altered private volumes with DISP=OLD or DISP=MOD may not require any changes. In this case, the ACS routines are not invoked and a device gets allocated based solely on the specified UNIT parameter indicated in the JCL or associated with the application program.

Note: If you have OAM Object Tape support and have altered the SETOAM parameters in the CBROAMxx PARMLIB member, you must restart the OAM address space in order for these changes to take effect.

Using the Sample Exit for Volume Not In Library (CBRUXVNL)

After submitting the jobs and applications for the altered private volume serial numbers, the operator replies to a message from the CBRUXVNL exit. The operator either replies CONT to continue the request to a stand-alone device, or DISABLE to deactivate the volume not in library exit for future replies. By disabling the CBRUXVNL exit, the requests for the altered volume serial numbers are allocated to stand-alone devices, but for SMS-managed requests for volumes that reside on the shelf, the jobs fail. The CBRUXVNL exit can be re-enabled by using the OAM LIBRARY RESET,CBRUXVNL command.

Library Manager Database Volume List

It is important to maintain a volume list that has the current home cell locations for your AT LDS library volumes. This volume list can be obtained from the library manager console by selecting DATABASE from the main menu pull-down window and then selecting a function called LIST DATABASE VOLUMES. This function generates a volume list that has the current home cell locations. This list can be saved on a diskette and referenced or printed with any remote PC ASCII editor. If you configured your Home Cell Mode to FLOAT, this operation will have to be run more often than if this mode was configured to FIXED. Floating home cells can change after volumes are demounted from the library devices. Maintaining these cell locations prevents the operator from manually searching for volumes in the disabled library.

Returning the Library Manager to an Operational Status

After the tape library is returned to an operational state, restore your modified JCL, PARMLIB members, and the TCDB records to their original values. Use the SMS library VARY command to vary the tape library online and then reactivate the original SCDS. After OAM has restarted, run an OAM library audit command to ensure that the volumes are returned to their correct home cell locations before allocating to that library.

Chapter 5. Operating the OAM Address Space

This chapter helps you become familiar with operator commands and describes the common tasks needed to operate the OAM address space.

Overview of Operator Tasks

You can perform the following operator tasks:

- Start OAM
- Restart OAM
- Vary:
 - Tape library online and offline
 - Tape drive online and offline
- Eject a specific tape volume
- Audit a tape volume
- Enter a volume into a manual tape library
- Import volumes into a virtual tape server library
- Export volumes from a virtual tape server library
- Disable Cartridge Entry Installation Exit processing
- Re-enable installation exit processing
- Display the cartridge loader scratch media type for a tape drive
- Set the cartridge loader scratch media type for a tape drive or a range of tape drives
- Display the status of:
 - OAM
 - Tape library
 - Tape drive
 - Tape storage group
 - Tape volume
 - Outstanding OAM messages
- Stop OAM
- Capture Data for Diagnostic Purposes (OAM DUMP)
- Query OAM active and pending tape library requests (OAM QUERY)

Note: You may have an environment with multiple systems at different levels sharing a common TCDB. In this event, if a system attempts to perform an operator command against a volume that has a media or recording technology that is not recognized, the request fails.

Message Format Conventions

The following conventions are used to show message format:

`CBRnnnnX Message_text`

where:

CBR Standard OAM message prefix

nnnn Four-digit message number

- X Type code:
- A Action required
 - D Decision needed
 - E Eventual operator action required
 - I Information only

Message_text

Text of the message.

Refer to *z/OS MVS System Messages, Vol 4 (CBD-DMO)* for explanations and appropriate actions for CBRxxxxx messages.

The following is a sample of an OAM message:

CBR2601A Specify shelf location for volume *volser*.

Note: In message text, italicized words indicate a value supplied by the system.

Starting OAM

To start the OAM address space manually or to restart the OAM address space after it has terminated, enter the MVS START command. The syntax of the MVS START command used to start OAM is as follows:

```

➔ START [S] [OAM procname] [.identifier] ➔

```

OAM Name of the IBM-supplied cataloged procedure that invokes OAM.

procname

Name of the user-written cataloged procedure that invokes OAM.

.identifier

User-determined name identifying the OAM address space. If you do not specify an identifier, the system automatically uses the *procname* as the identifier.

For further information on the MVS START command and additional parameters that can be specified, refer to *z/OS MVS System Commands*.

When initializing OAM, the system issues the following messages:

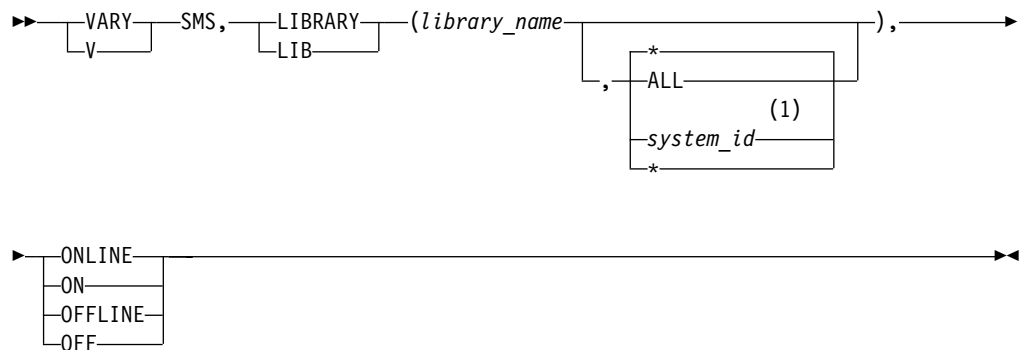
CBR0001I OAM initialization starting.

CBR0002I OAM initialization completed.

If other CBRxxxxx messages are issued, refer to *z/OS MVS System Messages, Vol 4 (CBD-DMO)* for the appropriate action to take.

Varying a Tape Library Online or Offline

Use the VARY SMS command to vary libraries online or vary them offline. The syntax of the command to vary libraries is:



Notes:

- 1 Up to eight *system_ids* may be specified (each must be separated by a comma).

OAM does not set the library offline until all the tape drives in the library are set offline. Such drives are considered offline for library reasons. When an individual drive is marked offline as a result of the **VARY ddd,OFFLINE** command, it is considered offline for operator reasons. Each offline state must be separately reset before the drive is again online. A **VARY SMS,LIB** command does not bring a drive online if the drive is currently offline for operator reasons. A **VARY ddd,ONLINE** command does not bring a drive online if the drive is currently offline for library reasons.

Note: A composite and distributed VTS library can be varied online and offline like any VTS library, though varying a distributed library offline from the host really has no meaning (does not prevent outboard usage of the library). Message CBR3016I is issued to warn the user when a distributed library is initialized or varied offline.

LIBRARY | LIB(*library_name*)

Specifies the name of the library to be varied online or offline. If the name is not specified or the specified library is not defined in the SMS configuration, an error message is displayed.

ALL

Varies the state of the tape library on all systems in the SMS complex to which the library is connected.

- * Varies the state of the tape library only on the system or system group from which the VARY command is issued. If the system or system group on which the VARY command is issued is not connected to the named library, an error message is displayed. This is the default.

system_id

Varies the state of the tape library only on the system(s) or system group(s) specified. If a specified system is not connected to the named tape library, an error message is displayed.

Note: To specify a system or system group named ALL, surround it with parentheses; for example, **VARY SMS,LIBRARY(library_name,(ALL)),ONLINE**.

ONLINE | ON

Specifies that the library be varied online.

OFFLINE | OFF

Specifies that the library be varied offline.

An example of the command to vary a tape library online is:

```
VARY SMS,LIBRARY(ATL01),ONLINE
```

An example of the command to vary a tape library offline is:

```
VARY SMS,LIBRARY(ATL01),OFFLINE
```

Restarting OAM

OAM provides the customer the ability to specify a RESTART option on the OAM started procedure statement (see the example under *Run SAMPLIB member CBRAPROC* on page 51). This option indicates that OAM should or should not be restarted upon notification that a new SCDS has been activated. A new or changed SCDS does not always affect the configuration information that OAM uses; therefore, a restart of the OAM address space may not always be necessary each time a new or changed SCDS is activated. This option provides a choice to the customer to decide on the most efficient use of their OAM resources.

If RESTART=YES is specified (the default), OAM restarts automatically once it is notified that an SCDS activation has occurred. OAM completes work that is currently on its execution queues, requeues any work from outside the OAM address space to the input work queue, and terminates any work from within the OAM address space not currently executing. OAM rebuilds its internal control blocks to match the SMS definitions in the recently activated SCDS. When OAM is back to full capacity (restart complete), the work requeued to the input work queue begins processing.

Note: How soon OAM is notified of the SCDS activation depends on the time interval specified with the INTERVAL keyword in the IGDSMSxx PARMLIB member.

If RESTART=NO is specified, OAM continues processing without rebuilding its internal control blocks when notified that an SCDS activation has occurred.

Message CBR0092I is issued to acknowledge that a NEW SCDS has been activated.

```
CBR0092I  New SMS Source Control Data Set activated.  OAM address space
          restart may be required.
```


It is the responsibility of the installation to ensure that the OAM RESTART command is issued if an OAM address space restart is necessary.

The OAM RESTART command causes OAM to restart the OAM address space. During restart processing, OAM matches the constructs and definitions used to those that are found in the active SMS configuration.

Through the issuance of this command, the operator can avoid having to perform STOP and START commands of the OAM address space, and it allows the OAM address space to retain its current ASID.

To restart the OAM address space without first stopping OAM, enter the following RESTART command:

```
➤➤ MODIFY OAM, RESTART ➤➤
  F
```

Varying Tape Drives Online or Offline

Use the MVS VARY command to vary tape drives online or offline. Refer to *z/OS MVS System Commands* for additional information on the MVS VARY command.

Ejecting a Specific Tape Volume

Use the MVS LIBRARY EJECT command to eject a specific tape volume from a tape library. When this command is issued for an ATLDS, the tape volume is placed into an output station of the tape library. For an MTL, no physical movement takes place as a result of this command.

The syntax of the command to eject a specific tape volume is:

```
➤➤ LIBRARY EJECT, volser PURGE P KEEP K LOCATION L
  LI E
```

EJECT | E

Specifies a request to eject a specific tape volume from a tape library.

volser

Specifies the volume serial number of the tape volume that is ejected from the tape library.

{PURGE | P | KEEP | K | LOCATION | L}

Specifies the disposition of the volume record in the TCDB when a tape cartridge is ejected from the library. If neither PURGE nor KEEP is specified, then the disposition of the volume record in the TCDB is determined by the eject default that is entered on the ISMF Tape Library Define panel.

PURGE | P

Specifies that the volume record in the TCDB be deleted upon completion of the EJECT operation.

KEEP | K

Specifies that the volume record in the TCDB be retained upon completion of the EJECT operation.

LOCATION | L

Specifies that the operator wants to update the shelf location associated with the tape volume. When LOCATION is specified, a write-to-operator-with-replay (WTOR) message is issued to the MVS operator prompting for 32 characters of shelf location information. The information entered by the operator is recorded in the shelf location field in the volume record in the TCDB. Specifying the LOCATION keyword implies that the volume record be retained upon completion of the EJECT operation.

{BULK | B}

Specifies that the tape volume be placed in the high-capacity or “bulk” output station of the tape library. If neither BULK nor B is specified, the tape volume is placed in the convenience output station. If the high-capacity output station is not configured, the cartridge is ejected to the convenience station. If a convenience station is not installed in a 3494, the cartridge is placed in the single cell output area. (This parameter is ignored for volumes ejected from a MTL.)

To eject a tape cartridge from a tape library, enter the following command:

```
LIBRARY EJECT,TAP003
```

Specifying the Shelf Location

If the LOCATION operand is specified on the LIBRARY EJECT command, the system issues the following message and waits for a reply:

```
CBR2601A Specify shelf location for volume volser.
```

Provide 1 to 32 characters of shelf location information.

The following message is issued to the operator when OAM accepts the EJECT command:

```
CBR1000I OAM EJECT command execution scheduled.
```

One of the following messages is issued to the operator upon successful completion of the eject request:

CBR3010I Volume *volser* ejected from library *library-name*. Place in shelf location *shelfloc*.

or

CBR3011I Secure checkpoint volume *volser* ejected from library *library-name*. Place in shelf location *shelfloc*.

If the ejected volume is reentered into a library before the eject completion message is processed, the following message is issued in place of CBR3010I or CBR3011I:

CBR3014I Eject processing completed for volume *volser*. Reentry into library *library-name* detected.

The shelf location can be provided through:

- the LIBRARY EJECT command
- the Cartridge Entry Installation Exit (CBRUXENT)
- the Cartridge Eject Installation Exit (CBRUXEJC)
- the ISMF volume ALTER function

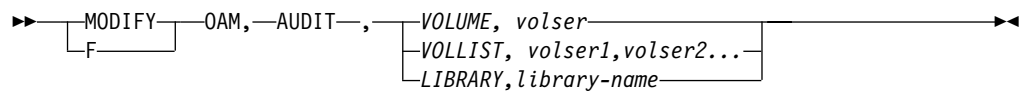
Note: ?????? is displayed in the eject completion messages if a shelf location has not been provided.

Auditing a Volume

OAM provides an AUDIT command that enables the system operator to audit an automated tape library resident tape volume.

Note: The audit function is not supported for volumes that reside in a manual tape library.

The syntax of the command for the AUDIT function is:



AUDIT

Specifies a request to audit a single volume, list of volumes, or an entire tape library.

VOLUME | VOLLIST | LIBRARY

Specifies the scope of the audit.

volser

Specifies the volume serial number of the tape volume to be audited. If VOLLIST is specified, up to 15 tape volumes can be audited.

library-name

Specifies the name of the tape library to be audited.

Entering a Tape Volume into an MTL

Use the LIBRARY ENTER command to enter a tape volume into a manual tape library.

The syntax of the command to enter a tape volume into an MTL is:

```
►► LIBRARY ENTER ,volser—,library_name—,media_type—►►  
  LI      ENT
```

ENTER | ENT Specifies a request to enter a volume into an MTL.

volser Specifies the volume serial number of the volume to be entered into the MTL.

library_name Specifies the name of the library in which the volume is to be entered.

media_type Specifies the media type for the enter request:

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| MEDIA1 | Specifies IBM Cartridge System Tape. |
| MEDIA2 | Specifies IBM Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape. |
| MEDIA3 | Specifies IBM High Performance Cartridge Tape. |
| MEDIA4 | Specifies IBM Expanded High Performance Cartridge Tape. |

A media type specification is optional. If the media type is not specified, and a volume record does not already exist, the media type may be derived from the entry default dataclass and/or the cartridge entry installation exit (CBRUXENT).

If no media type is determined by any of the above options, the entry will fail.

The LIBRARY ENTER command uses the LCS external services FUNC = MCE programming interface to enter the volume into the MTL.

Importing Tape Volumes into a VTS

The LIBRARY IMPORT command is used to initiate or cancel an import operation at the library. Before an import operation can be initiated, the import list volume must be written to identify what volumes are to be imported. For more information, see “Importing Logical Volumes into a VTS Subsystem” on page 19.

The syntax of the command to import volumes into a VTS is:

```
►► LIBRARY IMPORT ,volser—,CANCEL—►►  
  LI      IMP      C
```

IMPORT | IMP

Specifies a request to initiate (or cancel) the import of logical volumes into a VTS.

volser

Specifies the volume serial number of the import list volume to be used for this import operation.

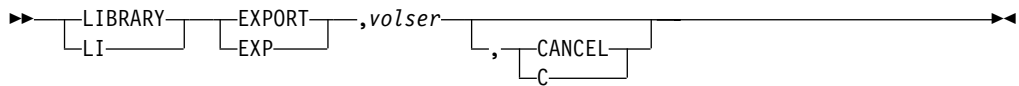
CANCEL | C

This optional parameter requests that the currently executing import operation for the specified volume serial number be canceled.

Exporting Tape Volumes from a VTS

The LIBRARY EXPORT command is used to initiate or cancel an export operation at the library. Before an export operation can be initiated, the export list volume must be written to identify what volumes are to be exported. For more information, see “Exporting Logical Volumes from a VTS Subsystem” on page 27.

The syntax of the command to export volumes from a VTS is:



EXPORT | EXP

Specifies a request to initiate (or cancel) the export of logical volumes from a VTS.

volser

Specifies the volume serial number of the export list volume containing the list of volumes to be exported from the VTS.

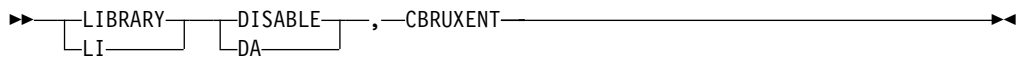
CANCEL | C

This optional parameter requests that the currently executing export operation for the specified volume serial number be canceled.

Disabling Cartridge Entry Installation Exit Processing

The LIBRARY DISABLE, CBRUXENT command provides the ability to disable cartridge entry processing for a particular system. This provides the ability to direct tape library cartridge entry processing to a particular system.

The syntax of the command to disable the cartridge entry exit processing is:



DISABLE | DA

Specifies a request to disable the installation exit.

CBRUXENT

Specifies a request to disable cartridge entry installation exit processing. Cartridge entry processing does not occur on this system while the exit is disabled.

The following message is issued to the operator upon successful completion of the disable request:

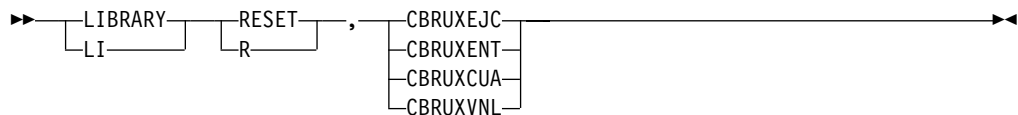
CBR1951I Installation exit *CBRUXENT* {*WAS* | *HAS BEEN* } disabled by operator command.

The cartridge entry installation exit, CBRUXENT, is disabled. Cartridge entry processing on this system is disabled until a LIBRARY RESET command is issued or the system is IPLed. Restarting the OAM address space does not re-enable cartridge entry installation exit processing if it has been disabled by an operator command.

Re-enabling Installation Exit Processing

When OAM detects an error during installation exit processing, the function being performed when the exit was invoked is disabled. For example, cartridge entry, cartridge eject, private to scratch change use attribute, or volume not in library processing is not performed. An installation exit may also request, by way of a return code, that the exit not be invoked again; function processing continues without the exit. Also an operator, through the use of the MVS LIBRARY DISABLE command, may request that cartridge entry processing on a particular system be disabled. Use the MVS LIBRARY RESET command to reenable installation exit processing.

The syntax of the command to re-establish installation exit processing is:



RESET | R

Specifies a request to reactivate an installation exit.

CBRUXEJC | CBRUXENT | CBRUXCUA | CBRUXVNL

Specifies which exit to reactivate.

CBRUXEJC

Specifies that the cartridge eject installation exit (CBRUXEJC) be reactivated.

CBRUXENT

Specifies that the cartridge entry installation exit (CBRUXENT) be reactivated.

CBRUXCUA

Specifies that the change use attribute installation exit (CBRUXCUA) be reactivated.

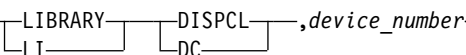
CBRUXVNL

Specifies that the volume not in library installation exit (CBRUXVNL) be reactivated.

Note: Resetting the CBRUXENT installation exit invokes cartridge entry processing for volumes in the insert category.

Displaying the Cartridge Loader Scratch Media Type

Use the MVS LIBRARY DISPCL command to display the media type of scratch volumes you want loaded into the cartridge loader of a library-resident tape drive. The syntax of the LIBRARY DISPCL command is:

►►  ,*device_number* ►►

DISPCL | DC

Specifies a request to display the media type of scratch volumes you want loaded into the cartridge loader for a library-resident tape drive.

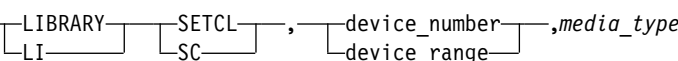
device_number

Specifies the MVS device number of a library-resident tape drive.

Note: The display output for the DISPCL command is the same as the output for the DISPDV command for a single drive. See “Displaying Tape Drive Status” on page 91 for an example.

Setting the Cartridge Loader Scratch Media Type

Use the MVS LIBRARY SETCL command to set the media type of scratch volumes to be loaded into the cartridge loaders of library-resident tape drives. The syntax of the LIBRARY SETCL command is:

►►  , *device_number* , *device_range* , *media_type* ►►

SETCL | SC Specifies a request to set the media type of scratch volumes to be loaded into the cartridge loader of library-resident tape drives.

device_number

Specifies the MVS device number (xxxx).

device_range

Specifies the MVS device range (xxxx–yyyy). The device number (xxxx) must be less than the device number (yyyy).

media_type

Specifies the media type to be loaded:

MEDIA1	Specifies IBM Cartridge System Tape.
MEDIA2	Specifies IBM Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape.
MEDIA3	Specifies IBM High Performance Cartridge Tape.
MEDIA4	Specifies IBM Expanded High Performance Cartridge Tape.
NONE	In an ATLDS, the cartridge loader is emptied. In an MTL, indexing is not occurring on this system; however, indexing could be occurring on another system.
ANY	Valid for MTL only. Media type preferencing through data class is not being used; therefore, index with media appropriate for the drive.

Note: This command should only be used for devices in a tape library that have cartridge loaders installed.

Assigning Categories to ATLDS Cartridge Loaders

At the first IPL after the library is configured, media type defaults are no longer set for the cartridge loaders by the system so they remain set to NONE.

To set the media type, the LIBRARY SETCL command can be used to assign a media type to the tape library dataserver cartridge loaders. Once the LIBRARY SETCL command is used, the media type assigned to the cartridge loader is preserved. Subsequent IPLs will not modify the assignment. Use the LIBRARY DISPCL command to display the media type.

Assigning Media Types to MTL Cartridge Loaders

For devices in an MTL, the media type setting is not maintained across an IPL and defaults to NONE. To set the media type, the LIBRARY SETCL command can be used. However, in an MTL environment this command must be issued to each sharing system.

Media Selection in an ATLDS

For nonspecific volume requests directed to a 3490E or 3590 device, the media type assigned to the cartridge loader is preferred if data class is not specified through the data class JCL parameter or through the ACS filter routines. If that scratch category is empty, the other media type is selected. However, if the category assigned to the cartridge loader is NONE, MEDIA2 is preferred for a 3490E and MEDIA4 is preferred for a 3590. If a specific media type is selected using data class, only that media type is used.

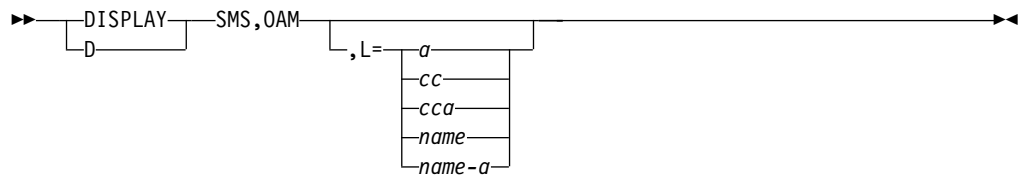
If a data set spans multiple volumes, the subsequent volumes are written using the media type of the last volume written. However, in the case of a 3490E or 3590 device, if the scratch category for that media type is empty, rather than fail the job, the other media type is used.

Media Selection in an MTL

For nonspecific volume requests, the cartridge loader media type assignment through the LIBRARY SETCL command plays an important role. It lets the system know the intended use of the cartridge loader and whether indexing is to occur on this system. If indexing is to occur, it indicates what media type should be loaded in the cartridge loader. If a media type is then preferenced through DATACLASS, an attempt to index the cartridge loader will only be made if the media type assigned to the device matches the DATACLASS specification. If DATACLASS does not specify a media type, indexing will occur on those systems where the cartridge loader is not set to NONE. If there is no intention to preference a specific media type, all of the cartridge loaders could be set to ANY. This then enables the operator to load any appropriate media type for the device. After an IPL, the cartridge loaders, by default, are set to NONE.

Displaying OAM Status

The syntax of the DISPLAY SMS,OAM command is:



OAM Displays OAM status.

,L={a | cc | cca | name | name-a}

Specifies where the results of the inquiry are to be displayed: the display area *a*, the console number *cc*, or both *cca*. The *name* parameter will be routed to the console referred to by *name* and the screen referred to by *a*. The *name* parameter can be an alphanumeric character string.

To display OAM status, enter the following command:

DISPLAY SMS,OAM

The following information is displayed:

```
CBR1100I OAM status:
TAPE TOT ONL TOT TOT TOT TOT ONL AVL TOTAL
LIB LIB AL VL VCL ML DRV DRV DRV SCRATCH
nnn ooo ppp qqg rrr sss tttt uuuu vvvv wwwwww
exit-name PROCESSING (ENABLED | DISABLED | BYPASSED | OPERATOR DISABLED).
```

A display of the OAM address space status has been generated. If both optical and tape libraries have been defined in the SMS configuration, both optical and tape information would be generated in this display. For a sample of the CBR1100I message that includes optical information, refer to *z/OS DFSMS OAM Planning, Installation, and Storage Administration Guide for Object Support*.

The fields in the data line specify the number of each tape library resource as follows:

- nnn* Total number of tape libraries defined in the active SMS configuration (excluding the Peer-to-Peer Virtual Tape Server distributed libraries) that are connected to the current system (referred to in the following explanations as a connected tape library). The current system is the system on which the DISPLAY SMS,OAM command is entered. For the number of distributed libraries that are defined to the system, refer to the status line towards the bottom of the display.
- ooo* Number of connected tape libraries that are online (excluding the Peer-to-Peer Virtual Tape Server distributed libraries).
- ppp* Total number of connected automated tape library dataservers.
- qqq* Number of connected Virtual Tape Servers (excluding the Peer-to-Peer VTSSs).

<i>rrr</i>	Number of connected Peer-to-Peer Virtual Tape Server composite libraries.
<i>sss</i>	Number of connected manual tape libraries.
<i>ttt</i>	Total number of tape drives, known to the current system, residing in the connected tape libraries. Includes tape drives in both automated tape library dataservers, Virtual Tape Servers and manual tape libraries.
<i>uuuu</i>	Total number of tape drives, known to the current system and residing in the connected tape libraries, that are online and not allocated.
<i>vvvv</i>	Total number of tape drives, known to the current system and residing in the connected tape libraries, that are online and not allocated.
<i>wwwwwww</i>	Total number of scratch volumes of all media types in the connected tape libraries. This includes scratch volumes in the automated, manual, and virtual tape libraries.

If there are Peer-to-Peer VTS subsystems defined to the system, the following status line is displayed reflecting the number of distributed libraries that are associated with the composite libraries above:

There are also *numvdl-lib* VTS distributed libraries defined.

For OAM tape library installation exits, the following fields are displayed in the status messages:

<i>exit-name</i>	The name of the exit for which status is being displayed. This can be CBRUXENT, CBRUXEJC, CBRUXCUA, or CBRUXVNL. This line is repeated for each installation exit.
ENABLED	The exit is enabled and executes when the requested function is required.
DISABLED	The exit is disabled due to an error or an abend in the installation exit. For CBRUXCUA, the exit is disabled for CUA PRIVATE to SCRATCH requests only.
BYPASSED	The exit returned a return code 16 indicating that the request function is to continue without calling the exit for all other exits. For CBRUXVNL, either the exit returned a return code 16 indicating that it was not to be called again, or an error (or abend) occurred in the exit and the exit will not invoke.
OPERATOR DISABLED	For CBRUXENT, the operator has requested that cartridge entry processing be disabled by issuing the LIBRARY DISABLE, CBRUXENT command. Cartridge entry processing can only be enabled by issuing a LIBRARY RESET, CBRUXENT command, or a system IPL.

The following is a sample of DISPLAY SMS,OAM status:

```

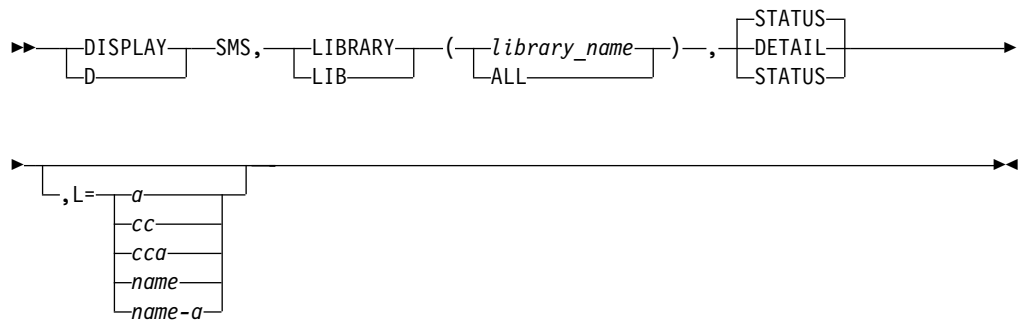
CBR1100I OAM status:
TAPE TOT ONL TOT TOT TOT TOT TOT ONL AVL TOTAL
LIB LIB AL VL VCL ML DRV DRV DRV SCRTCH
      8   7   3   2   3   0 368 355  78 1225
There are also 6 VTS distributed libraries defined.
CBRUXCUA PROCESSING ENABLED.
CBRUXEJC PROCESSING ENABLED.
CBRUXENT PROCESSING ENABLED.
CBRUXVNL PROCESSING ENABLED.

```

Note: If both optical libraries and tape libraries are defined in the SMS configuration, the optical library information is displayed first, followed by the tape library information.

Displaying Library Status

The syntax of the DISPLAY SMS command for library status is:



LIBRARY | LIB(library_name | ALL)

Identifies the library to be displayed. If a library name is specified, there is one data line describing the specified library. If ALL is specified, there is one data line for each library in the configuration. To specify a library named ALL, surround it with a double set of parentheses; for example:
 DISPLAY SMS,LIBRARY((ALL)).

STATUS | DETAIL

The **STATUS** keyword displays the online or offline state of each tape library in the SMS configuration with respect to each system in the SMS complex. **STATUS** is the default. The **DETAIL** keyword displays specific information about the library, such as total number of slots, empty slots, number of drives, scratch volumes, and so on.

Note: A status of ONLINE does not necessarily mean that the library is operational. To determine whether a library is operational, specify the **DETAIL** keyword. See “Displaying Library Detail Status” on page 87 for information on how to obtain detailed library status.

,L={a | cc | cca | name | name-a}

Specifies where the results of the inquiry are to be displayed: the display area *a*, the console number *cc*, or both *cca*. The *name* parameter will be routed to the console referred to by *name* and the screen referred to by *a*. The *name* parameter can be an alphanumeric character string.

Displaying Library Connectivity

To display library connectivity for an individual library, enter the following command:

DISPLAY SMS,LIBRARY(library_name),STATUS

The following information is displayed:

IGD002I 11.19.56 DISPLAY SMS

LIBRARY CLASS SYSTEM = 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6
name type s s s s s s s s s s s s s s s s

LIBRARY CLASS SYSTEM = 1 1 1 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 3 3 3
name type 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2
s s s s s s s s s s s s s s s s

The fields displayed in each data line are as follows:

name Name of the library for which system connectivity and online or offline status is displayed on this line

type Library type (tape or optical)

1–32 Numbers that appear after SYSTEM= indicate system IDs

s Indicates the status of the library:

- . Not defined
- + Online
- Offline
- P Pending offline

Note: A status of ONLINE does not necessarily mean that the library is operational. To determine whether a library is operational, specify the **DETAIL** keyword. See “Displaying Library Detail Status” on page 87 for information on how to obtain detailed library status.

If ALL and STATUS are specified with the LIBRARY keyword and both optical libraries and tape libraries are defined in the SMS configuration, then the status is combined in one display similar to the following.

The following is a sample of DISPLAY SMS,LIBRARY(ALL),STATUS:

```

D SMS,LIBRARY(ALL),STATUS
IGD002I 15:09:21 DISPLAY SMS 409

      1 1 1 1 1 1 1
LIBRARY CLASS SYSTEM= 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6
OPTLIB1 OPTICAL      + . . . . .
OPTLIB2 OPTICAL      + . . . . .
OPTLIB3 OPTICAL      + . . . . .
ATLLIB1 TAPE         + + + . . . . .
MTLA0001 TAPE        + - P . . . . .
MTLA0002 TAPE        + - P . . . . .
PCTREUSE OPTICAL      LIBRARY IS NOT A REAL LIBRARY
STDALONE OPTICAL      LIBRARY IS NOT A REAL LIBRARY

      1 1 1 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 3 3 3
LIBRARY CLASS SYSTEM= 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2
OPTLIB1 OPTICAL      . . . . .
OPTLIB2 OPTICAL      . . . . .
OPTLIB3 OPTICAL      . . . . .
ATLLIB1 TAPE         . + + . . . . .
MTLA0001 TAPE        + - P . . . . .
MTLA0002 TAPE        + - P . . . . .
PCTREUSE OPTICAL      LIBRARY IS NOT A REAL LIBRARY
STDALONE OPTICAL      LIBRARY IS NOT A REAL LIBRARY
*****LEGEND*****
. THE LIBRARY IS NOT DEFINED TO THE SYSTEM
+ THE LIBRARY IS ONLINE
- THE LIBRARY IS OFFLINE
P THE LIBRARY IS PENDING OFFLINE
P THE LIBRARY IS PENDING OFFLINE
SYSTEM 1 = SYSTEM1  SYSTEM 2 = SYSTEM2  SYSTEM 3 = SYSTEM3
SYSTEM 4 = SYSTEM4  SYSTEM 5 = SYSTEM5  SYSTEM 6 = SYSTEM6
SYSTEM 7 = SYSTEM7  SYSTEM 8 = SYSTEM8  SYSTEM 9 = SYSTEM9
SYSTEM 10 = SYSTEM10 SYSTEM 11 = SYSTEM11 SYSTEM 12 = SYSTEM12
SYSTEM 13 = SYSTEM13 SYSTEM 14 = SYSTEM14 SYSTEM 15 = SYSTEM15
SYSTEM 16 = SYSTEM16 SYSTEM 17 = SYSTEM17 SYSTEM 18 = SYSTEM18
SYSTEM 19 = SYSTEM19 SYSTEM 20 = SYSTEM20 SYSTEM 21 = SYSTEM21
SYSTEM 22 = SYSTEM22 SYSTEM 23 = SYSTEM23 SYSTEM 24 = SYSTEM24
SYSTEM 25 = SYSTEM25 SYSTEM 26 = SYSTEM26 SYSTEM 27 = SYSTEM27
SYSTEM 28 = SYSTEM28 SYSTEM 29 = SYSTEM29 SYSTEM 30 = SYSTEM30
SYSTEM 31 = SYSTEM31 SYSTEM 32 = SYSTEM32

```

Displaying Library Detail Status

To display SMS,LIBRARY(ALL),DETAIL status enter the following command:

```
DISPLAY SMS,LIBRARY(ALL),DETAIL
```

The following information is displayed:

```

CBR1110I OAM library status:
TAPE LIB DEVICE TOT ONL AVL TOTAL EMPTY SCRTCH ON OP
LIBRARY TYP TYPE DRV DRV DRV SLOTS SLOTS VOLS
tlibname typ tdevtype lll mmm nnn oooooo pppppp qqqqqq r s

```

The fields in the data line are defined as follows:

tlibname The name of the tape library.

typ The tape library type, as follows:

AL Automated tape library

ML Manual tape library
VL Virtual Tape Server
VCL Peer-to-Peer VTS Composite Library
VDL Peer-to-Peer VTS Distributed Library
UNK Software was unable to communicate with the tape library to obtain the tape library type.

tdevtyp The device type of the tape library, as follows:

3494-L10 IBM 3494 TLDS Model L10
3495-L20 IBM 3495 TLDS Model L20
3495-L30 IBM 3495 TLDS Model L30
3495-L40 IBM 3495 TLDS Model L40
3495-L50 IBM 3495 TLDS Model L50
Manual Manual Tape Library

lll Total number of tape drives, known to the current system, residing in the tape library.

mmm Total number of tape drives, known to the current system and residing in the tape library, that are online.

nnn Total number of tape drives, known to the current system and residing in the tape library, that are online and not allocated.

oooooo Total number of storage slots in the tape library dataserver.

pppppp Total number of empty slots in the tape library dataserver.

qqqqqq Total number of scratch volumes of all media types in the tape library.

r The tape library online status, as follows:

Y Online
N Offline
P Pending offline

s The tape library operational status, as follows:

Y Operational
N Not operational

If ALL and DETAIL are specified with the LIBRARY keyword and both optical libraries and tape libraries are defined in the SMS configuration, two messages are displayed. The first display contains optical library information. The second display contains the tape library information similar to that shown below.

The following is a sample of DISPLAY SMS,LIBRARY(ALL),DETAIL command where only tape libraries are defined:

CBR1110I OAM library status:

TAPE	LIB	DEVICE	TOT	ONL	AVL	TOTAL	EMPTY	SCRATCH	ON	OP
LIBRARY	TYP	TYPE	DRV	DRV	DRV	SLOTS	SLOTS	VOLS		
ATL1000L	AL	3494-L10	6	6	6	621	12	234	Y	Y
ATL1001L	AL	3495-L50	64	52	12	13580	6459	5266	P	Y
MTL1002L	ML	MANUAL	16	10	6	0	0	243	Y	Y
ATL20003	VCL	3494-L10	64	60	48	0	0	19	Y	Y
ATL20004	VDL	3494-L10	0	0	0	416	223	0	Y	Y
ATL20005	VDL	3494-L10	0	0	0	416	253	0	Y	Y
VTSBA008	VL	3494-L10	4	4	4	1443	31	146	Y	Y

If a specific tape library is requested in the DISPLAY SMS,LIBRARY(*library_name*),DETAIL command, then additional information appears concerning the requested library:

```

-----
MEDIA          SCRATCH    SCRATCH
TYPE          COUNT      THRESHOLD
MEDIA1
MEDIA2
MEDIA3
MEDIA4
-----
DISTRIBUTED LIBRARIES:
COMPOSITE LIBRARY:
-----
OPERATIONAL STATE: {AUTOMATED|PAUSED|MANUAL MODE}
ERROR CATEGORY SCRATCH COUNT:
SCRATCH STACKED VOLUME COUNT:
PRIVATE STACKED VOLUME COUNT:
CORRUPTED TOKEN VOLUME COUNT:
HIGH CAPACITY INPUT STATION CAPACITY:
HIGH CAPACITY OUTPUT STATION CAPACITY:
-----
[statuslines]

```

Media type, scratch count, and scratch threshold lines are only displayed for media that have a threshold value or a scratch count greater than zero.

Note: In an MTL, the scratch volume counts maintained in the TCDB are meant to be a good approximation without having an external source, like the library manager. If an update of this count in the catalog fails, the scratch count from that point forward may be off. Periodically check the counts against your tape management system or the TCDB volume records.

For a VTS composite or distributed library, the appropriate composite or distributed line will be displayed mapping their association.

For an ATLDs, the error category displays the total number of scratch volumes that have a software error associated with them. Scratch volumes in this category will still have a use attribute of scratch; however, they are not eligible to be mounted.

The scratch stacked volume count is only displayed for a virtual tape server (VTS) library and indicates the number of available physical scratch volumes. For a Peer-to-Peer VTS subsystem, this information can be obtained by displaying the distributed libraries associated with the composite library.

The private stacked volume count will only be displayed for a VTS library. This count indicates the number of physical stacked private volumes. For a Peer-to-Peer VTS subsystem, this information can be obtained by displaying the distributed libraries associated with the composite library.

The corrupted token volume count will only be displayed for a Peer-to-Peer VTS library and indicates the number of volumes in the corrupted token category. For a Peer-to-Peer VTS subsystem, this information can be obtained by displaying the composite library. For corrective action, contact your hardware service representative.

For a VTS composite library, the operational state that is returned to the host is determined by examining the states of the underlying distributed libraries with much of the other status (for instance, I/O station-related status), being provided from the designated user interface (U/I) library. Also, since all of the drives and volumes are defined to and associated with the composite library, the display of a distributed library will show that, from a host perspective, there are no volumes and drives associated with that library. The distributed libraries should be displayed for an accurate picture of the total and empty slot counts (the slot counts associated with the composite library are zero).

The high capacity input and output station lines are only displayed for an ATLDS and only if the station has been configured.

In an ATLDS, the following status lines may appear:

- Operation degraded due to unavailable hardware resource
- Safety enclosure interlock open
- Vision system not operational
- Library manager offline
- Operator intervention required
- Library manager check 1 condition
- All storage slots full
- Out of cleaner volumes
- Dual write disabled
- Environmental alert
- Library manager switchover in progress
- Copy operations disabled
- VTS operations degraded
- Immediate Mode Copy operations deferred
- Service preparation occurring
- All convenience input stations empty
- All convenience output stations empty
- All convenience output stations full
- Bulk output configured
- Bulk output not configured
- Bulk input/output configured
- Bulk input/output not configured
- High capacity output station full
- Input door open
- Output door open
- Convenience I/O station installed
- Convenience I/O station Input | Output | Import mode
- Convenience I/O station empty
- Convenience I/O station full
- Single cell output facility in use for eject
- Host initiated import in process

- Host initiated export in process
- Library initiated single volume import in process
- Library is out of empty stacked volumes
- Library has insufficient resources to continue mount processing

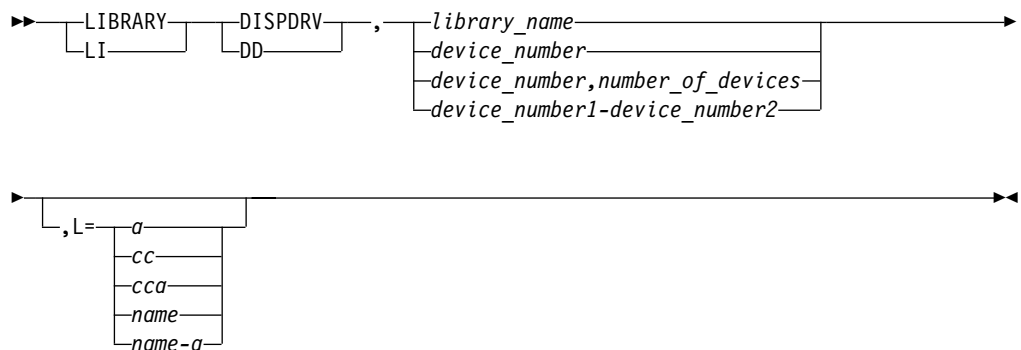
Displaying Tape Drive Status

Use the MVS LIBRARY DISPDRV command to display the status of any of the following combination of drives:

- All tape drives in a tape library
- A single tape drive
- A number of tape drives
- A range of tape drives

You can also use the MVS DISPLAY UNIT command, the MVS DEVSERV command or the JES3 *I,D command to display the status of tape drives within a tape library. Refer to *z/OS MVS System Commands* for additional information on the specific MVS command.

The syntax of the LIBRARY DISPDRV command to display tape drive status is:



DISPDRV | DD

Specifies a request to display tape drive status.

library_name

Specifies the name of the tape library whose tape drives are to be displayed. However, the maximum number of tape drives that is displayed will not exceed 512.

device_number

Specifies the MVS tape device number to be displayed.

number_of_devices

Specifies the number of devices to be displayed. However, the maximum number of tape drives that is displayed will not exceed 512.

device_number1

Specifies the first MVS tape device number to be displayed.

device_number2

Specifies the last MVS tape device number to be displayed. However, the maximum number of tape drives that is displayed will not exceed 512.

,L={a | cc | cca | name | name-a}

Specifies where the results of the inquiry are to be displayed: the display

area *a*, the console number *cc*, or both *cca*. The *name* parameter will be routed to the console referred to by *name* and the screen referred to by *a*. The *name* parameter can be an alphanumeric character string.

To display tape drive status, enter the LIBRARY DISPDRV command.

The following information is displayed:

```
CBR1220I Tape drive status:
DRIVE  DEVICE  LIBRARY  ON  OFFREASN  LM  ICL  ICL  MOUNT
NUM    TYPE    NAME      b  LI  OP  PT  AV  CATEGORY  LOAD  VOLUME
devnum devtyp libname  b   c   d   e   f  ggggggg  h  mntvol
```

The fields in the data line are defined as follows:

devnum The tape device number.

devtyp Name of the tape device type as follows:

- 3480** Reads and writes using 18-track recording technique on MEDIA1 cartridges. Not capable of compaction.
- 3480x** Reads and writes using 18-track recording technique on MEDIA1 cartridges. Capable of compaction.
- 3490** Reads 18-track and 36-track recording technique on MEDIA1 and MEDIA2 cartridges. Writes using 36-track recording technique on either MEDIA1 or MEDIA2 cartridges. Capable of compaction.
- 3590-1** Reads and writes using 128-track recording technique on MEDIA3 or MEDIA4 cartridges. Capable of compaction.
- 3590-E** Reads 128-track and 256-track recording technique on MEDIA3 and MEDIA4 cartridges. Writes using 256-track recording technique on either MEDIA3 or MEDIA4 cartridges. Capable of compaction. 3590-E is used in this display to represent the 3590-E1x family of 3590 tape devices and is not a system defined esoteric.
- 3400** This is a 3400 magnetic tape drive.
- UNKNOWN** Tape device is not recognized.

Whether a device defined through HCD is real or emulated is not determined until successful communication to the device has been made. Until successful communication has been made, the device type displayed will reflect the device type defined through HCD. Thus for emulated devices, such as the 3590 Model E, the device type displayed will reflect the emulated device type defined through HCD rather than the real underlying device type (3590-E). Once successful communication to the device has been established, the device type displayed will reflect the real underlying device type.

Also, on system levels that support the emulated device type defined through HCD, but do not support the real underlying device type (such as the 3590 Model E), the device type displayed will reflect the emulated device type defined through HCD.

libname

Name or ID of the library in which the tape drive resides. For a stand-alone tape drive (nonlibrary-resident drive), this field contains '--N/A--'.

The library name is stored during OAM initialization (or during library VARY processing) for those devices in the library returned by device services. If, after this process, devices in a subsystem are subsequently varied online, the library name displayed may reflect the LIBRARY-ID. As long as the correct library name or library ID is displayed, having the LIBRARY-ID appear in the display should not pose a problem. Refer to "Creating the Hardware Configuration" on page 54 for more information.

b

Tape drive status.

Y Online.

N Offline.

Note: A device can be offline with none of the reason indicators below being set. For example, if a device goes through IOS recovery and the device ends up getting boxed, the reason indicator may not be set.

c

Tape drive is offline for library reasons:

Y The library in which the tape drive resides is offline.

N The library in which the tape drive resides is online.

— The tape drive does not reside in a tape library.

d

Tape drive is offline for operator reasons:

Y The operator has varied the tape drive offline, or the device is defined offline at initialization.

N The operator has varied the tape drive online.

e

Tape drive is offline for path reasons:

Y All channel paths to the tape drive are offline.

N At least one channel path to the drive is online.

f

Library Manager device availability status:

A The tape drive is available at the Library Manager.

U The tape drive is unavailable at the Library Manager.

— The tape drive does not reside in an automated tape library, or the library manager drive status is unknown.

ggggggg

Cartridge loader scratch media category:

MEDIA1 The cartridge loader of the tape drive is set to load with MEDIA1 scratch tapes if available.

MEDIA2 The cartridge loader of the tape drive is set to load with MEDIA2 scratch tapes if available.

MEDIA3 The cartridge loader of the tape drive is set to load with MEDIA3 scratch tapes if available.

MEDIA4 The cartridge loader of the tape drive is set to load with MEDIA4 scratch tapes if available.

X'xxxx'	The hexadecimal value of the assigned category is not recognized by this system.
NONE	For devices in an ATLDS, no category is assigned to the cartridge loader, and the cartridge loader is emptied. For devices in an MTL, indexing does not occur on this system; however, indexing may occur on other systems that own the volumes in the cartridge loader.
ANY	The cartridge loader may be loaded with any valid media type. This is only applicable for devices that reside in an MTL.
--N/A--	The tape drive does not reside in an automated tape library, or the library manager drive status is unknown.

h Volume loaded in the cartridge loader.

Y At least one volume has been loaded in the cartridge loader.

N No volume has been loaded in the cartridge loader.

— The tape drive does not reside in an automated tape library dataserer, or the library manager drive status is unknown.

mntvol If there is no mounted volume, or this is not a library-resident drive, or the library manager drive status is unknown, then this field is left blank.

Additional information may appear containing one or more of the following messages:

- Starting device number is not a tape device.
- Number of tape devices requested exceeds 512; 512 displayed.
- Number of tape devices requested exceeds the number available.
- No tape devices within display criteria.

The following is a sample display of LIBRARY DISPDRV,(*library_name*) command:

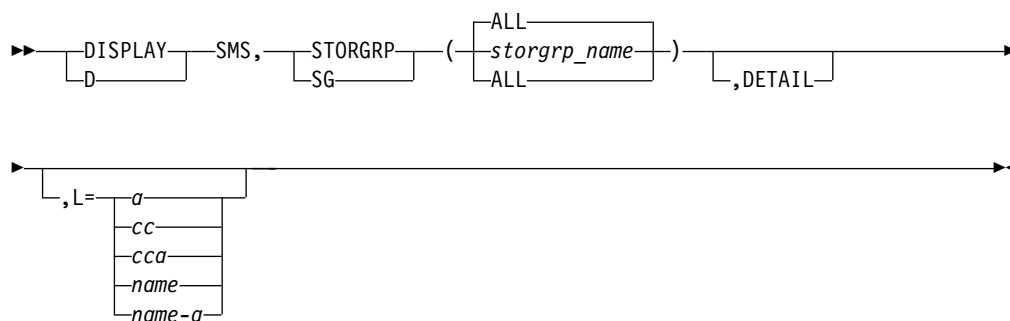
```

CBR1220I Tape drive status:
DRIVE  DEVICE  LIBRARY ON  OFFREASN  LM  ICL  ICL  MOUNT
NUM    TYPE    NAME      LI  OP  PT  AV  CATEGORY  LOAD  VOLUME
0FC0   3490    ATLF4017 Y   N   N   N   A   NONE      N   TST211
0FC1   3490    ATLF4017 N   N   Y   N   A   NONE      N
0FD0   3590-E    ATLF4017 Y   N   N   N   A   NONE      N   TST256
0FD1   3590-E    ATLF4017 Y   N   N   N   A   NONE      N
0FD2   3590-E    ATLF4017 Y   N   N   N   A   NONE      N
0FD3   3590-E    ATLF4017 Y   N   N   N   A   NONE      N
0FE0   3590-1    ATLF4017 Y   N   N   N   A   NONE      N   TST500
0FE1   3590-1    ATLF4017 Y   N   N   N   A   NONE      N
0FE2   3590-1    ATLF4017 Y   N   N   N   A   NONE      N
0FE3   3590-1    ATLF4017 Y   N   N   N   A   NONE      N

```

Displaying Storage Group Status

The syntax of the DISPLAY command to display storage group status is:



STORGRP | SG(storgrp_name | ALL)

If *storgrp_name* is specified, the status of the requested tape storage group is displayed. If *storgrp_name* is omitted, then *ALL* is the default and the status of all storage groups within the active configuration is displayed.

,DETAIL

Displays the tape libraries associated with the tape storage groups.

,L={a | cc | cca | name | name-a}

Specifies where the results of the inquiry are to be displayed: the display area *a*, the console number *cc*, or both *cca*. The *name* parameter will be routed to the console referred to by *name* and the screen referred to by *a*. The *name* parameter can be an alphanumeric character string.

To display status for an individual storage group, enter the following command:

```
DISPLAY SMS,STORGRP(storgrp_name),DETAIL
```

The following information is displayed:

```

CBR1130I OAM storage group status:
TAPE      LIBRARY
STORGRP   NAMES
sgname    libname1 libname2 libname3 libname4
          libname5 libname6 libname7 libname8
  
```

The fields displayed in each data line are as follows:

<i>sgname</i>	Name of the tape storage group
<i>libname1</i>	Names of the one to eight tape libraries associated with the storage group

The following is sample output of the DISPLAY SMS,STORGRP(ALL),DETAIL command:

```

CBR1130I OAM storage group status:
TAPE      LIBRARY
STORGRP   NAMES
TAPESG1   TAPELIB1
TAPESG2   TAPELIB1 TAPELIB2
TAPESG3   TAPELIB1 TAPELIB2 TAPELIB3

```

If ALL and DETAIL are specified with the STORGRP keyword and both object storage groups and tape storage groups are defined in the SMS configuration, object storage group information is displayed first followed by the tape storage group information similar to that shown in the sample above.

If ALL is specified but DETAIL is *not* specified with the STORGRP keyword and both object storage groups and tape storage groups are defined in the SMS configuration, then the status is combined in one display similar to that shown below.

The following is sample output from the DISPLAY SMS,STORGRP(ALL) command:

```

IGD002I   11.19.56   DISPLAY SMS

STORGRP   TYPE      SYSTEM= 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6
BACKUP01  OBJECTB   + . . . . .
OBJJSG01  OBJECT    + . . . . .
OBJJSG02  OBJECT    + . . . . .
OBJJSG03  OBJECT    + . . . . .
TAPESG1    TAPE      + + + . . . . .
TAPESG2    TAPE      . + + . . . . .
TAPESG3    TAPE      . - D . . . . .
TSODASD    POOL      + + + + + - + . . . . .

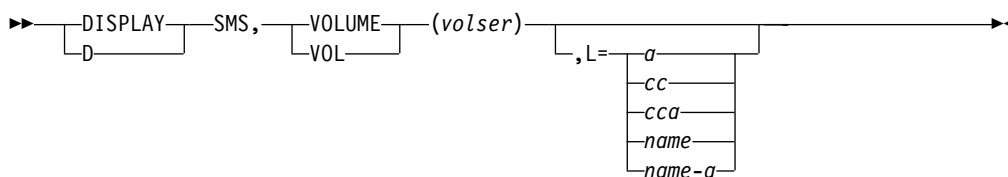
STORGRP   TYPE      SYSTEM= 1 1 1 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 3 3 3
BACKUP01  OBJECTB   . . . . .
OBJJSG01  OBJECT    . . . . .
OBJJSG02  OBJECT    . . . . .
OBJJSG03  OBJECT    . . . . .
TAPESG1    TAPE      + + + . . . . .
TAPESG2    TAPE      . + + . . . . .
TAPESG3    TAPE      . - D . . . . .
TSODASD    POOL      + + + + + - + . . . . .

*****LEGEND*****
. THE STORAGE GROUP OR VOLUME IS NOT DEFINED TO THE SYSTEM
+ THE STORAGE GROUP OR VOLUME IS ENABLED
- THE STORAGE GROUP OR VOLUME IS DISABLED
* THE STORAGE GROUP OR VOLUME IS QUIESCED
D THE STORAGE GROUP OR VOLUME IS DISABLED FOR NEW ALLOCATIONS ONLY
Q THE STORAGE GROUP OR VOLUME IS QUIESCED FOR NEW ALLOCATIONS ONLY
SYSTEM 1 = SYSTEM1   SYSTEM 2 = SYSTEM2   SYSTEM 3 = SYSTEM3
SYSTEM 4 = SYSTEM4   SYSTEM 5 = SYSTEM5   SYSTEM 6 = SYSTEM6
SYSTEM 7 = SYSTEM7   SYSTEM 8 = SYSTEM8   SYSTEM 9 = SYSTEM9
SYSTEM 10 = SYSTEM10 SYSTEM 11 = SYSTEM11 SYSTEM 12 = SYSTEM12
SYSTEM 13 = SYSTEM13 SYSTEM 14 = SYSTEM14 SYSTEM 15 = SYSTEM15
SYSTEM 16 = SYSTEM16 SYSTEM 17 = SYSTEM17 SYSTEM 18 = SYSTEM18
SYSTEM 19 = SYSTEM19 SYSTEM 20 = SYSTEM20 SYSTEM 21 = SYSTEM21
SYSTEM 22 = SYSTEM22 SYSTEM 23 = SYSTEM23 SYSTEM 24 = SYSTEM24
SYSTEM 25 = SYSTEM25 SYSTEM 26 = SYSTEM26 SYSTEM 27 = SYSTEM27
SYSTEM 28 = SYSTEM28 SYSTEM 29 = SYSTEM29 SYSTEM 30 = SYSTEM30
SYSTEM 31 = SYSTEM31 SYSTEM 32 = SYSTEM32

```

Displaying Tape Volume Status

The syntax of the DISPLAY command to display tape volume status is:



VOLUME | VOL(*volser*)

Displays the status of the requested tape volume. There is no option to display all tape volumes known to the system; however, you may use ISMF panels to display a list of tape volumes.

Specifying *volser* displays the status of the requested tape volume.

,L={*a* | *cc* | *cca* | *name* | *name-a*}

Specifies where the results of the inquiry are to be displayed: the display area *a*, the console number *cc*, or both *cca*. The *name* parameter will be routed to the console referred to by *name* and the screen referred to by *a*. The *name* parameter can be an alphanumeric character string.

To display tape volume status, enter the following command:

```
DISPLAY SMS,VOLUME(volser)
```

The following information is displayed:

```
CBR1180I OAM tape volume status:
VOLUME  MEDIA  STORAGE  LIBRARY  USE  W  C  SOFTWARE  LIBRARY
        TYPE   GROUP    NAME     ATR  P  P  ERR STAT  CATEGORY
volser  medtype sgname  libname  u   x  y  errstat  category
RECORDING TECH:  aaaaaaaaaa
COMPACTION:      bbbbbbbbbb
SPECIAL ATTRIBUTE: ccccccccc
CREATION DATE:   dddddddddd
LAST MOUNTED DATE: ffffffff
ENTER/EJECT DATE: hhhhhhhhhh
SHELF LOCATION:  shelfloc
OWNER: owner information
status lines
```

The fields displayed in each data line are as follows:

<i>volser</i>	Volume serial number of the requested tape volume.
<i>medtype</i>	Media type of the tape volume, as follows:
MEDIA1	IBM Cartridge System Tape
MEDIA2	IBM Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape
MEDIA3	IBM High Performance Cartridge Tape
MEDIA4	IBM Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape

	UNKNOWN	No media type specified
	INVALID	Media type specified is not valid
<i>sgname</i>		Name of the storage group to which the tape volume belongs.
<i>libname</i>		Name of the library in which the tape volume resides. If the volume resides outside a library, this field contains SHELF.
<i>u</i>		Tape volume use attribute, as follows:
	P	Private use attribute
	S	Scratch use attribute
<i>x</i>		Tape volume write protection status, as follows:
	Y	Write protected
	N	Not write protected
	blank	Write protection status unknown
<i>y</i>		Tape volume checkpoint status, as follows:
	Y	Secure checkpoint volume
	N	Not a secure checkpoint volume
	blank	Checkpoint status unknown
<i>errstat</i>		The software recorded volume error status, as follows:
	ANSILAB	ANSI label not supported.
	CHECKPT	Attempt to access secure checkpoint volume.
	DAMAGED	Cartridge is physically damaged and leader block may be missing.
	DUPMOUNT	Volume with same <i>volser</i> already mounted.
	EXTLABEL	External label missing or unreadable.
	INACCESS	Volume inaccessible in library.
	INTLABEL	Volume label cannot be read.
	LABTYPE	Invalid volume label type, neither standard nor ANSI.
	LNGTHERR	Cartridge length exceeds IBM supported maximum.
	MEDIAMNT	Mounted media does not match the type specified for a scratch volume mount request.
	MED2MNT	MEDIA2 cartridge mounted on a nonMEDIA2 capable device.
	MISSING	Volume not in assigned location in library.
	NOERROR	No errors detected.
	NOMATCH	Internal and external labels do not match.
	NOTINLIB	Volume not in library manager inventory.
	PASSPROT	Attempt to access password-protected volume.
	RACFPROT	Attempt to access SAF/RACF-protected volume.
	REJTMS	Volume rejected by the tape management system.

REJUSER	Volume rejected by the user's DCB exit or label editing routine.
TRKCMPT	Media was mounted whose recording technology is incompatible with the device.
UNEXPIR	Attempt to write over unexpired data.
UNFORMAT	Volume has not been formatted with servo tracks and should be returned to the media manufacturer.
UNKNOWN	Volume error status unknown.
WRITPROT	Attempt to write on write-protected volume.
WRONGVOL	Library mounted different volume when this volume was requested.

category

Library category to which the volume is assigned, as follows:

BADTOKEN	The library has determined that the tokens associated with this volume have been corrupted.
BULKEJCT	Volume is to be ejected to the bulk output station.
CONVEJCT	Volume is to be ejected to a convenience output station.
ERROR	An error has been detected by software during an attempt to mount this scratch volume.
EXPORTED	The logical volume has been exported onto a stacked volume, but export completion processing has not occurred at the host.
EXPPEND	The export of the logical volume is pending in the library.
INSERT	Volume has been put into the library, but has not yet been processed by software cartridge entry.
MANEJECT	Volume has been manually removed from the library. Volumes in this category are not processed by the host and remain in this category.
NONE	The volume does not reside in an automated tape library.
NOTAVAIL	OAM display processor was unable to obtain the volume data record from the tape library.
PRIVATE	Volume contains useful data and may be requested only by specific <i>volser</i> reference.
SCRMED1	Volume contains no useful data and may be requested only by nonspecific <i>volser</i> reference. The volume resides in the library category for scratch volumes of media type MEDIA1.
SCRMED2	Volume contains no useful data and may be requested only by nonspecific <i>volser</i> reference. The volume resides in the library category for scratch volumes of media type MEDIA2.
SCRMED3	Volume contains no useful data and may be requested only by nonspecific <i>volser</i> reference. The

	volume resides in the library manager category for scratch volumes of media type MEDIA3.
SCRMED4	Volume contains no useful data and may be requested only by nonspecific <i>volser</i> reference. The volume resides in the library manager category for scratch volumes of media type MEDIA4.
UNKNOWN	Hardware category is not recognized by software.
<i>aaaaaaaaaa</i>	Recording technology used to record the tape:
18 TRACK	18-track recording mode
36 TRACK	36-track recording mode
128 TRACK	128-track recording mode
256 TRACK	256-track recording mode
UNKNOWN	Recording mode not specified
INVALID	Recording technology specified is invalid
<i>bbbbbbbbbb</i>	Compaction mode set during recording:
YES	Compaction
NO	No compaction
UNKNOWN	Compaction not specified
INVALID	Compaction specified is invalid
<i>ccccccccc</i>	Volume special attribute:
RDCOMPAT	Volume used for read-only. All read-compatible devices are eligible.
NONE	Volume has no special attribute.
INVALID	Special attribute specified is invalid.
<i>dddddddddd</i>	Date the volume record in the TCDB catalog was initially created, in ISO date format YYYY-MM-DD.
<i>eeeeeeeeee</i>	Expiration date of the tape volume, in ISO date format YYYY-MM-DD.
<i>ffffffffff</i>	Date the volume was last mounted, in ISO date format YYYY-MM-DD.
<i>gggggggggg</i>	Date a data set was last opened for output on the volume, in ISO date format YYYY-MM-DD.
<i>hhhhhhhhh</i>	Date the volume was last entered into or ejected from a tape library, in ISO date format YYYY-MM-DD.
<i>shelfloc</i>	Shelf location where the tape volume is stored if the volume resides outside a library; otherwise, this is the shelf location where the volume is stored when it is ejected from the library.
<i>owner information</i>	Owner information associated with the tape volume.
<i>status lines</i>	Additional tape volume status messages, as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Audit operation queued in host • Audit operation queued in library • Audit operation in progress in library

|
|

- Eject operation queued in host
- Eject/Export operation queued in library
- Eject/Export operation in progress in library
- Mount operation queued in library
- Mount operation in progress in library
- Volume mounted on library-resident drive
- Demount operation queued in library
- Demount operation in progress in library
- Volume inaccessible in library
- Volume misplaced in library
- External label missing or unreadable
- Volume used during manual mode
- Logical volume
- Volume is cache resident
- Valid copy in each distributed library

The following is sample output of the DISPLAY SMS,VOLUME(vo/ser) command:

```
CBR1180I OAM tape volume status:
VOLUME MEDIA STORAGE LIBRARY USE W C SOFTWARE LIBRARY
      TYPE GROUP NAME ATR P P ERR STAT CATEGORY
J00001 MEDIA2 TAPESG2 VTSLIB1 P N N NOERROR EXPORTED
-----
RECORDING TECH: 36 TRACK
COMPACTION: NO
SPECIAL ATTRIBUTE: NONE
CREATION DATE: 1991-11-01 EXPIRATION DATE: 1999-12-31
LAST MOUNTED DATE: 1992-01-15 LAST WRITTEN DATE: 1992-01-15
ENTER/EJECT DATE: 1991-11-01
SHELF LOCATION:
OWNER: E. M. WHALEN, 031/2276, IBM CORPORATION, TUCSON, AZ
-----
Eject/Export operation in progress in library.
Logical volume.
```

Displaying Outstanding OAM Messages

The syntax of the DISPLAY command to display outstanding OAM messages is:

►► DISPLAY R,L,KEY=OAM ►►

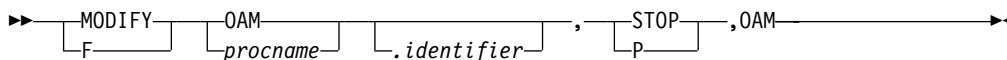
To display outstanding OAM messages, enter the following command:

```
DISPLAY R,L,KEY=OAM
```

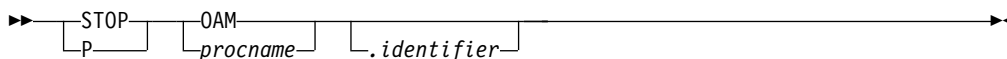
Use this command to display the message identification numbers and texts of all immediate action messages, eventual action messages, and messages waiting for replies that OAM issued.

Stopping OAM

The syntax of F OAM,STOP command to stop OAM is:



The syntax of the STOP OAM command to stop OAM is:



To stop OAM, enter the following command:

```
F OAM,STOP,OAM
```

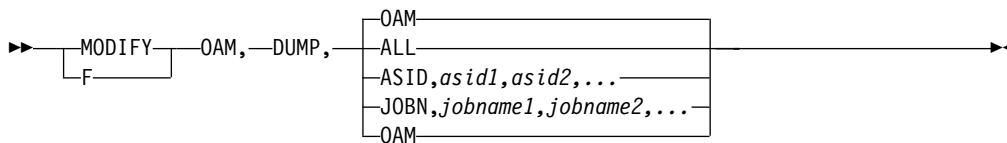
The system displays the following messages indicating OAM termination status.

```
CBR0098I  OAM termination starting.
CBR1000I  OAM STOP command execution scheduled.
CBR0099I  OAM termination completed.
```

Capturing OAM Diagnostic Data

OAM uses SVC dumps as a diagnostic tool for system hangs or performance problems. To capture this data, the operator issues the DUMP command after the problem has been recreated or at the time of failure. OAM provides a streamlined version of the previous DUMP command. The F OAM,DUMP,(operands) command automatically collects all the pertinent data needed for diagnostic purposes without the operator having to key in all the correct parameters.

The syntax of the F OAM,DUMP command is:



Note: OAM is the default name of the cataloged procedure in your SYS1.PROCLIB. If a name other than OAM is used for the cataloged procedure, use that name in the DUMP statement. For example, MODIFY *procname_name*,DUMP,OAM.

OAM

Specifies a request to schedule an SVC dump for the OAM address space. If

the first operand after the **DUMP** verb is either **OAM** or blank, OAM schedules an SVC dump for the OAM address space.

ALL

An SVC dump is scheduled for the OAM address space and any address spaces which currently have work queued to the OAM address space, up to 14 address spaces in addition to OAM.

If the first operand after the DUMP verb is ALL, OAM scans all queues to identify address spaces that are not the OAM address space. OAM scans until all queues are searched or 14 address spaces are found. OAM then schedules an SVC dump for the OAM address space and up to 14 other address spaces that currently have work queued in the OAM address space.

ASID (address space identifier),*asid1,asid2,asid3...*

An SVC dump is scheduled for the OAM address space and any address spaces specified after the ASID operand separated by commas. A valid ASID is a 1 to 4 hexadecimal (0–9, A–F) value. From one to 14 ASIDs can be specified with the ASID operand. If more than 14 ASIDs are specified, the first 14 will be used.

If the first operand after the DUMP verb is ASID, OAM validates that any ASIDs specified following the ASID operand are valid hexadecimal characters (0–9, A–F). If they are valid, OAM, schedules an SVC dump for the OAM address space and any additional address spaces specified (up to 14 address spaces in addition to OAM).

JOBN (job name),*jobname1,jobname2,jobname3...*

An SVC dump is scheduled for the OAM address space and any job spaces specified after the JOBN operand separated by commas. A valid job name is a 1 to 8 character value of the following character set:

- Alphanumeric characters (A–Z, 0–9)
- National characters (&, \$, @)
- Wildcard characters (*, ?) where “*” can stand for 0 or more characters, up to the maximum length of the job name string (8) and “?” can stand for one character.

From one to 14 job names can be specified with the JOBN operand. If more than 14 job names are specified, the first 14 will be used.

If the first operand after the **DUMP** verb is **JOBN**, OAM validates that any job names specified following the **JOBN** operand contain the valid character set. If they are valid, OAM schedules an SVC dump for the OAM address space and any job names specified (up to 14 jobs in addition to OAM).

OAM issues messages for any errors found in the DUMP command at SVC scheduling time and at SVC DUMP data capture completion. For more information concerning these messages, refer to *z/OS MVS System Messages, Vol 4 (CBD-DMO)*.

Querying Active and Waiting OAM Tape Library Requests

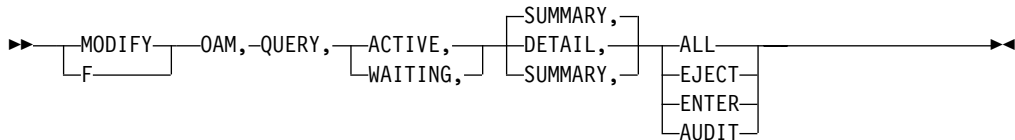
OAM provides a QUERY command that enables the system operator to query the status of active and waiting requests processed in the OAM address space. This includes and is limited to tape library eject, enter, and audit requests. The command is capable of displaying:

- Summary of active tape library requests
- Summary of waiting tape library requests

- Detailed information concerning active tape library requests
- Detailed information concerning waiting tape library requests

Note: This publication deals only with the information regarding active and waiting tape library requests. For information on how this command is used in conjunction with optical and object tape requests, refer to *z/OS DFSMS OAM Planning, Installation, and Storage Administration Guide for Object Support*.

The syntax of the F OAM,QUERY command is:



Note: OAM is the default name of the cataloged procedure in your SYS1.PROCLIB. If a name other than OAM is used for the cataloged procedure, use that name in the QUERY statement. For example, `MODIFY procname_name,QUERY,ACTIVE,SUMMARY`.

The following are the keyword descriptions of the QUERY command:

QUERY | Q

Specifies a request to display information about active and waiting tape library requests.

ACTIVE | A | WAITING | W

Specifies whether information about active or waiting requests will be displayed. One of these keywords must be specified on the QUERY command.

ACTIVE | A

Specifies that only information about active requests, those currently being processed, will be displayed.

WAITING | W

Specifies that only information about requests waiting for processing will be displayed.

SUMMARY | S | DETAIL | D

Specifies whether summary or detailed information should be displayed for the requested category (ACTIVE or WAITING). If neither the SUMMARY nor DETAIL keyword is specified on the QUERY command, then only summary information is displayed for the requested category.

SUMMARY | S

Specifies that only summary information about the requested category should display. This is the default.

DETAIL | D

Indicates that only detailed information about the requested category is to be displayed. When the DETAIL keyword is specified, one of the following keywords is required:

ALL Detail information for all eject, entry, and audit requests (active or waiting) are displayed.

EJECT

Detail information for all tape library EJECT requests (active or waiting) are displayed.

ENTER

Detail information for all tape library ENTER requests (active or waiting) are displayed.

AUDIT

Detail information for all tape library AUDIT requests (active or waiting) are displayed.

To display summary information on active tape library requests, enter one of the following commands:

```
F OAM,QUERY,ACTIVE
```

or

```
F OAM,QUERY,ACTIVE,SUMMARY
```

The following information is displayed:

```
CBR1735I TAPE LIBRARY ACTIVE SUM:
---- TAPE LIBRARY REQUESTS CURRENTLY BEING PROCESSED----
ENTERS  EJECTS  AUDITS
aaaaaa  bbbbbb  cccccc
```

The fields in the data line are defined as follows:

aaaaaa Total number of tape volume entry requests currently processing. Only one tape volume entry request can be active per library.

bbbbbb Total number of user initiated tape volume eject requests currently processing, queued, or both, at the library manager. Physically ejected volumes from the library can still appear in this total if OAM has not processed the eject completion message.

ccccc Total number of tape volume audit requests currently processing, queued, or both, at the library manager.

Note: All counts are a snapshot-in-time, so the counts can quickly change.

To display summary information on waiting tape library requests, enter one of the following commands:

```
F OAM,QUERY,WAITING
```

or

```
F OAM,QUERY,WAITING,SUMMARY
```

The following information is displayed:

```

CBR1715I TAPE LIBRARY WAITING SUM:
---- TAPE LIBRARY REQUESTS WAITING FOR PROCESSING----
ENTERS   EJECTS   AUDITS
aaaaaa   bbbbbb   ccccc

```

The fields in the data line are defined as follows:

aaaaaa Total number of tape volume entry requests waiting for processing. This is the total number of volumes recognized by OAM as being in the library manager insert category waiting to be processed. If OAM has not received the attention interrupt signalling the addition of cartridges to the insert category, the entered volumes will not be included in the summary count even though they have physically been entered into a library.

bbbbbb Total number of user initiated tape volume eject requests waiting for processing in the OAM address space that have not yet been sent to the library manager.

ccccc Total number of tape volume audit requests waiting for processing in the OAM address space that have not yet been sent to the library manager.

Note: All counts are a snapshot-in-time, so the counts can quickly change.

To display detail information on active tape library requests, enter one of the following commands:

```

F OAM,QUERY,ACTIVE,DETAIL,ALL
or
F OAM,QUERY,ACTIVE,DETAIL,AUDIT
or
F OAM,QUERY,ACTIVE,DETAIL,EJECT
or
F OAM,QUERY,ACTIVE,DETAIL,ENTER

```

The following message is displayed when either the ALL or AUDIT keyword is used in the command:

```

CBR1773I Auditing tape volume volser, in library lib_name,
for user userid, request=request.

```

The following message is displayed when either the ALL or EJECT keyword is used in the command:

```

CBR1774I Ejecting tape volume volser, from library lib_name, for user userid.

```


The following message is displayed when either the ALL or ENTER keyword is used in the command:

CBR1775I Tape cartridge entry request in process on library *lib_name*.

To display detail information on waiting tape library requests, enter one of the following commands:

F OAM,QUERY,WAITING,DETAIL,ALL
or
F OAM,QUERY,WAITING,DETAIL,AUDIT
or
F OAM,QUERY,WAITING,DETAIL,EJECT
or
F OAM,QUERY,WAITING,DETAIL,ENTER

The following message is displayed when either the ALL or AUDIT keyword is used in the command:

CBR1783I Audit request for tape volume *volser* in library *lib_name*, for user *userid*, waiting to be processed, request = *request*.

The following message is displayed when either the ALL or EJECT keyword is used in the command:

CBR1784I Eject request for tape volume *volser* in library *lib_name*, for user *userid*, waiting to be processed.

The following message is displayed when either the ALL or ENTRY keyword is used in the command:

CBR1785I *number* tape cartridge entry requests for library *lib_name* waiting to be processed.

Chapter 6. LCS External Services

This chapter contains general-use programming interface and associated guidance information.

Library Control System (LCS) External Services

Library Control System (LCS) External Services provides a programming interface that allows you to access and manipulate information about each tape volume record in the TCDB. Executable macro CBRXLCS is used to invoke the LCS External Services to perform the following functions:

- Change the use attribute of a volume
- Enter one or more volumes into a manual tape library
- Eject a tape cartridge from a tape library
- Query the name and type of a tape library where a specified volume resides
- Determine whether a tape volume can be mounted on a specific device
- Export a list of logical volumes from a VTS
- Import a list of logical volumes into a VTS
- Change current operating modes of a Peer-to-Peer VTS library
- Obtain operational mode settings and device-related information from a Peer-to-Peer VTS library

Note: You may have an environment with multiple systems at different levels sharing a common TCDB. In this event, if a system attempts to perform a CBRXLCS function against a volume that has a media type or recording technology that is not recognized, the request fails.

Change Use Attribute (CUA)

The change use attribute (CUA) function changes the status of the specified volume from private to scratch, scratch to private, private to private, or scratch to scratch, and updates the tape volume record in the TCDB. It also calls the change use attribute installation exit to allow the installation to approve or disapprove the change in the volume status and to set values for many of the fields in the volume record. See “Change Use Attribute Installation Exit (CBRUXCUA)” on page 159.

Manual Cartridge Entry (MCE)

The manual cartridge entry (MCE) function allows the user to enter a list of one or more tape cartridges into a manual tape library. When the MCE function is invoked, a tape volume record is created or updated in the TCDB. MCE calls the cartridge entry installation exit to allow the installation to approve or disapprove the entry of the cartridge into the manual tape library, and to set values for many of the fields in the volume record. For more information regarding the cartridge entry installation exit, see “Cartridge Entry Installation Exit (CBRUXENT)” on page 166.

Cartridge Eject (EJECT)

The cartridge eject (EJECT) function allows the user to eject a tape cartridge from a tape library. The tape volume record in the TCDB may be kept or purged. EJECT calls the cartridge eject installation exit, which allows the installation to approve or disapprove the ejection of the cartridge from the tape library. See “Cartridge Eject Installation Exit (CBRUXEJC)” on page 174 for more information regarding the cartridge eject installation exit.

Query Volume Residence (QVR)

The query volume residence (QVR) function allows the installation to query the residency and type of library in which a specified volume resides. It also returns the console name associated with the library, if one has been specified by the installation, and if requested, other available information about the volume from the TCDB and library manager inventory.

Additionally, QVR provides audit capabilities from a tape management system database, since QVR does not require the presence of a TCDB record to perform this audit. A tape management system can use this capability to verify its inventory against the TCDB and the library manager inventory. It can also be used to track and verify the library residency of volumes that are not managed in the TCDB, such as stacked volumes in a VTS. See “Querying the Residence of a Volume” on page 124.

Test Volume Eligibility (TVE)

The test volume eligibility (TVE) function verifies that the specified tape volume serial number can be mounted on the specified tape device. See “Testing the Eligibility of a Volume” on page 128.

Export Logical Volumes (EXPORT)

After the tape management system or customer utility has written the list of logical volumes to export on an export list volume (logical volume residing in the same library as the volumes to be exported), the export function can be used to identify the logical volumes to export and to initiate the export operation at the library. This interface can also be used to cancel an executing export operation. See “Exporting Logical Volumes from a VTS” on page 130.

Import Logical Volumes (IMPORT)

After the tape management system or customer utility has written the list of logical volumes to import on an import list volume (logical volume residing in the same library as the volumes to be imported), the import function can be used to identify the logical volumes to import and to initiate the import operation at the library. This interface can also be used to cancel an existing import operation. See “Importing Logical Volumes into a VTS” on page 131.

Peer-to-Peer Mode Control (PTPMC)

The Peer-to-Peer VTS mode control (PTPMC) function allows an installation or application to change current operating modes of the library. See “Changing Library Operating Modes (Peer-to-Peer VTS Mode Control)” on page 133.

Peer-to-Peer Data (PTPDATA)

The Peer-to-Peer VTS data (PTPDATA) function allows an installation or application to obtain operational mode settings and device-related information from the PTP VTS library. See “Obtaining Operational Mode Settings (Peer-to-Peer VTS Data)” on page 137.

CBRXLCS Macro Interface

An executable macro CBRXLCS is used to invoke the functions provided by LCS External Services. The macro expansion sets parameter values in the LCS External Services parameter list (LCSPL), which is mapped by the CBRXLCSPL macro, retrieves the entry point for LCS External Services, and branches to perform the requested function.

The following diagrams illustrate the syntax for required and optional parameters for each CBRXLCS function. More information about using the macro is provided in “CBRXLCS Assembler Macro Usage” on page 139.

Changing the Use Attribute of a Volume

Figure 6 provides the CBRXLCS Assembler H macro syntax that is used to perform the change use attribute function.

```
CBRXLCS  TYPE=TAPE
        ,FUNC=CUA
        ,USE={PRIVATE | SCRATCH}
        ,VOLUME=volume-serial-number
        [,DEVTYPE=tape-device-selection-information-address]
        [,EXPDATE=volume-expiration-date]
        [,GRPNAME=storage-group-name]
        [,WRTDATE=YES]
        [,WRTPROT=write-protection-status]
        [,EXITINFO=installation-exit-information]
```

Figure 6. CBRXLCS CUA Assembler H Macro Syntax

When a value or address is requested, the keyword operand may be:

- The name of the field that contains the requested value or address
- The number, in parentheses, of a general register in the range of 2 through 12 that contains the address of the field

Note: The change use attribute function can also be used to remove a volume from the error category in the hardware.

Parameter Description

TYPE=TAPE

Specifies a request related to the TCDB.

FUNC=CUA

Specifies a request to change the use attribute of a single volume to that of the change use attribute specified in the USE field.

USE=PRIVATE

Specifies that the volume use attribute be set to private for the volume.

USE=SCRATCH

Specifies that the volume use attribute be set to scratch for the volume.

VOLUME=*volume-serial-number*

Specifies the name of a character variable (six-byte length), which contains the volume serial number of the volume whose use attribute is to be changed. The volume serial number must be left justified in the field and padded on the right with blanks. If the volume resides in a library, the library must be defined in the active SMS configuration.

DEVTYPE=tape-device-selection-information-address

Specifies the name of a variable which contains the address of the tape device selection information to be associated with the data sets written on this tape volume. The TDSI is mapped by the structure CBRTDSI (see Figure 18 on page 158), and consists of four one-byte fields which specify recording technology, media type, compaction indicator, and special attribute to be associated with the volume.

The following three fields in the TDSI may be specified on a CUA request:

- Recording technology may be specified as unknown, 18TRACK, 36TRACK, 128TRACK, or 256TRACK.
- Media type may be specified as unknown, MEDIA1, MEDIA2, MEDIA3, or MEDIA4.
- Compaction may be specified as unknown, none, or compacted.

Any nonzero TDSI field specified for input is merged with the tape device selection information recorded on the volume record. If incompatible tape device selection attributes, such as 18TRACK recording technology and MEDIA2, or 18TRACK or 36TRACK recording technology and MEDIA3 or MEDIA4 result from merging the input, an error is returned and CUA processing is not performed. If CUA processing is successful, the TDSI in the volume record in the TCDB is updated with the new, merged values.

DEVTYPE is used only when USE=PRIVATE is specified, and is otherwise ignored.

EXPDATE=volume-expiration-date

Specifies the name of a variable (four-byte length), which contains the expiration date assigned to the volume. The expiration date should be specified in TIME DEC format; for example, packed decimal digits of the form 0CYYDDDF. This field is only used when USE=PRIVATE is specified, and is otherwise ignored. If the change use attribute installation exit is invoked, the value specified by the exit may override the volume expiration date.

GRPNAME=storage-group-name

Specifies the name of a character variable (eight-byte length) which contains the name of the storage group to which the volume belongs. The storage group name must be left justified in the field, and padded on the right with blanks, if necessary. This field is only used when USE=PRIVATE is specified, and is otherwise ignored. If a nonblank storage group name is specified on a change to PRIVATE, the storage group must be a tape storage group defined in the active configuration. Additionally, if the volume is library-resident, the library must also be defined to the storage group. If a storage group name is specified and there is a change from PRIVATE to PRIVATE, the existing storage group name in the volume record is updated. On a change from PRIVATE to PRIVATE, if no storage group name is specified, the existing storage group name in the TCDB is retained. On a change from SCRATCH to PRIVATE, if no storage group name is specified, the field is set to blanks. If the change use attribute installation exit is invoked, the value specified by the exit may override the storage group name.

WRDATE=YES

Specification of this keyword requests the update of the date when a data set was last opened for OUTPUT. The tape volume record is updated with the current date, as returned by the MVS TIME macro, translated into ISO format (YYYY-MM-DD). When this keyword is specified the last mounted date is also set to the current date. This field is only used when USE=PRIVATE is specified,

and is otherwise ignored. If the change use attribute installation exit is invoked, it may override the last written date and last mounted date.

WRTPROT=*write-protection-status*

Specifies the name of a character variable (one-byte length) which contains the volume write protection status. If the write-protect tab is set on the tape cartridge, this field should be set to "Y"; if the write-protect tab is not set, this field should be set to "N"; if the tab setting is unknown, it should be set to blank. This field is only used when USE=PRIVATE is specified, and is otherwise ignored. If the change use attribute installation exit is invoked, the value specified by the exit may override the write protection status.

EXITINFO=*installation-exit-information*

Specifies the name of a character variable (16-byte length) that contains a customer specified free-form value to be passed to the change use attribute installation exit (CBRUXCUA).

Successful Change Use Attribute Processing

When the change use attribute function is successful, the following processing occurs:

- The use attribute of the volume specified with the VOLUME keyword is changed to the requested value.
- The tape volume record is updated with the values specified on the CBRXLCS macro invocation, by the change use attribute installation exit, or both.
- If the volume resides in an ATLDS, the category of the volume is also changed in the hardware inventory to the requested value.

Unless the change use attribute installation exit (CBRUXCUA) has been disabled or the installation has indicated that it should not be called, the change use attribute installation exit is invoked for every request to change the use attribute of a volume. See "Change Use Attribute Installation Exit (CBRUXCUA)" on page 159 for further discussion of the exit.

Changing the Use Attribute from Scratch to Private

For a request to change a volume to PRIVATE, the optional parameters which are specified on the CBRXLCS invocation are passed to the installation exit for approval. The exit may override the values supplied on the macro invocation, and the values supplied by the exit are committed to the tape volume record if CUA processing is successful.

Changing the Use Attribute from Private to Scratch

For a request to change a volume to SCRATCH, optional parameters are ignored on the CBRXLCS macro invocation. Upon return from the installation exit, the following default values are set in the tape volume record:

- Volume use attribute = **S**
- Storage group name = ***SCRATCH***
- Write protection status = **N**
- Checkpoint volume indicator = **N**
- Volume expiration date = blank
- Tape device selection values
 - Recording technology is unchanged
 - Media type is unchanged
 - Compaction indicator is unchanged
 - Special attribute is set to none

When the volume whose use attribute is to be changed resides in a tape library, a call is made to the hardware to change the category of the volume. If the hardware change is not successful, the tape volume record is not updated and CUA processing fails. If the category of the volume is successfully changed, the scratch count for the library is updated with the number of scratch cartridges returned from the hardware.

If changing the use attribute of the volume causes the number of scratch volumes of a particular type in a library to fall below the scratch volume threshold established through the ISMF library management application, operation action message CBR3660A is issued requesting that the operator add the appropriate type of scratch cartridges to the library. If CUA processing causes the scratch count to exceed twice the scratch volume threshold for the scratch type being processed, operation action message CBR3660A is deleted if it is outstanding.

Changing to the Same Use Attribute

When the requested use attribute is the same as the existing use attribute – for example, the change is from PRIVATE to PRIVATE or from SCRATCH to SCRATCH – the tape volume record is updated with values specified on the CBRXLCS macro invocation, the installation exit, or both; however, a warning return code is returned. In both cases, if the volume resides in a tape library, a call is made to the library to change the category of the volume in the library manager inventory.

Return and Reason Codes for CBRXLCS Change Use Attribute

The return code is placed in register 15 and in the LCSPL in field LCSRCODE. The reason code is placed in register 0 and in the LCSPL in field LCSREAS.

Table 2 provides the reason codes associated with each of the return codes returned by change use attribute processing. See “CBRXLCS Return Codes” on page 139 for more information. Also, for more information concerning other return and reason codes not specific to change use attribute processing, refer to *z/OS DFSMSdfp Diagnosis Reference*.

Table 2. Change Use Attribute Return and Reason Codes

Return Code	Error Type	Reason Code	Meaning
0	Successful	0	Successful execution.
4	Warning	4	Requested change to scratch but volume was already scratch.
		5	Requested change to private but volume was already private.
		8	Scratch volume threshold processing did not successfully complete. Check the console log for further diagnostic information.
		131	Scratch volume threshold processing not performed because library was not operational.
		138	Library scratch count not updated in TCDB.
8	Invalid request	9	Required type parameter not specified.
		11	Invalid value specified for type.
		12	Required function parameter not specified.
		13	Invalid value specified for function.
		14	Required use parameter not specified.
		15	Invalid value specified for use.
		16	Required volume parameter not specified.

Table 2. Change Use Attribute Return and Reason Codes (continued)

Return Code	Error Type	Reason Code	Meaning
		17	Invalid volume serial specified.
		25	Invalid expiration date specified.
		26	Library in which volume resides not defined to specified storage group.
		28	Invalid write protect value specified.
		29	Invalid parameter address for LCSPL.
		30	LCSPL not aligned on fullword boundary.
		34	Invalid storage group name specified.
		38	Invalid compaction type specified in TDSI.
		39	Invalid special attribute specified in TDSI.
		40	Invalid combination of TDSI values specified.
		41	Ambiguous TDSI combination specified.
		42	Special attribute specified but not allowed on a CUA request.
		43	Invalid pointer to TDSI specified.
		54	Storage group not of type tape.
12	Failure	6	Request failed because CUA processing disabled for private to scratch requests.
		7	Installation exit vetoed the requested change.
		53	Library not defined to active configuration.
		58	Failure accessing volume record in TCDB.
		59	Failure accessing library record in TCDB.
		60	Failure accessing SMS storage group constructs.
		61	Device services failure.
		63	Volume record not found in TCDB.
		64	Library record for specified volume not found in TCDB.
		65	No library attached at last IPL.
		70	Volume not found in library manager inventory.
		82	Installation exit abended.
		83	Installation exit returned bad data.
		84	Abend occurred during LCS External Services processing.
		310	Media type or recording technology not supported at this software level.
16	Environment	2	OAM control blocks not available.
		80	LCS External Services unable to establish an ESTAE.
		81	LCS External Services unable to obtain storage for installation exit parameter list.

Entering Cartridges into a Manual Tape Library

Figure 7 on page 116 provides the CBRXLCS Assembler H macro syntax that is used to perform the manual cartridge entry function.

```

CBRLCS  TYPE=TAPE
        ,FUNC=MCE
        ,LIBNAME=library-name
        ,VOLLIST=volume-list-pointer
        [,EXITINFO=installation-exit-information]

```

Figure 7. CBRXLCS MCE Assembler H Macro Syntax

When a value or address is requested, the keyword operand may be:

- The name of the field that contains the requested value or address
- The number, in parentheses, of a general register in the range of 2 through 12 that contains the address of the field

Parameter Description

TYPE=TAPE

Specifies a request related to the TCDB.

FUNC=MCE

Specifies a request to enter a list of one or more volumes into a manual tape library.

LIBNAME=*library-name*

Specifies the name of a character variable (eight-byte length) that contains the fully-specified library name. The library name must be left justified in the field and padded on the right with blanks.

VOLLIST=*volume-list-pointer*

Specifies a variable that contains the address of the list of volumes to be entered into the manual tape library.

The volume list mapping, LCSV and LCSMLIST, is declared in mapping macro CBRLCSP. LCSV is the header for the volume list, and LCSMLIST maps the array of volumes and the associated information for each. Volume-list-pointer contains the address of the list header.

Each member of the volume list array contains the volume serial number, left-justified in a six-character field and padded on the right with blanks; a six-byte reserved area; a four-byte field for tape device selection information (TDSI); and two full words into which LCS External Services stores the return code and reason code for this volume.

Processing the Tape Device Selection Information (TDSI)

The tape device selection information for each volume is processed as follows:

- If a volume record exists for the volume to be entered into the manual tape library, all TDSI values are ignored and the values from the existing volume record are passed to the cartridge entry installation exit (CBRUXENT).
- If no volume record exists for the volume to be entered into the manual tape library, TDSI values are processed as follows:
 - Recording technology specified in TDSI is ignored. If the volume is MEDIA3 or MEDIA4 and the entry default data class is not defined for the library, by default, a recording technology of 128-track is passed to the exit. The installation exit may override that value. If the exit returns with the recording technology set to unknown, it will be automatically set to the default 128-track.
 - If the volume is MEDIA2, recording technology is set to 36-track and passed to the cartridge entry installation exit. If media type is MEDIA1 or unknown, recording technology is set to the value specified in default entry data class

and passed to the exit. The installation exit may either set recording technology if it was not specified in the default entry data class or it may override that value.

If the volume is MEDIA1 and private, and has no recording technology specification from default entry data class, recording technology is set to 36-track.

- Media type for the volume must be set before the volume can be entered into the manual tape library. Media type may be specified by any of the following:
 - Input TDSI—specified in field LCSMMED.
 - Default entry data class—this value is used only if no TDSI media type was specified.
 - Cartridge entry installation exit (CBRUXENT)—may provide the media type if it is not specified in TDSI or default entry data class, or may override the value specified. If the installation exit is invoked and returns an invalid media type, cartridge entry processing is discontinued.
- If media type is not available from any of the sources listed above, the volume is not entered into the MTL.
- Compaction type specified in TDSI is ignored, and the UNKNOWN value is passed to the installation exit. The exit may specify a value for compaction type.
 - Special attribute specified in TDSI is ignored and a value of NONE is passed to the installation exit. The exit may specify a value for special attribute.

EXITINFO=*installation-exit-information*

Specifies the name of a character variable (16-byte length) that contains a customer-specified free-form value that is passed to the cartridge entry installation exit (CBRUXENT).

The permanent OAM control block structure must be available in order for manual cartridge entry to be performed. This means that the OAM address space must have been started since the last IPL.

When manual cartridge entry is successful, the following processing occurs:

- The tape volume record is either created or updated in the TCDB.
- TDSI for the volume is returned in LCSMTDSI in structure LCSMLIST.
- The scratch volume counts in the library record in the TCDB are updated.
- Message CBR3610I is issued to inform the operator of the volumes which have been entered into the library.

If the cartridge entry installation exit (CBRUXENT) is disabled, cartridge entry processing is not performed. Unless the installation has indicated that the cartridge entry installation exit should not be called, it is invoked for every volume in the list.

Even though the manual tape library supports national characters (@ \$ and #) and special characters (, . / ' () * & + – and =), for coexistence, the volume serial number for each of the volumes entered into a manual tape library should meet the same character set defined for an ATLDs: upper case alphabetic or numerics. The volume serial may not contain any imbedded blanks.

The volume serial for each volume entered into a manual tape library may not be a duplicate of a known DASD volume, or a tape volume which resides in another tape library dataset server (according to the tape volume record in the TCDB).

If a volume record exists for a private volume and it contains a nonblank storage group name, the storage group name is validated. If the storage group is not “tape”, is not defined to the active SMS configuration, or does not contain the library specified for the MCE request, the request fails and the volume is not entered into the library.

If a volume record exists in the TCDB for an MCE volume and the volume record indicates that the volume already resides in the specified library the entry for this volume fails (duplicate assumed).

If an error is encountered while processing one of the volumes, the return and reason codes for that volume are stored in the fields LCSMRET and LCSMREAS in the volume list array, and processing continues for the rest of the volumes. If an error occurs which causes cartridge entry to be disabled or suspended, no more volumes are processed and error return and reason codes are set for the remaining volumes in the list.

If a volume record exists for the volume entered into the manual tape library, tape device selection information is processed as shown in Table 3.

Table 3. TDSI Processing for MCE—Volume Exists

TDSI Attribute	TDSI Input	Default Entry Data Class	Installation Exit	Volume Record
Recording technology	Ignored	Ignored	May override existing volume record	Updated only if installation exit makes change
Media type	Ignored	Ignored	Cannot override existing volume record	MCE fails with return code LCSFAIL(12) and reason code LCSFMUMT(321) if media type returned from installation exit does not match the media type defined on the volume record
Compaction	Ignored	Not applicable	May override existing volume record	Updated only if installation exit makes change
Special attribute	Ignored	Not applicable	May override existing volume record	Updated only if installation exit makes change

If no volume record exists for the volume entering the manual tape library, the tape device selection information is processed as shown in Table 4.

Table 4. TDSI Processing for MCE—No Volume Record Exists for Volume

TDSI Attribute	TDSI Input	Default Entry Data Class	Installation Exit	Volume Record
Recording technology	Ignored	May specify value	May specify value if not provided by default entry data class, or may override default entry data class.	Created as 36-track for MEDIA2, otherwise created with value specified by default entry data class or installation exit. However, if the volume is private and MEDIA1, no value is specified by default entry data class or the exit; set to 36-track. If the volume is MEDIA3 or MEDIA4 and no value is specified, set to 128-track.

Table 4. TDSI Processing for MCE—No Volume Record Exists for Volume (continued)

TDSI Attribute	TDSI Input	Default Entry Data Class	Installation Exit	Volume Record
Media type	May be specified	Used if no TDSI value specified	May specify value if not provided in TDSI or default entry data class, or may override value from either source.	Created with value specified in TDSI or default entry data class or installation exit.
Compaction	Ignored	Not applicable	May specify value.	Created with value specified by installation exit. If no value specified, set to UNKNOWN.
Special attribute	Ignored	Not applicable	May specify value.	Created with value specified by installation exit. If no value specified, set to NONE.

Return and Reason Codes for CBRXLCS Manual Cartridge Entry

The return code reflecting the most severe error is placed in register 15 and in the LCSPL in field LCSRCODE. The return code for each volume is returned in the field LCSMRET in the volume list array.

The reason code associated with the most severe return code is placed in register 0 and in the LCSPL in field LCSREAS. The reason code for each volume is returned in the field LCSMREAS in the volume list array.

Table 5 provides the reason codes associated with each of the return codes returned by manual cartridge entry processing. For more information, see “CBRXLCS Return Codes” on page 139. Also, for more information concerning other return and reason codes not specific to manual cartridge entry processing, see *z/OS DFSMSdfp Diagnosis Reference*.

Table 5. Manual Cartridge Entry Return and Reason Codes

Return Code	Error Type	Reason Code	Meaning
0	Successful	0	Successful execution.
4	Warning	8	Scratch volume threshold message processing did not successfully complete. Check the console log for further diagnostic information.
		138	The library scratch volume count is not updated in TCDB.
8	Invalid request	9	Required type parameter not specified.
		11	Invalid value specified for type.
		12	Required function parameter not specified.
		13	Invalid value specified for function.
		17	Invalid volume serial number specified.
		20	Required volume list not specified.
		21	Invalid header value specified in volume list.
		23	Required library name parameter not specified.
		26	MCE library is not defined to storage group on tape volume record.
		27	Invalid library name specified.
		29	Invalid parameter address specified for LCSPL or VOLLIST.

Table 5. Manual Cartridge Entry Return and Reason Codes (continued)

Return Code	Error Type	Reason Code	Meaning
		30	LCSPL or VOLLIST not aligned on fullword boundary.
		34	Invalid storage group name.
		35	Required media type not specified from any source.
		37	Invalid media type specified in TDSI
		53	Library not defined to active configuration.
		54	Storage group specified on volume record is type tape.
		92	Library specified is not an MTL.
		94	Specified volume already resides in another tape library.
		97	Volume of same name is known DASD volume.
		130	Specified volume already resides in this tape library
12	Failure	60	Failure accessing SMS storage group constructs.
		75	UCB scan failure when attempting to determine volume serial uniqueness.
		78	Catalog failure when attempting to retrieve the volume record.
		79	Catalog failure when attempting to update the volume record.
		84	Abend occurred during LCS external services processing.
		95	Installation exit vetoed the entry of the volume into the library.
		96	Installation exit said to ignore the volume.
		310	Media type or recording technology not supported at this software level.
		321	The media type returned from the Installation Exit does not match the existing media type defined for the volume record in TCDB.
16	Environment	2	OAM control block structure not available.
		80	LCS External Services unable to establish an ESTAE.
		90	Cartridge entry disabled due to an error in the installation exit.
		91	Cartridge entry temporarily suspended.

Ejecting a Cartridge

Figure 8 provides the CBRXLCS Assembler H macro syntax that is used to perform the cartridge eject function.

```
CBRXLCS  TYPE=TAPE
          ,FUNC=EJECT
          ,VOLUME=volume-serial-number
          [,EJECTOPT={KEEP | PURGE}]
          [,BULKEJCT={YES | NO}]
          [,EXITINFO=installation-exit-information]
          [,USERID=userid]
```

Figure 8. CBRXLCS EJECT Assembler H Macro Syntax

When a value is requested, the keyword operand may be:

- The name of the field that contains the requested value
- The number, in parentheses, of a general register in the range of 2 through 12 that contains the address of the field

Parameter Description

TYPE=TAPE

Specifies a request related to the TCDB.

FUNC=EJECT

Specifies a request to eject one volume from a tape library.

VOLUME=*volume-serial-number*

Specifies the name of a character variable (six-byte length) that contains the volume serial number of the volume to be ejected. The volume serial number must be left justified in the field and padded on the right with blanks.

EJECTOPT=KEEP

Specifies that the TCDB record for the tape volume being ejected should *not* be deleted after the eject completes successfully.

EJECTOPT=PURGE

Specifies that the TCDB record for the tape volume being ejected should be deleted after the eject completes successfully.

If the EJECTOPT parameter is specified on the macro invocation, the cartridge eject installation exit may override it.

If the EJECTOPT parameter value is not specified on the macro invocation, the eject default is used. (This default is established when the library is defined by the storage administrator using the ISMF library define panel.) However, the cartridge eject installation exit (CBRUXEJC) may ultimately override the value.

BULKEJCT=YES

Specifies that the ejected cartridge be placed in the high-capacity output station of an ATLDS. If this parameter is not specified or the high-capacity output station is not configured, the cartridge is placed in the convenience output station. If a convenience station is not installed in a 3494, the cartridge is placed in the single cell output area.

BULKEJCT=NO

Specifies that the cartridge be placed in the convenience output station of an ATLDS. This is the default.

Note: For a manual tape library, BULKEJCT is ignored.

EXITINFO=*installation-exit-information*

Specifies the name of a character variable (16-byte length) that contains a customer specified free-form value that is passed to the cartridge eject installation exit (CBRUXEJC).

USERID=*userid*

Specifies the name of a character variable (8-byte length) that contains a TSO user ID. The field must be left-justified and padded on the right with blanks.

After the eject request is successfully scheduled (a zero return and reason code from the CBRXLCS macro invocation), eject completion or failure messages are sent to this user ID through the system services SEND interface.

Successful EJECT Processing

When the EJECT completes successfully, the following processing occurs:

- The requested volume is ejected from the library.
For an ATLDS, the volume is placed in an output station of the library. The volume record is deleted from the library manager inventory. For an MTL volume, it is the responsibility of the operator to move the logically ejected volume to an appropriate shelf location. An eject completion message is sent to the optional TSO user ID specified on the macro invocation and to an MVS console.
- The TCDB record for the volume is either kept or purged as stipulated by one of the following:
 - The installation exit
 - The parameter specified on the macro invocation
 - The default disposition defined for all volumes in the library
- If the TCDB record is kept, it is updated to note that the volume is no longer in the library.
- When the EJECT of a volume is not successfully scheduled through the CBRXLCS macro invocation, the error messages are sent to the system log to provide an audit trail.

Return and Reason Codes for CBRXLCS Eject

The return code is placed in register 15 and in the LCSPL in field LCSRCODE. The reason code is placed in register 0 and in the LCSPL in field LCSREAS.

Note: A zero return and reason code from the CBRXLCS EJECT function do not indicate that the cartridge has been ejected; however, they do indicate that the CBRXLCS EJECT function was successful in scheduling the request into the OAM address space for later processing. When the eject request is later processed, the OAM address space relays the success or failure of the eject through the issuance of messages.

Table 6 provides the reason codes associated with each of the return codes returned by cartridge eject processing. For more information, see “CBRXLCS Return Codes” on page 139. Also, for more information concerning other return and reason codes not specific to cartridge eject processing, refer to *z/OS DFSMSdfp Diagnosis Reference*.

Table 6. Cartridge Eject Return and Reason Codes

Return Code	Error Type	Reason Code	Meaning
0	Successful	0	Successfully scheduled.
4	Warning		No warnings are returned by EJECT.
8	Invalid request	9	Required type parameter not specified.
		11	Invalid value specified for type.
		12	Required function parameter not specified.
		13	Invalid value specified for function.
		16	Required volume parameter not specified.
		17	Invalid volume serial specified.
		29	Invalid parameter address specified for LCSPL.
		30	LCSPL not aligned on fullword boundary.
		201	Volume already ejected (not in library).
		202	Invalid value specified for eject option.
		203	Invalid value specified for bulk eject.
		204	The userid specified contains all binary zeroes or blanks.
12	Failure	45	Library name as defined in volume record is unknown in SMS configuration.
		84	Abend occurred during LCS External Services processing.
		300	OAM abend during eject request processing.
		302	Eject request already pending for volume.
		303	Unable to make user address space nonswappable.
		304	TCDB access error in OAM.
		305	TCDB authorization error in OAM.
		306	OAM internal error.
		307	Volser not in TCDB.
		310	Media type or recording technology not supported at this software level.
16	Environment	2	OAM control block structure not available.
		80	LCS External Services unable to establish an ESTAE.
		400	OAM initialized with null configuration (no libraries).
		401	Library not accessible: offline, pending offline, or not operational.
		402	Vision system inoperative.
		403	Eject processing has been disabled because an error in the eject installation exit has been detected.
		404	OAM address space not available.

Querying the Residence of a Volume

Figure 9 provides the CBRXLCS Assembler H macro syntax that is used to perform the query volume residence function:

```
CBRXLCS  TYPE=TAPE
          ,FUNC=QVR
          ,VOLUME=volume-serial-number
          [,LIBNAME={library-name}]
          [,TCDBCHK={YES | NO}]
          [,VOLINFO={YES | NO}]
          [,SUBPOOL={spno}]
```

Figure 9. CBRXLCS QVR Assembler H Macro Syntax

When a value is requested, the keyword operand may be:

- The name of the field that contains the requested value
- The number, in parentheses, of a general register in the range of 2 through 12 that contains the address of the field

Parameter Description

TYPE=TAPE

Specifies a request related to the TCDB.

FUNC=QVR

Specifies a request to return the name and type of library in which the given volume is resident.

VOLUME=*volume-serial-number*

Specifies the name of a character variable (six-byte length) that contains the volume serial number of the volume whose residence is to be determined. The volume serial number must be left justified in the field and padded on the right with blanks.

LIBNAME=*library-name*

Specifies the name of a character variable (eight-byte length), that contains the name of the library where the volume is expected to reside. The library name must be left justified in the field and padded on the right with blanks.

If the volume has no volume record in the TCDB, QVR checks for the volume in the specified library. If the volume has a record in the TCDB, QVR validates that the specified library and the library indicated on the volume record match. It also checks to see the whether the volume physically resides in the library specified by this parameter.

Note: A library name of SHELF is considered invalid. The SHELF library name is reserved for shelf-resident volumes.

TDBCHK=YES | NO

If this optional parameter is omitted or YES is specified, the QVR function attempts to retrieve the specified volume's TCDB record. TCDBCHK=YES is the default.

If this optional parameter is specified and NO is specified, the QVR function does not retrieve the specified volume's TCDB record from the catalog and only makes the call to the library manager of the specified library. With VOLINFO=YES specified, the TVI will contain only information from the library manager inventory of the library specified.

If LIBNAME is not specified, this keyword is ignored.

VOLINFO=YES | NO

Specification of this keyword requests that QVR return the information available about the volume from both the volume record in the TCDB and the library manager inventory.

SUBPOOL=spno

Specifies the name of a bit variable (1-byte length) that contains the number of the subpool from which storage for the volume information is obtained. If no subpool is specified, storage is obtained from subpool 0 in the key of the caller. This keyword is only used when VOLINFO=YES is specified, and is otherwise ignored.

Successful Query Volume Residence Processing

When the query volume residence function is successful and the volume resides in a library, the following fields in the LCSPL (Figure 15 on page 141) are updated:

- The name of library in which the volume resides is returned in field LCSLIBNM. This may be the library name found in the volume record or the library name specified in the QVR invocation. TVILIBNM contains the library name stored in the TCDB for comparison.
- If the library is an ATLDS, the flag LCSATL is turned on.
- If the library is an MTL, the flag LCSMTL is turned on.
- If a console name has been specified for the library, it is returned in LCSCONS. Otherwise, LCSCONS is set to blanks.
- If VOLINFO=YES was specified, LCSTVI@ contains the address of the requested volume information. The information is mapped by macro CBRTVI (see Figure 17 on page 154 for detail).

Note: The caller must free the storage obtained for the tape volume information.

Return and Reason Codes for CBRXLCS Query Volume Residence

The return code is placed in register 15 and in the LCSPL in field LCSRCODE. The reason code is placed in register 0 and in the LCSPL in field LCSREAS.

Table 7 on page 126 provides the reason codes associated with each of the return codes returned by query volume residence function. For more information, see “CBRXLCS Return Codes” on page 139. Also, for more information concerning other return and reason codes not specific to the query volume residence function, refer to *z/OS DFSMSdfp Diagnosis Reference*.

Table 7. Query Volume Residence Return and Reason Codes

Return Code	Error Type	Reason Code	Meaning
0	Successful	0	<p>Successful execution.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If volume resides in an MTL, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – if VOLINFO=YES was specified, TVI contains the volume TCDB record information. – if LIBNAME was specified, the library name specified matches the volume record library name. • If the volume resides in an ATL, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – if VOLINFO=YES was specified, TVI contains TCDB and library manager information. – if LIBNAME was specified, the specified library name and the volume record library name match, and the library manager information indicates that the volume resides in the specified library. – if LIBNAME,TCDBCHK=NO and VOLINFO=YES was specified, the TVI contains library manager information only. – if neither VOLINFO or LIBNAME was specified, the volume record is found in the TCDB and the TCDB record indicates that the volume is library-resident; no library manager validation is performed.
4	Warning	52	Volume is shelf-resident. If VOLINFO=YES was specified, TVI contains only TCDB information. LIBNAME was not specified.
		61	<p>Unable to access library manager. If VOLINFO=YES, TVI contains only TCDB information.</p> <p>If LIBNAME was specified, the library name specified and the volume record library name matched.</p>
		63	<p>Volume record for specified volume not found in TCDB. If VOLINFO=YES was specified, no volume information is returned.</p> <p>If LIBNAME was specified and the library specified was an MTL, no further validation is performed.</p>
		70	<p>Volume not found in library manager inventory. If VOLINFO=YES was specified, TVI contains only TCDB information.</p> <p>If LIBNAME was specified, the library name specified and the volume record library name matched.</p>
		134	<p>No volume record was found in the TCDB; however, LIBNAME was specified and the volume resides in the specified library.</p> <p>If VOLINFO=YES was specified, TVI contains only library manager information.</p>
		135	<p>Volume record was found in the TCDB. LIBNAME was specified and the volume was found in the library specified. However, the volume record library name and the specified library name did not match.</p> <p>If VOLINFO=YES was specified, TVI contains the volume TCDB information and the library manager information from the library specified for LIBNAME.</p>

Table 7. Query Volume Residence Return and Reason Codes (continued)

Return Code	Error Type	Reason Code	Meaning
		136	Volume record was found in the TCDB. LIBNAME was specified and the volume was not found in the library specified. The volume record library name and the specified library name did not match. If VOLINFO=YES was specified, TVI contains only the volume TCDB information.
		137	Volume record was found in the TCDB. LIBNAME was specified. The volume record library name and the specified library name did not match. Unable to access the library manager of the specified library. If VOLINFO=YES was specified, TVI contains only the volume TCDB information.
		139	Volume record was found in the TCDB. LIBNAME was specified and it did not match the volume record library name. If the library specified was an MTL, no further validation is performed. If VOLINFO=YES was specified, TVI contains the volume record TCDB information.
8	Invalid request	9	Required type parameter not specified.
		11	Invalid value specified for type.
		12	Required function parameter not specified.
		13	Invalid value specified for function.
		16	Required volume parameter not specified.
		17	Invalid volume serial specified.
		27	Invalid library name specified. SHELF is a reserved name and not allowed for library name specification.
		29	Invalid address specified for LCSPL.
		30	LCSPL not aligned on fullword boundary.
		216	TCDBCHK=NO and LIBNAME was specified. The library specified is an MTL, no further validation is performed. If VOLINFO=YES was specified, no TVI information is returned.
12	Failure	45	Library name as defined in volume record is unknown in the SMS configuration.
		58	Failure accessing volume record in TCDB.
		59	Failure accessing library record in TCDB. If LIBNAME was specified, there was a failure accessing the library record in TCDB for the specified library name. If LIBNAME was not specified, the failure was in accessing the library record in TCDB for the library name found in the volume record.
		64	Library record not found for specified library.
		65	Library logical type not defined. If LIBNAME is not specified, library logical type is not defined for the library name found in the volume record. If LIBNAME is specified, library logical type is not defined for the library name specified.
		84	Abend occurred during LCS External Services processing.

Table 7. Query Volume Residence Return and Reason Codes (continued)

Return Code	Error Type	Reason Code	Meaning
		310	Media type or recording technology not supported at this software level.
		319	No volume record found in the TCDB. LIBNAME was specified. The volume was not in the library specified. If VOLINFO=YES was specified, no TVI information is returned.
		320	No volume record found in the TCDB. LIBNAME was specified. Unable to access library manager for the library specified. If VOLINFO=YES was specified, no TVI information is returned.
		322	Command rejected by the library.
16	Environment	80	LCS External Services unable to establish an ESTAE.

Testing the Eligibility of a Volume

Figure 10 provides the CBRXLCS Assembler H macro syntax that is used to perform the test volume eligibility function.

```
CBRXLCS  TYPE=TAPE
          ,FUNC=TVE
          ,VOLUME=volume-serial-number
          ,UCBPTR=UCB-address
```

Figure 10. CBRXLCS TVE Assembler H Macro Syntax

When an address is requested, the keyword operand may be:

- The name of the field that contains the requested address
- The number, in parentheses, of a general register in the range of 2 through 12 that contains the requested address

Parameter Description

TYPE=TAPE

Specifies a request related to the TCDB.

FUNC=TVE

Specifies a request to check that a volume can be mounted on a specified device.

VOLUME=*volume-serial-number*

Specifies the name of a character variable (six-byte length) that contains the volume serial number of the volume to be tested for mount eligibility. The volume serial number must be left justified in the field and padded on the right with blanks.

UCBPTR=*UCB-address*

Specifies the name of a pointer variable that contains the address of the UCB for the device to be checked for mount capability.

Successful Test Volume Eligibility Processing

The caller of the test volume eligibility function must PIN the UCB before passing UCBPTR. For a complete description of UCB pinning, refer to *z/OS HCD Planning*.

When the TVE function returns return code 0, the volume specified with the VOLUME keyword is eligible to be mounted on the drive associated with the MVS Unit Control Block specified with the UCBPTR keyword for one of the following reasons:

- Both the volume and the device are defined to the same tape library.
- Neither the volume nor the device are defined to a tape library.

When the TVE function returns return code 4, the request has been processed, but the volume is ineligible to be mounted on the specified drive for one of the following reasons:

- The use attribute of the volume is scratch.
- The volume is not library resident but the device is defined to a tape library.
- The volume is library resident but the device is not defined to the same tape library.

Return Codes for CBRXLCS Test Volume Eligibility

The return code is placed in register 15 and in the LCSPL in field LCSRCODE. The reason code is placed in register 0 and in the LCSPL in field LCSREAS.

Table 8 represents the reason codes associated with each of the return codes returned by the test volume eligibility function. See “CBRXLCS Return Codes” on page 139 for more information.

Table 8. Test Volume Eligibility Return and Reason Codes

Return Code	Error Type	Reason Code	Meaning
0	Successful	0	The volume is eligible to be mounted on the device.
4		51	Volume is ineligible because its use attribute is scratch; for example, this is a specific request for a scratch volume.
		52	Volume is ineligible because it is not library resident but the device is defined to a tape library.
		55	Volume is ineligible because it is library resident but the device is not defined to the same tape library.
8	Invalid request	9	Required type parameter not specified.
		11	Invalid value specified for type.
		12	Required function parameter not specified.
		13	Invalid value specified for function.
		16	Required volume parameter not specified.
		17	Invalid volume serial specified.
		18	Required UCB address not specified.
		19	Invalid address specified for UCB.
		29	Invalid parameter address specified for LCSPL.
		30	LCSPL not aligned on fullword boundary.
12	Failure	58	Failure accessing the volume record in TCDB.
		59	Failure accessing library record in TCDB.
		64	Unable to determine in which library the volume resides.
		84	Abend occurred during LCS external services processing.
		310	Media type or recording technology not supported at this software level.

Table 8. Test Volume Eligibility Return and Reason Codes (continued)

Return Code	Error Type	Reason Code	Meaning
16	Environment	80	LCS external services unable to establish ESTAE.

Exporting Logical Volumes from a VTS

Figure 11 provides the CBRXLCS Assembler H macro syntax that is used to perform the logical volume export function.

```
CBRXLCS TYPE=TAPE
        ,FUNC=EXPORT
        ,VOLUME=volume-serial-number
        [,CANCEL={YES | NO}]
```

Figure 11. CBRXLCS EXPORT Assembler H Macro Syntax

Required Parameter Description

TYPE=TAPE

Specifies a request related to the TCDB.

FUNC=EXPORT

Specifies a request to initiate (or cancel) the export of logical volume from a library.

VOLUME=*volume-serial-number*

Specifies the name of a character variable (six-byte length) that contains the logical volume serial number of the export list volume to be used for this export operation.

Optional Parameter Description

CANCEL=YES | NO

CANCEL=YES specifies that the export request currently executing in the library where the specified volume resides be canceled.

CANCEL=NO, or no specification for this optional parameter, indicates that the export request of the logical volume from a library be processed.

Notes on Export Processing

The export function requires that OAM is active, that the library for the export operation is online and operational, and that the cartridge eject installation exit (CBRUXEJC) is not disabled. This environment is necessary for the exported logical volumes to go through completion processing and for the stacked volumes containing the logical volumes to be ejected. Also, only one export operation can be active in a library (VTS) at a time, and an export and import operation are not allowed to execute simultaneously in the same library (VTS).

Return Codes for CBRXLCS EXPORT

The return code is placed in register 15 and in the LCSPL in field LCSRCODE. The reason code is placed in register 0 and in the LCSPL in field LCSREAS.

Table 9 represents the reason codes associated with each of the return codes returned by the export function. These reason codes reflect the scheduling of the export function to the library, not the actual results of the export function. See “CBRXLCS Return Codes” on page 139 for more information.

Table 9. EXPORT Return and Reason Codes

Return Code	Error Type	Reason Code	Meaning
0	Successful	0	Successfully scheduled.
8	Invalid request	9	Required type parameter not specified.
		11	Invalid value specified for type.
		12	Required function parameter not specified.
		13	Invalid value specified for function.
		16	Required volume parameter not specified.
		17	Invalid volume serial specified.
		29	Invalid address specified for LCSPL.
		30	LCSPL not aligned on fullword boundary.
12	Failure	45	Library name as defined in volume record not found in TCDB.
		52	Volume is not library resident.
		58	Failure accessing volume record in TCDB.
		59	Failure accessing library record in TCDB.
		61	Device services failure.
		63	Volume record not found in TCDB.
		70	Volume does not exist in library manager inventory.
		84	Abend occurred during LCS external services processing.
		310	Media type or recording technology not supported at this software level.
		312	Function not compatible with the library.
		313	Volume is currently in use.
		314	Import/Export already in progress or host processing not complete.
		315	Not enough physical drives available in VTS.
		316	Export operation not in progress.
		317	No scratch stacked volume available.
		322	Command rejected by the library.
16	Environment	2	OAM control block structure not available.
		80	LCS external services unable to establish ESTAE.
		93	Library is offline, pending offline, or not operational.
		403	Eject processing has been disabled because an error in the eject installation exit has been detected.
		404	OAM address space not available.

Importing Logical Volumes into a VTS

Figure 12 on page 132 provides the CBRXLCS Assembler H macro syntax that is used to perform the logical volume import function.

```

CBRLCS  TYPE=TAPE
        ,FUNC=IMPORT
        ,VOLUME=volume-serial-number
        [,CANCEL={YES | NO}]

```

Figure 12. CBRXLCS IMPORT Assembler H Macro Syntax

Required Parameter Description

TYPE=TAPE

Specifies a request related to the TCDB.

FUNC=IMPORT

Specifies a request to initiate (or cancel) the import of a logical volume into a VTS.

VOLUME=*volume-serial-number*

Specifies the name of a character variable (six-byte length) that contains the logical volume serial number of the import list volume to be used for this import operation.

Optional Parameter Description

CANCEL=YES | NO

CANCEL=YES specifies that the import request currently executing in the library where the specified volume resides be canceled.

CANCEL=NO, or no specification for this optional parameter, indicates that the import request of the logical volume into a VTS be processed.

Notes on Import Processing

The import function requires that OAM is active, that the library for the import operation is online and operational, and that the cartridge entry installation exit (CBRUXENT) is not disabled. This environment is necessary for the imported logical volumes to go through entry processing. An import operation is more restrictive than an export operation in that only one import operation is allowed per physical library, while one export operation is allowed one per logical library (VTS). Also, an import and export operation are not allowed to execute simultaneously in the same library (VTS).

Return Codes for CBRXLCS IMPORT

The return code is placed in register 15 and in the LCSPL in field LCSRCODE. The reason code is placed in register 0 and in the LCSPL in field LCSREAS.

Table 10 represents the reason codes associated with each of the return codes returned by the import function. These reason codes reflect the scheduling (or canceling) of the import function, not the actual results of the import function. See "CBRXLCS Return Codes" on page 139 for more information.

Table 10. IMPORT Return and Reason Codes

Return Code	Error Type	Reason Code	Meaning
0	Successful	0	Successfully scheduled.
8	Invalid request	9	Required type parameter not specified.

Table 10. *IMPORT Return and Reason Codes (continued)*

Return Code	Error Type	Reason Code	Meaning
		11	Invalid value specified for type.
		12	Required function parameter not specified.
		13	Invalid value specified for function.
		16	Required volume parameter not specified.
		17	Invalid volume serial specified.
		29	Invalid address specified for LCSPL.
		30	LCSPL not aligned on fullword boundary.
12	Failure	45	Library name as defined in volume record not found in TCDB.
		52	Volume is not library resident.
		58	Failure accessing volume record in TCDB.
		59	Failure accessing library record in TCDB.
		61	Device services failure.
		63	Volume record not found in TCDB.
		70	Volume does not exist in library manager inventory.
		84	Abend occurred during LCS external services processing.
		310	Media type or recording technology not supported at this software level.
		312	Function not compatible with the library.
		313	Volume is currently in use.
		314	Import/Export already in progress or host processing not complete.
		315	Not enough physical drives available in VTS.
		316	Import operation not in progress.
		317	No volumes in the import category or no scratch stacked volumes available.
		318	Maximum number of logical volumes defined to library.
		322	Command rejected by the library.
16	Environment	2	OAM control block structure not available.
		80	LCS external services unable to establish ESTAE.
		93	Library is offline, pending offline or not operational.
		404	OAM address space not available.

Changing Library Operating Modes (Peer-to-Peer VTS Mode Control)

The Peer-to-Peer VTS mode control (PTPMC) function allows an installation or application, such as Geographically Dispersed Parallel Sysplex (GDPS), to change current operating modes of the library. Upon installation of the library, the customer engineer must determine the default mode settings. (See “Geographically Dispersed Parallel Sysplex Support for Peer-to-Peer VTS” on page 18 for more information on GDPS.)

Figure 13 on page 134 provides the CBRXLCS Assembler H macro syntax that is used to perform the PTPMC function.

```

CBRXLCS  TYPE=TAPE
          ,FUNC=PTPMC
          ,LIBNAME=library-name
          [,IOLIB={PRIMARY | PREFERRED | BALANCED | DEFAULT}]
          [,COPYMODE={IMMEDIATE | DEFERRED | DEFAULT}]
          [,DEFVALUE=deferred-priority-threshold]
          [,COPYOPER={ENABLE | DISABLE}]
          [,ACCESS=RWDISCON]

```

Figure 13. Peer-to-Peer VTS Mode Control (PTPMC) Assembler H Macro Syntax

When a value is requested, the keyword operand may be one of the following:

- The name of the field that contains the requested value
- The number, in parentheses, of a general register in the range of 2–12 that contains the address of the field

Required Parameter Description

TYPE=TAPE

Specifies a request related to the TCDB.

FUNC=PTPMC

Specifies a request to change current mode settings of the Peer-to-Peer VTS library.

LIBNAME=*library-name*

Specifies the name of a character variable (eight-byte length) that contains the fully-specified library name. The library name must be left justified in the field and padded on the right with blanks. Unless explicitly specified with the parameter, the library name specified can be either a distributed library or a composite library.

Optional Parameter Description

At least one of the following optional keywords must be specified with the function PTPMC:

- ACCESS
- COPYMODE
- COPYOPER
- IOLIB

If an optional keyword is not specified, the current setting for that option is retained. The operational modes specified are applied to all IBM TotalStorage Virtual Tape Controllers (AX0).

IOLIB=PRIMARY

Specifies a request to set the distributed library that is to be selected for all host I/O operations; this makes the selected library the master library. During mount processing, if the primary VTS is not available, the mount request is failed. If the VTS does not have a valid version of the volume, and a valid version is available on another VTS, a copy operation is performed as part of the mount process. If a valid version cannot be copied, the mount is failed. If the specified VTS does not have the needed volume in cache, and it is in cache in another VTS, a copy operation is also performed. If the needed volume is not in cache in any available VTS, a recall is performed on the specified VTS. The library specified for **LIBNAME** must be a distributed library.

Note: If you are setting **IOLIB=PRIMARY** and the specified distributed library is not currently the master library, the completion of this request can take up to 20 minutes.

IOLIB=PREFERRED

Specifies a request to set the preferred distributed library for host I/O operations. The preferencing is honored as long as the VTS library specified is available and has a valid version of the volume in its cache, and as long as another available VTS does not have the volume in its cache. The library specified for **LIBNAME** must be a distributed library.

IOLIB=BALANCED

Specifies a request to let the library balance the workload across all the VTS libraries in the Peer-to-Peer VTS configuration. The balance of the workload is the primary criterion for selection of the VTS to perform host I/O operations.

IOLIB=DEFAULT

Specifies a request to use the customer engineer's default I/O selection setting on the AX0s for host I/O operations.

COPYMODE=IMMEDIATE

Specifies a request to set the copy mode to **IMMEDIATE**. With this setting, a copy of the data is made upon receiving the host rewind/unload (RUN) command. The completion of the rewind/unload (RUN) command is held until the copy has been made.

COPYMODE=DEFERRED

Specifies a request to set the copy mode to **DEFERRED**. With this setting, upon receiving the host rewind/unload (RUN) command, the copying of the data is queued.

COPYMODE=DEFAULT

Specifies a request to use the customer engineer's copy mode setting and the customer engineer's deferred mode priority threshold value on the AX0s.

DEFVALUE=deferred-priority-threshold

Specifies the name of a bit variable (1-byte length) that contains the number of hours between 0 and 255 for the deferred copy mode priority threshold value. If a copy operation has been queued longer than the number of hours specified by the deferred copy mode priority threshold value, when it is selected for processing, it is given a higher I/O priority than host I/O operations. This specified parameter value affects copy operations that are initiated after the successful completion of this command.

This parameter is only applicable with the **COPYMODE=DEFERRED** specification and is ignored with any other **FUNC=PTPMC** specification. If **COPYMODE=DEFERRED** is specified without this parameter, the current deferred mode priority threshold value is retained.

COPYOPER=ENABLE

Specifies a request to enable copy operations that have been previously disabled.

COPYOPER=DISABLE

Specifies a request to disable copy operations. Copies currently in progress are completed. Subsequent copies are queued to be performed later when copy operations are enabled again.

ACCESS=RWDISCON

Specifies a request to enable the access mode of Read/Write Disconnected, a special mode that allows controlled access to data when one or more elements

of a PTP VTS become unavailable and prevent normal operations. The Read/Write Disconnected mode allows logical volumes to be read, modified, or rewritten, unless the volumes are known to be invalid. This mode forces the available VTS to become the master; it should only be set for one VTS. This mode is no longer in effect when communication with both VTSs has been established and token updates have been completed.

The library specified for **LIBNAME** must be a distributed library. **IOLIB**, **COPYMODE**, and **COPYOPER** specifications are ignored at the library when the **ACCESS** keyword is specified.

Note: Check with your hardware support center for the availability of the Read/Write Disconnected option through this interface. If the installed microcode does not support this option, it will be ignored.

Return Codes for CBRXLCS PTPMC

Table 11 represents the reason codes associated with each of the return codes returned by the function PTPMC.

For field LCSRCODE, the return code is placed in register 15 and in the LCSPL. For field LCSREAS, the return code is placed in register 0 and in the LCSPL.

Table 11. PTPMC Return and Reason Codes

Return Code	Error Type	Reason Code	Meaning
0	Successful	0	Successful.
4	Warning		No warnings returned by PTPMC.
8	Invalid request	9	Required type parameter not specified.
		11	Invalid value specified for type.
		12	Required function parameter not specified.
		13	Invalid value specified for function.
		23	Required library name parameter not specified.
		27	Invalid library name.
		29	Invalid parameter address specified for LCSPL.
		30	LCSPL not aligned on fullword boundary.
		217	At least one optional keyword must be specified with function.
12	Failure	59	Failure accessing library record in TCDB.
		61	Device services failure.
		64	Library record not found in TCDB for requested library.
		84	Abend occurred during LCS external services processing.
		312	Function not compatible with the library.
		322	Command rejected by the library.
16	Environment	80	LCS external services unable to establish ESTAE.

For additional information on using the CBRXLCS macro, refer to “CBRXLCS Assembler Macro Usage” on page 139.

Obtaining Operational Mode Settings (Peer-to-Peer VTS Data)

The Peer-to-Peer VTS data (PTPDATA) function allows an installation or application, such as Geographically Dispersed Parallel Sysplex (GDPS), to obtain operational mode settings and device-related information from the PTP VTS library. (See “Geographically Dispersed Parallel Sysplex Support for Peer-to-Peer VTS” on page 18 for more information on GDPS.)

Figure 14 provides the CBRXLCS Assembler H macro syntax that is used to perform the PTPDATA function.

```
CBRXLCS  TYPE=TAPE
          ,FUNC=PTPDATA
          ,LIBNAME=library-name
          ,DATATYPE={MODE | DEVICE}
          [,SUBPOOL=subpool-number]
          [,LOC={BELOW | ANY}]
```

Figure 14. Peer-to-Peer VTS Data (PTPDATA) Assembler H Macro Syntax

When a value is requested, the keyword operand may be one of the following:

- The name of the field that contains the requested value
- The number, in parentheses, of a general register in the range of 2–12 that contains the address of the field

Required Parameter Description

TYPE=TAPE

Specifies a request related to the TCDB.

FUNC=PTPDATA

Specifies a request for Peer-to-Peer VTS library information.

LIBNAME=*library-name*

Specifies the name of a character variable (eight-byte length) that contains the fully-specified library name. The library name must be left justified in the field and padded on the right with blanks. The library name specified must be a composite Peer-to-Peer library.

DATATYPE=MODE

Specifies a request for Peer-to-Peer VTS library operating mode information. The information is returned in mapping macro CBRTDI pointed to by LCSTDI@ in the LCSPL output parameter of the CBRLCSPL mapping macro.

DATATYPE=DEVICE

Specifies a request for Peer-to-Peer VTS library device information. The information is returned in mapping macro CBRTDI pointed to by LCSTDI@ in the LCSPL output parameter of the CBRLCSPL mapping macro.

Optional Parameter Description

SUBPOOL=*subpool-number*

Specifies the name of a bit variable (1-byte length) that contains the number of the subpool from which storage for the requested information is obtained. If no subpool is specified, storage is obtained from subpool 0 in the key of the caller.

LOC=BELOW

Specifies that the storage for the requested information is to be obtained below the 16-megabyte line.

LOC=ANY

Specifies that the storage for the requested information may be obtained above the 16-megabyte line. **ANY** is the default value if the **LOC** keyword is omitted.

Notes:

1. The VTS I/O distributed libraries are identified as 1 or 2 in the returned CBRTDI data; however, the TotalStorage Peer-to-Peer VTS Specialist identifies the distributed libraries as 0 and 1. Use the library name or sequence number, or both, that are displayed in the TotalStorage Peer-to-Peer VTS Specialist to ensure that the correct distributed library is being referenced.
2. The caller must free the storage obtained for the returned data information, pointed to by LCSTDI@, for the length specified in the TDILENG field in the CBRTDI mapping macro.

Return Codes for CBRXLCS PTPMC

Table 12 represents the reason codes that are associated with each of the return codes returned by the function PTPDATA.

For field LCSRCODE, the return code is placed in register 15 and in the LCSPL.
For field LCSREAS, the return code is placed in register 0 and in the LCSPL.

Table 12. PTPDATA Return and Reason Codes

Return Code	Error Type	Reason Code	Meaning
0	Successful	0	Successful.
4	Warning		No warnings returned by PTPDATA.
8	Invalid request	9	Required type parameter not specified.
		11	Invalid value specified for type.
		12	Required function parameter not specified.
		13	Invalid value specified for function.
		23	Required library name parameter not specified.
		27	Invalid library name.
		29	Invalid parameter address specified for LCSPL.
		30	LCSPL not aligned on fullword boundary.
		218	Required DATATYPE keyword not specified.
12	Failure	59	Failure accessing library record in TCDB.
		61	Device services failure.
		64	Library record not found in TCDB for requested library.
		81	Unable to obtain storage for TDI information.
		84	Abend occurred during LCS external services processing.
		312	Function not compatible with the library.
		322	Command rejected by the library.
16	Environment	80	LCS external services unable to establish ESTAE.

For additional information on using the CBRXLCS macro, refer to “CBRXLCS Assembler Macro Usage” on page 139.

CBRXLCS Assembler Macro Usage

To use the CBRXLCS assembler macro:

1. Include mapping macro CBRXLCSPL to provide a DSECT for the LCS External Services parameter list:

```
CBRXLCSPL
```

2. Create copies of the LCSPL in both static and dynamic storage using the list form of CBRXLCS:

```
CBRXLCS MF=(L,static-list-name)
CBRXLCS MF=(L,dynamic-list-name)
```

Note: No other keywords may be supplied on the list form of CBRXLCS.

3. Initialize the LCSPL by copying the static list form to the dynamic list form.

Note: Because the length of the LCSPL exceeds 256 bytes, the MVCL instruction must be used for the copy.

4. Set parameter values in the LCSPL, using the modify form of CBRXLCS:

```
CBRXLCS keywords,
MF=(M,dynamic-list-name)
```

5. Set parameter values in the LCSPL and invoke LCS External Services to perform the requested function, using the execute form of CBRXLCS:

```
CBRXLCS keywords,
MF=(E,dynamic-list-name)
```

6. To check the completeness and compatibility of the set of parameters supplied on a single invocation of CBRXLCS, specify one of the following:

```
CBRXLCS keywords,
MF=(M,dynamic-list-name,COMPLETE)
or
CBRXLCS keywords,
MF=(E,dynamic-list-name,COMPLETE)
```

There is no standard form of CBRXLCS for assembler language.

CBRXLCS Return Codes

The return code from CBRXLCS is placed in register 15 and in the LCSPL in field LCSRCODE. The corresponding reason code is placed in register 0 and in the LCSPL in field LCSREAS.

Note: See the description of each CBRXLCS function for specific return and reason code pairs.

Code	Meaning
------	---------

0	Successful execution. The request completed or was scheduled successfully.
4	Request completed with warning condition. The reason code identifies the specific cause of the warning.
8	Invalid request. The reason code identifies the specific cause of the invalid parameter condition.
12	Request failed. The reason code identifies the specific cause of the error.
16	Invalid environment. The reason code identifies the specific cause of the error.

CBRXLCS Execution Environment

The following execution environment is required for use by the CBRXLCS macro:

- Task mode.
- Unlocked.
- Noncross memory mode (HASN = PASN = SASN).
- 24-bit or 31-bit addressing mode.
- Primary ASC mode (not AR mode).
- If update of the ICF catalog containing the TCDB is necessary, supervisor state, system key, or SAF/RACF authority is required to perform the update.
- TESTAUTH authorization required.

LCS External Services Parameter List (LCSPL)

The LCS External Services Parameter List (LCSPL), mapped by macro CBR LCSPL, is used to pass parameters to the LCS external services, and to pass return and reason codes and other information back to the caller.

The storage for the LCSPL must be aligned to a fullword boundary. If this is not the case, an error is returned and the requested function is not performed.

Figure 15 provides the format of the LCS External Services parameter list. The **boldfaced** lines of code are new for this release.

Attention: Fields that are identified as RESERVED FOR IBM USE must not be used by the installation.

```

*-----*
*
*      LIBRARY CONTROL SYSTEM (LCS) PARAMETER LIST
*
*-----*
      SPACE 1
LCSPL  DSECT ,          LCS PARAMETER LIST
      SPACE 1
*-----*
*
*      CBRXLCS OUTPUT PARAMETERS
*
*-----*
LCSOPARM DS    0F          CBRXLCS OUTPUT PARAMETER SECTION
LCSLIBNM DS    CL8          LIBRARY NAME
LCSCONSN DS    CL8          CONSOLE NAME
          DS    CL8          RESERVED FOR IBM USE
LCSTVI@  DS    A           ADDRESS OF TAPE VOLUME INFORMATION,
*                          MAPPED BY CBRTVI
LCSTDI@  DS    A           ADDRESS OF PTP VTS DATA
*                          MAPPED BY CBRTDI
          DS    A           RESERVED FOR IBM USE
          DS    A           RESERVED FOR IBM USE
          DS    A           RESERVED FOR IBM USE
LCSFLAGS DS    XL1          OUTPUT FLAGS
LCSATL   EQU   X'80'        ON IF THE LIBRARY IS AUTOMATED
LCSMTL   EQU   X'40'        ON IF THE LIBRARY IS MANUAL
          DS    XL3          RESERVED FOR ALIGNMENT

```

Figure 15. The LCS External Services Parameter List—CBRLCSPL (Part 1 of 11)

LCSRCODE	DS	F	CBRXLCS RETURN CODE
LCSREAS	DS	F	CBRXLCS REASON CODE
	DS	XL8	RESERVED FOR IBM USE
LCSPOLEN	EQU	*-LCSOPARM	LENGTH EQUATE FOR OUTPUT PARMS

* CBRXLCS RETURN CODES *

* (RETURNED IN REGISTER 15 AND FIELD LCSR CODE UPON *

* COMPLETION OF LCS EXTERNAL SERVICES PROCESSING) *

LCSSUCC	EQU	0	SUCCESSFUL EXECUTION
LCSWARN	EQU	4	REQUEST COMPLETED WITH WARNING
			CONDITION
LCSIREQ	EQU	8	INVALID REQUEST
LCSFAIL	EQU	12	REQUEST FAILED
LCSENVIR	EQU	16	INVALID ENVIRONMENT

* CBRXLCS INPUT PARAMETERS *

* (INITIALIZED BY THE CBRXLCS MACRO EXPANSION) *

LCSIPARM	DS	0F	CBRXLCS INPUT PARAMETER SECTION
LCSFLAG	DS	0BL4	FLAG BYTES
LCSFLG1	DS	BL1	FLAG BYTE 1
			* BITS ASSIGNED TO LCSFLG1 *
LCS_VOLIST	EQU	B'10000000'	MCE VOLUME LIST PARAMETER SPECIFIED
LCS_VOLUME	EQU	B'00100000'	VOLUME PARAMETER SPECIFIED
LCS_SPNUM	EQU	B'00010000'	SUBPOOL PARAMETER SPECIFIED
LCS_UCBPTR	EQU	B'00001000'	UCBPTR PARAMETER SPECIFIED
LCS_USE	EQU	B'00000100'	USE PARAMETER SPECIFIED
LCS_TYPE	EQU	B'00000010'	TYPE PARAMETER SPECIFIED
LCS_FUNC	EQU	B'00000001'	FUNC PARAMETER SPECIFIED
			* FLAG BYTE 2 *
LCSFLG2	DS	BL1	FLAG BYTE 2
			* BITS ASSIGNED TO LCSFLG2 *
LCS_DEVTYPE	EQU	B'10000000'	DEVICE TYPE PARAMETER SPECIFIED
			* STORAGE GROUP NAME PARAMETER SPECIFIED *
LCS_GRPNAME	EQU	B'01000000'	STORAGE GROUP NAME PARAMETER SPECIFIED
			* EXPIRATION DATE PARAMETER SPECIFIED *
LCS_EXPDATE	EQU	B'00100000'	EXPIRATION DATE PARAMETER SPECIFIED
			* LAST DATE WRITTEN PARAMETER SPECIFIED *
LCS_WRTDATE	EQU	B'00010000'	LAST DATE WRITTEN PARAMETER SPECIFIED
			* WRITE PROTECTION STATUS PARAMETER SPECIFIED *
LCS_WRTPROT	EQU	B'00001000'	WRITE PROTECTION STATUS PARAMETER SPECIFIED
			* LIBRARY NAME PARM SPECIFIED *
LCS_LIBNAME	EQU	B'00000001'	LIBRARY NAME PARM SPECIFIED
			* FLAG BYTE 3 *
LCSFLG3	DS	BL1	FLAG BYTE 3
LCS_EXITINFO	EQU	B'10000000'	INSTALLATION EXIT INFORMATION SPECIFIED
			* BULK EJECT PARAMETER SPECIFIED *
LCS_BULKEJECT	EQU	B'01000000'	BULK EJECT PARAMETER SPECIFIED
			* EJECTOPT PARAMETER SPECIFIED *
LCS_EJECTOPT	EQU	B'00100000'	EJECTOPT PARAMETER SPECIFIED
			* VOLINFO=YES SPECIFIED *
LCS_VOLINFO	EQU	B'00000100'	VOLINFO=YES SPECIFIED
			* USERID SPECIFIED (FUNC EJECT) *
LCS_USERID	EQU	B'00000010'	USERID SPECIFIED (FUNC EJECT)
			* CANCEL SPECIFIED *
LCS_CANCEL	EQU	B'00000001'	CANCEL SPECIFIED

Figure 15. The LCS External Services Parameter List—CBRLCSPL (Part 2 of 11)

LCSFLG4	DS	BL1	FLAG BYTE 4 (FUNCTION SPECIFIC)
* QVR FUNCTION FLAG			
LCS_NOTCDBCK	EQU	B'10000000'	NO RECORD RETRIEVAL FOR QVR
* GDPS PTPMC AND PTPDATA FUNCTION FLAGS			
LCS_IOLIB	EQU	B'10000000'	PTPMC IOLIB SPECIFIED
LCS_COPYMODE	EQU	B'01000000'	PTPMC COPYMODE SPECIFIED
LCS_COPYOPER	EQU	B'00100000'	PTPMC COPYOPER SPECIFIED
LCS_ACCESS	EQU	B'00010000'	PTPMC ACCESS SPECIFIED
LCS_DATATYPE	EQU	B'00001000'	PTPDATA DATATYPE SPECIFIED
LCS_SPLC	EQU	B'00000100'	SUBPOOL LOCATION SPECIFIED
LCS_DEFTHRSH	EQU	B'00000010'	DEFERRED THRESHOLD SPECIFIED

* CBRXLCS FUNCTION AND FUNCTION TYPES *			

LCSTYPE	DS	XL1	FUNCTION TYPE
LCSTAPE	EQU	1	FUNCTION TYPE = TAPE

LCSFUNC	DS	XL1	REQUEST FUNCTION

LCSTVE	EQU	1	TEST VOLUME ELIGIBILITY
LCSCUA	EQU	3	CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE
LCSMCE	EQU	5	MANUAL CARTRIDGE ENTRY
LCSQVR	EQU	6	QUERY VOLUME RESIDENCE
LCSEJECT	EQU	7	EJECT VOLUME
LCSIMPRT	EQU	8	IMPORT
LCSEXPR	EQU	9	EXPORT
LCSPTPMC	EQU	10	PEER-TO-PEER MODE CONTROL
LCSPTPDT	EQU	11	PEER-TO-PEER DATA REQUEST

* OTHER INPUT PARAMETERS AND CONSTANTS USED TO INITIALIZE THEM *			
* (INITIALIZED BY THE CBRXLCS MACRO EXPANSION) *			

LCSUSE	DS	XL1	USE ATTRIBUTE TYPE
* VALUES ASSIGNED TO LCSUSE *			
LCSPRIV	EQU	1	USE ATTRIBUTE OF PRIVATE
LCSSCR	EQU	2	USE ATTRIBUTE OF SCRATCH

LCSSPNUM	DS	XL1	SUBPOOL NUMBER IN WHICH TO OBTAIN
* STORAGE FOR TVI/TDI *			
	DS	XL4	RESERVED FOR IBM USE
LCSEXPDT	DS	XL4	EXPIRATION DATE
LCSDVTYP	DS	A	POINTER TO THE TAPE DEVICE
* SELECTION INFORMATION *			
LCSUCB@	DS	A	UCB ADDRESS FOR TAPE DRIVE WHOSE
* ELIGIBILITY IS TO BE TESTED *			
LCSVOL@	DS	A	POINTER TO A LIST OF VOLUME SERIAL
* NUMBERS *			
	DS	A	RESERVED FOR IBM USE
LCSEXITI	DS	XL16	INFORMATION TO BE PASSED TO THE
* MCE, CUA, AND EJECT INSTALLATION *			
* EXITS *			
LCSUSERID	DS	CL8	USERID (FUNCTION EJECT)
LCSVOLSR	DS	CL6	TAPE VOLUME SERIAL NUMBER
LCSWRTPR	DS	CL1	WRITE PROTECTION STATUS

Figure 15. The LCS External Services Parameter List—CBRLCSPL (Part 3 of 11)

```

*          VALUES ASSIGNED TO LCSWRTPR
LCSWPYES EQU   C'Y'          WRITE PROTECT STATUS YES
LCSWPNO  EQU   C'N'          WRITE PROTECT STATUS NO
*
LCSDATAT DS    XL1          PEER-TO-PEER DATA TYPE
*          VALUES ASSIGNED TO LCSDATAT
LCSMODE  EQU    1          MODE DATA TYPE REQUEST
LCSDEVIC EQU    2          DEVICE DATA TYPE REQUEST
*
LCSTRGRP DS    CL8          STORAGE GROUP NAME
          DS    CL5          RESERVED FOR IBM USE
LCSIOLIB DS    XL1          PEER-TO-PEER IO LIBRARY
*          VALUES ASSIGNED TO LCSIOLIB
LCS PRIM  EQU    1          PRIMARY IO LIBRARY
LCS PREFD EQU    2          PREFERRED IO LIBRARY
LCS BALCD EQU    3          BALANCE IO
LCS IODFT EQU    4          DEFAULT IO TO CE SETTING
*
LCSCP YMD DS    XL1          PEER-TO-PEER COPYMODE
*          VALUES ASSIGNED TO LCSCP YMD
LCS IMMED EQU    1          IMMEDIATE COPY MODE
LCS DFERD EQU    2          DEFERRED COPY MODE
LCS CPYDF EQU    3          DEFAULT TO CE SETTING
*
LCSCP YOP DS    XL1          PEER-TO-PEER COPYOPER
*          VALUES ASSIGNED TO LCSCP YOP
LCS ENABL EQU    1          ENABLE COPY OPERATIONS
LCS DSABL EQU    2          DISABLE COPY OPERATIONS
*
LCS LBNM DS    CL8          LIBRARY NAME
LCS EJOPT DS    CL1          EJECT OPTION OF KEEP OR PURGE
*          VALUES ASSIGNED TO LCSEJOPT
LCS KEEP EQU    C'K'        KEEP TCDB RECORD ON EJECT
LCS PURGE EQU   C'P'        PURGE TCDB RECORD ON EJECT
LCS BULK DS    CL1          EJECT TO BULK OR CONVENIENCE
          *                OUTPUT STATION FOR ATL
*          VALUES ASSIGNED TO LCSBULK
LCS BLYES EQU   C'Y'        ATL BULK OUTPUT STATION
LCS BLNO  EQU   C'N'        ATL CONVENIENCE OUTPUT STATION
*
LCS ACCES DS    XL1          SPECIAL ACCESS (PTPMC)
*          VALUE ASSIGNED TO LCSACCES
LCS RWDIS EQU    1          READ/WRITE DISCONNECTED
*
LCS SPLOC DS    XL1          SUBPOOL LOCATION
*          VALUES ASSIGNED TO LCSSPLOC
LCS ANY  EQU    0          MAY BE ABOVE THE 16 MEG LINE
LCS BELOW EQU    1          BELOW THE 16 MEGABYTE LINE
*
LCS DPTHV DS    XL1          DEFERRED PRIORITY THRESHOLD
          DS    CL3          RESERVED FOR IBM USE
LCS PILEN EQU    *-LCSIPARM    LENGTH EQUATE FOR INPUT PARMS
*-----*
*
*          DIAGNOSTIC INFORMATION
* (RETURNED FROM LCS EXTERNAL SERVICES)
*-----*
LCS DIAG DS    0F          DIAGNOSTIC INFORMATION SECTION
LCS ABCD DS    F          SYSTEM ABEND CODE
LCS ABRC DS    F          ABEND REASON CODE

```

Figure 15. The LCS External Services Parameter List—CBRLCSPL (Part 4 of 11)

Figure 15. The LCS External Services Parameter List—CBRLCSPL (Part 5 of 11)

LCSVEND	EQU	*-LCSV	LENGTH OF LCSV
LCSMLIST	DSECT		(POINTED TO BY LCSVADDR FOR AN
*			MCE REQUEST)
LCSMVOL	DS	CL6	LEFT JUSTIFIED, RIGHT PADDED
	DS	CL6	RESERVED FOR IBM USE
LCSMTDSI	DS	0F	TAPE DEVICE SELECTION INFORMATION
*			(TDSI) FOR THIS VOLUME
LCSMREC	DS	XL1	TAPE RECORDING TECHNOLOGY
LCSMMED	DS	XL1	MEDIA TYPE
LCSMCOMP	DS	XL1	COMPACTION
LCSMSPEC	DS	XL1	SPECIAL ATTRIBUTE
LCSMRET	DS	F	RETURN CODE FOR VOLUME
LCSMREAS	DS	F	REASON CODE FOR VOLUME
LCSMLEND	EQU	*-LCSMLIST	LENGTH OF LCSMLIST

*			*
*		CBRLCS REASON CODES	*
*		(RETURNED IN REGISTER 0 AND FIELD LCSREAS UPON	*
*		COMPLETION OF LCS EXTERNAL SERVICES PROCESSING,	*
*		AND FIELD LCSMREAS FOR AN MCE REQUEST.)	*
*			*

LCSGOOD	EQU	0	SUCCESSFUL EXECUTION
LCSOAMNA	EQU	2	OAM CONTROL BLOCKS NOT AVAILABLE
LCSWNMNT	EQU	3	DELETED WITH MTL SOFTWARE-ONLY
*			SPE
LCSWVAS	EQU	4	VOLUME ALREADY SCRATCH
LCSWVAP	EQU	5	VOLUME ALREADY PRIVATE
LCSCUADS	EQU	6	CUA PROCESSING DISABLED
LCSNOCUV	EQU	7	CUA PROCESSING NOT PERFORMED
*			FOR THIS VOLUME PER INSTALLATION
*			EXIT REQUEST
LCSWSTMP	EQU	8	SCRATCH VOLUME THRESHOLD MESSAGE
*			PROCESSING WAS NOT COMPLETED
*			SUCCESSFULLY
LCSIRTYP	EQU	9	REQUIRED TYPE PARAMETER NOT
*			SPECIFIED
LCSIRMEX	EQU	10	MUTUALLY EXCLUSIVE REQUIRED
*			PARAMETERS SPECIFIED
LCSITYPE	EQU	11	INVALID TYPE VALUE SPECIFIED
LCSIRFUN	EQU	12	REQUIRED FUNC PARAMETER NOT
*			SPECIFIED
LCSIFUNC	EQU	13	INVALID FUNC VALUE
LCSIRUSE	EQU	14	REQUIRED USE PARAMETER NOT
*			SPECIFIED
LCSIUSE	EQU	15	INVALID USE VALUE
LCSIRVOL	EQU	16	REQUIRED VOLUME PARAMETER NOT
*			SPECIFIED
LCSIVOL	EQU	17	INVALID VOLUME VALUE
LCSIRUCB	EQU	18	REQUIRED UCBPTR NOT SPECIFIED
LCSIUCB	EQU	19	INVALID UCBPTR VALUE SPECIFIED
LCSIRLST	EQU	20	REQUIRED VOLLIST NOT SPECIFIED
LCSIVL	EQU	21	INVALID VOLUME LIST VALUE
LCSISGL	EQU	22	INVALID VALUE IN STORAGE GROUP LIST
*			HEADER
LCSIRLBN	EQU	23	REQUIRED LIBRARY NAME NOT SPECIFIED
LCSIEXPD	EQU	25	INVALID EXPIRATION DATE VALUE
LCSILBND	EQU	26	LIBRARY NOT DEFINED TO STORAGE
*			GROUP
LCSILBNM	EQU	27	INVALID LIBRARY NAME SPECIFIED

Figure 15. The LCS External Services Parameter List—CBRLCSPL (Part 6 of 11)

LCSIWPS EQU	28	INVALID WRITE PROTECT STATUS VALUE
LCSIBADR EQU	29	INVALID PARAMETER ADDRESS
LCSIWDBD EQU	30	ADDRESS NOT ON WORD BOUNDARY
*		OR LEVEL
LCSIRTDS EQU	31	REQUIRED TAPE DEVICE SELECTION
*		INFORMATION (TDSI) NOT SPECIFIED
*		
LCSIRLID EQU	32	REQUIRED LIBRARY ID NOT SPECIFIED
*		
LCSILID EQU	33	INVALID VALUE SPECIFIED FOR LIBRARY
*		ID
LCSISGNM EQU	34	INVALID STORAGE GROUP NAME
LCSIRMED EQU	35	REQUIRED MEDIA TYPE NOT SPECIFIED
*		FOR MCE VOLUME
*		
LCSICOMP EQU	38	INVALID COMPACTION SPECIFIED
*		IN TDSI
LCSISPEC EQU	39	INVALID SPECIAL ATTRIBUTE SPECIFIED
*		IN TDSI
LCSIDSC EQU	40	INVALID COMBINATION OF TAPE DEVICE
*		SELECTION VALUES SPECIFIED
LCSIATDC EQU	41	AMBIGUOUS TDSI COMBINATION
*		SPECIFIED
LCSITDNA EQU	42	TAPE DEVICE SELECTION VALUE
*		SPECIFIED WHERE NOT ALLOWED OR
*		NOT APPLICABLE
LCSITDSP EQU	43	INVALID POINTER TO TDSI SPECIFIED
*		
LCSIDISP EQU	44	INVALID VALUE SPECIFIED FOR DISP
*		KEYWORD
LCSFLUNK EQU	45	LIBRARY NAME AS DEFINED IN VOLUME
*		RECORD NOT FOUND IN TCDB
LCSNENAB EQU	46	NO ENABLED STORAGE GROUPS
LCSFSSTG EQU	47	NOT ALL VOLUMES ASSOCIATED WITH THE
*		SAME STORAGE GROUP
LCSSGNDS EQU	48	STORAGE GROUP STATE IS NOTCON,
*		DISALL, OR DISNEW
LCSFNDP EQU	49	NO DEVICE POOLS EXIST TO FULFILL
*		REQUEST FOR TDSI SPECIFICATION
LCSFVSCR EQU	51	SPECIFIC VOLSER REQUEST FOR SCRATCH
*		VOLUME
LCSFNLRS EQU	52	VOLUME(S) RESIDE OUTSIDE LIBRARY
LCSFNLCB EQU	53	LIBRARY FOR SPECIFIED VOLUME NOT
*		DEFINED TO SMS CONFIGURATION
LCSFNTSG EQU	54	SMS STORAGE GROUP WAS
*		NOT OF TYPE TAPE
LCSFDNRV EQU	55	REQUESTED DEVICE DOES NOT RESIDE IN
*		SAME LIBRARY AS REQUESTED VOLUME
*		
LCSFNLSG EQU	56	NO LIBRARIES ASSOCIATED WITH LIST
*		OF STORAGE GROUPS
LCSFXVOL EQU	58	FAILURE ACCESSING THE VOLUME RECORD
*		IN THE CATALOG
LCSFXLIB EQU	59	FAILURE ACCESSING THE LIBRARY
*		RECORD IN THE CATALOG
LCSFCASV EQU	60	FAILURE ACCESSING THE SMS STORAGE
*		GROUP CONSTRUCTS
LCSFLBSV EQU	61	FAILURE ACCESSING HARDWARE
*		CONFIGURATION INFORMATION
LCSFLIBN EQU	62	SPECIFIED LIBRARY IS NOT DEFINED

Figure 15. The LCS External Services Parameter List—CBRLCSPL (Part 7 of 11)

*			TO ACTIVE SMS CONFIGURATION
LCSNOVR	EQU	63	VOLUME RECORD NOT FOUND FOR
*			REQUESTED VOLUME
LCSNOLR	EQU	64	LIBRARY RECORD NOT FOUND IN TCDB
*			FOR REQUESTED LIBRARY
LCSFLNDF	EQU	65	LIBRARY LOGICAL TYPE NOT DEFINED
*			IN ACTIVE CONFIGURATION
LCSNRECT	EQU	66	NO DEVICE POOLS TO FULFILL REQUEST
*			FOR SPECIFIED RECORDING TECHNOLOGY
*			
LCSNMEDX	EQU	67	NO DEVICE POOLS TO FULFILL REQUEST
*			FOR SPECIFIED MEDIA TYPE
LCSCANCL	EQU	69	REQUEST FAILED BECAUSE VOLUME NOT
*			IN LIBRARY INSTALLATION EXIT
*			(CBRUXVNL) SAID TO CANCEL JOB
LCSFVNIL	EQU	70	VOLUME NOT FOUND IN LIBRARY MANAGER
*			INVENTORY
LCSFFULL	EQU	72	DELETED WITH MTL SOFTWARE-ONLY
*			SPE
LCSFDUPV	EQU	74	REQUEST FAILED BECAUSE VOLUME
*			SERIAL NUMBER ALREADY EXISTS IN
*			LIBRARY MANAGER INVENTORY
LCSFUCBS	EQU	75	UNEXPECTED UCBS CAN ERROR
*			ENCOUNTERED DURING PROCESSING
LCSFLBEN	EQU	76	DELETED WITH MTL SOFTWARE-ONLY
*			SPE
LCSFLBEJ	EQU	77	DELETED WITH MTL SOFTWARE-ONLY
*			SPE
LCSFXVRV	EQU	78	ERROR ATTEMPTING TO RETRIEVE
*			VOLUME RECORD
LCSFXVUP	EQU	79	ERROR ATTEMPTING TO WRITE VOLUME
*			RECORD
LCSESTAY	EQU	80	ESTAE ROUTINE NOT ESTABLISHED
LCSEGETF	EQU	81	GETMAIN FAILED FOR DEVICE POOL
*			NAMES LIST OR LOCAL WORKING
*			STORAGE
LCSEXITF	EQU	82	ABNORMAL TERMINATION OCCURRED
*			DURING INSTALLATION EXIT
*			(CBRUXCUA) EXECUTION
LCSXINVD	EQU	83	INVALID RETURN CODE OR DATA
*			RETURNED FROM CHANGE USE
*			ATTRIBUTE INSTALLATION EXIT
*			(CBRUXCUA)
LCSEABND	EQU	84	ABNORMAL TERMINATION OCCURRED
*			DURING EXECUTION
*			
LCSENDIS	EQU	90	CARTRIDGE ENTRY PROCESSING HAS
*			BEEN DISABLED
LCSSENSUS	EQU	91	CARTRIDGE ENTRY PROCESSING HAS
*			BEEN SUSPENDED FOLLOWING ERROR
*			INVOKING INSTALLATION EXIT
LCSNOTMT	EQU	92	LIBRARY FOR MCE NOT MANUAL TAPE
*			LIBRARY
LCSLBOFF	EQU	93	LIBRARY OFFLINE, PENDING
*			OFFLINE, OR NOT OPERATIONAL
LCSINLIB	EQU	94	SPECIFIED VOLUME ALREADY RESIDES
*			IN ANOTHER LIBRARY
LCSXVETO	EQU	95	INSTALLATION EXIT VETOED ENTRY
*			OF VOLUME INTO LIBRARY
LCSXIGNR	EQU	96	VOLUME NOT ENTERED INTO MTL BECAUSE

Figure 15. The LCS External Services Parameter List—CBRLCSPL (Part 8 of 11)

*		INSTALLATION EXIT SAID TO IGNORE
*		THE VOLUME
LCSADASV EQU	97	VOLUME OF SAME VOLSER IS KNOWN DASD
*		VOLUME
*		
*		
*		
*	ADDITIONAL REASON CODES ASSOCIATED WITH RETURN CODE	
*	LCSWARN(4)	
*		
LCSNTMNT EQU	120	VOLUME IS INELIGIBLE BECAUSE
*		THE TYPE OF MEDIA DEFINED IN
*		THE VOLUME RECORD MAY NOT BE
*		MOUNTED ON SPECIFIED DEVICE
LCSMMISM EQU	121	VOLUME IS INELIGIBLE BECAUSE
*		THE TYPE OF MEDIA DEFINED IN
*		THE TDSI DOES NOT MATCH MEDIA
*		DEFINED ON THE VOLUME RECORD
LCSVERST EQU	122	VOLUME IS INELIGIBLE BECAUSE
*		THE VOLUME RECORD REFLECTS AN
*		ERROR STATUS
LCSRTNMT EQU	123	VOLUME IS INELIGIBLE BECAUSE THE
*		SPECIFIED RECORDING TECHNOLOGY
*		IS INCOMPATIBLE WITH THE VOLUME
*		MEDIA TYPE OR THE SPECIFIED
*		DRIVE TYPE
LCSSAMEL EQU	130	SPECIFIED VOLUME ALREADY
*		RESIDES IN THIS TAPE LIBRARY
LCSWLNOP EQU	131	SCRATCH VOLUME THRESHOLD PROCES-
*		SING NOT PERFORMED BECAUSE
*		LIBRARY WAS NOT OPERATIONAL
LCSWNSCT EQU	132	DELETED WITH 3590 SUPPORT
LCSWNULR EQU	133	DELETED WITH 3590 SUPPORT
LCSWLMIO EQU	134	NO TCDB RECORD BUT VOLUME RESIDES
*		IN SPECIFIED LIBRARY
LCSWMSLM EQU	135	LIBRARY MISMATCH, VOLUME RESIDES
*		IN SPECIFIED LIBRARY
LCSWMSNF EQU	136	LIBRARY MISMATCH, VOLUME NOT FOUND
*		IN SPECIFIED LIBRARY
LCSWMSLF EQU	137	LIBRARY MISMATCH, UNABLE TO ACCESS
*		SPECIFIED LIBRARY
LCSWSCNU EQU	138	LIBRARY SCRATCH COUNT NOT
*		UPDATED IN TCDB
LCSWMSLN EQU	139	LIBRARY NAME MISMATCH, SPECIFIED
*		LIB NAME DID NOT MATCH MTL VOLUME
*		RECORD LIB NAME
*	ADDITIONAL REASON CODES ASSOCIATED WITH RETURN CODE	
*	LCSIREQ(8)	
*		
LCSEJCTD EQU	201	VOLUME ALREADY EJECTED
LCSEJEJO EQU	202	INVALID VALUE FOR EJECT OPTION
LCSEJBLK EQU	203	INVALID VALUE FOR BULK EJECT
*		
LCSIUSER EQU	204	INVALID TSO USERID SPECIFIED
LCSBADRT EQU	215	NOT ALL VOLUMES HAVE THE SAME
*		RECORDING TECHNOLOGY
LCSINOLN EQU	216	INVALID TCDBCHK=NO SPECIFIED
*		WITH MTL LIB NAME
LCSIMOPT EQU	217	AT LEAST ONE OPTIONAL KEYWORD MUST
*		BE SPECIFIED WITH FUNCTION

Figure 15. The LCS External Services Parameter List—CBRLCSPL (Part 9 of 11)

LCSIRDAT EQU 218	REQUIRED DATATYPE NOT SPECIFIED
*	
*	
* ADDITIONAL REASON CODES ASSOCIATED WITH RETURN CODE	
* LCSFAIL(12)	
*	
LCSEJABD EQU 300	OAM ABEND DURING EJECT REQUEST
LCSEJPND EQU 302	EJECT REQUEST ALREADY PENDING
*	FOR VOLUME
LCSEJUSE EQU 303	UNABLE TO MAKE USER ADDRESS
*	SPACE NON-SWAPPABLE
LCSEJTCD EQU 304	TCDB ACCESS ERROR IN OAM
LCSEJTCA EQU 305	TCDB AUTHORIZATION ERROR IN
*	OAM
LCSEJOAM EQU 306	OAM INTERNAL ERROR
LCSEJVOL EQU 307	VOLSER NOT IN TCDB
LCSFNSUP EQU 310	MEDIA TYPE OR RECORDING TECHNOLOGY
*	NOT SUPPORTED AT THIS SOFTWARE
*	LEVEL
LCSFNML EQU 311	DELETED WITH MTL SOFTWARE-ONLY
*	SPE
LCSFNCOM EQU 312	FUNCTION NOT COMPATIBLE WITH
*	THE LIBRARY
LCSFVINU EQU 313	VOLUME IS CURRENTLY IN USE
LCSFSEQK EQU 314	IMPORT/EXPORT ALREADY IN
*	PROGRESS OR HOST PROCESSING
*	NOT COMPLETE
LCSFNEDR EQU 315	NOT ENOUGH PHYSICAL DRIVES
*	AVAILABLE IN VTS
LCSFMXNX EQU 316	IMPORT/EXPORT NOT IN PROGRESS
LCSFMTCT EQU 317	EMPTY CATEGORY
*	IMPORT: NO IMPORT VOLUMES
*	EXPORT/IMPORT: NO SCRATCH
*	VOLUMES
LCSFLFUL EQU 318	MAXIMUM LOGICALS DEFINED TO
*	LIBRARY
LCSFNRF EQU 319	NO TCDB RECORD AND VOLUME NOT
*	FOUND IN SPECIFIED LIBRARY
LCSFNRLF EQU 320	NO TCDB RECORD AND UNABLE TO
*	ACCESS SPECIFIED LIBRARY
LCSFMUMT EQU 321	MANUAL CARTRIDGE ENTRY FAILED,
*	MEDIA TYPE RETURNED FROM THE
*	INSTALLATION EXIT DOES NOT
*	MATCH THE MEDIA TYPE DEFINED
*	IN THE VOLUME RECORD.
LCSFCMRJ EQU 322	COMMAND REJECTED BY THE LIBRARY
*	
* ADDITIONAL REASON CODES ASSOCIATED WITH RETURN CODE	
* LCSENVIR(16)	
*	
LCSEJNUL EQU 400	OAM INITIALIZED WITH NULL
*	CONFIGURATION
LCSEJLIB EQU 401	LIBRARY NOT ACCESSIBLE,
*	OFFLINE, OR NOT OPERATIONAL
LCSEJVIS EQU 402	VISION SYSTEM NOT OPERATIONAL
LCSEJXAB EQU 403	EJECT PROCESSING HAS BEEN
*	DISABLED BECAUSE AN ERROR IN
*	THE EJECT INSTALLATION EXIT
*	(CBRUXEJC) HAS BEEN DETECTED
LCSEJNAV EQU 404	OAM ADDRESS SPACE NOT

Figure 15. The LCS External Services Parameter List—CBRLCSPL (Part 10 of 11)

```

*                               AVAILABLE
LCSNOOAM EQU  404             OAM ADDRESS SPACE NOT
*                               AVAILABLE

```

Figure 15. The LCS External Services Parameter List—CBRLCSPL (Part 11 of 11)

Tape Data Information (CBRTDI Macro)

Tape data information (TDI), mapped by macro CBRTDI, is used to pass information about the composite Peer-to-Peer VTS library that is specified on the CBRXLCS PTPDATA request. Depending on the PTPDATA request, either the library's operating mode information or the library's device information is returned in TDI. Figure 16 gives the format for the tape device information.

```

*****
*                               *
*           TAPE DATA INFORMATION MAPPING           *
*                               *
*****
          SPACE 1
TDI      DSECT ,
          SPACE 1
*****
*                               *
*           TDI HEADER                               *
*                               *
*****
TDIHDR  DS    0F          TDI HEADER
TDIID   DS    CL4        TDI IDENTIFIER EBCDIC 'TDI '
TDILENG DS    F          LENGTH OF TDI
*                               TDI HEADER + DATA HEADER + DATA
*                               (LENGTH OF STORAGE TO BE FREED)
TDIVER  DS    XL1        VERSION OF TDI
TDIREV  DS    XL1        REVISION LEVEL OF TDI
TDISPNUM DS XL1          SUBPOOL IN WHICH TDI WAS OBTAINED
*                               IF NOT SPECIFIED, SUBPOOL ZERO USED
          DS    CL1        RESERVED
TDIDHDR@ DS    A          ADDRESS OF MODE OR DEVICE DATA
TDILNGTH EQU *-TDIHDR    LENGTH OF TDI MACRO HEADER
          SPACE 1
*****
*                               *
*           DATA HEADER FOR MODE CONTROL SETTINGS   *
*                               *
*****
TDIMODE DSECT          MODE SETTING DATA MAPPING
TDIMSLN DS    F        DATA MSG LENGTH (LENGTH OF THIS DSECT
*                               PLUS LENGTH OF MODE CONTROL DATA ENTRIES)
TDIMSNM DS    F        NUMBER OF MODE CONTROL DATA ENTRIES
*                               (IF AN AX0 IS NOT AVAILABLE, AN ENTRY
*                               IS NOT RETURNED.)
TDIMSDLN DS    F        LENGTH OF ONE MODE CONTROL DATA ENTRY
TDIMSADR DS    A        ADDRESS OF 1ST MODE CONTROL DATA ENTRY
TDIMAX0S DS    XL1      NUMBER OF AX0'S CONFIGURED
TDIMAX0P DS    XL1      AX0 ID THAT PROCESSED THIS REQUEST
          DS    XL2      RESERVED
TDIMDHDR EQU *-TDIMODE  LENGTH OF TDI MODE SETTING DATA HEADER
          SPACE 1

```

Figure 16. The Tape Data Information Assembler Mapping Macro—CBRTDI (Part 1 of 3)

```

*****
*
*          MODE CONTROL DATA ENTRY
*
*****
TDIMODDT DSECT          MODE CONTROL DATA ENTRY
TDIMAX0I DS    XL1      AX0 IDENTIFIER
TDIIMOD DS     BL1      I/O SELECTION CRITERIA
TDIOBALN EQU   B'10000000' BALANCED IO SELECTION CRITERIA
TDIOPREF EQU   B'01000000' PREFERRED IO SELECTION CRITERIA
TDIOPRIM EQU   B'00100000' PRIMARY IO SELECTION CRITERIA
TDICPYMD DS    BL1      COPY MODE AND COPY OPERATIONS
TDIIMMED EQU   B'10000000' COPYMODE ON=IMMEDIATE/OFF=DEFERRED
TDIENABL EQU   B'00001000' COPYOPER ON=ENABLED/OFF=DISABLED
TDIACCES DS    BL1      SPECIAL ACCESS CONTROL
TDIRWDIS EQU   B'01000000' READ/WRITE DISCONNECTED ACCESS MODE
TDIDMPTV DS    XL1      DEFERRED MODE PRIORITY THRESHOLD
TDIVDLID DS    XL1      PRIMARY/PREFERRED IO DISTRIBUTED LIBRARY
*                      ID
TDICEDTV DS    XL1      CE DEFAULT FOR DEFERRED MODE PRIORITY
*                      THRESHOLD VALUE
*                      DS    CL3      RESERVED
TDIDEVRG DS    XL1      DEVICE RANGE
*                      X'10' 16 VIRTUAL DEVICES CONFIGURED
*                      X'20' 32 VIRTUAL DEVICES CONFIGURED
TDICESET DS    BL1      CE DEFAULT SETTINGS
TDICEBAL EQU   B'10000000' BALANCED IO SELECTION CRITERIA
TDICEPRF EQU   B'01000000' PREFERRED IO SELECTION CRITERIA
TDICECPY EQU   B'00010000' COPYMODE ON=IMMEDIATE/OFF=DEFERRED
*                      LOWER NIBBLE MAY CONTAIN CE SPECIFIED IO
*                      DISTRIBUTED LIBRARY ID IF CE ESTABLISHED
*                      PREFERRED IO SELECTION CRITERIA
TDICPYCT DS    F        DEFERRED COPY OPERATION COUNT
TDIMELEN EQU   *-TDIMODDT LENGTH OF ONE TDI MODE ENTRY
*                      SPACE 1
*****
*
*          DATA HEADER FOR DEVICE INFORMATION
*
*****
TDIDVICE DSECT          DEVICE DATA MAPPING
TDIMDLEN DS    F        DATA MSG LENGTH (LENGTH OF THIS DSECT
*                      PLUS LENGTH OF DEVICE DATA ENTRIES)
TDINVTD DS    F        NUMBER OF DEVICE DATA ENTRIES
TDIDDLN DS    F        LENGTH OF ONE DEVICE DATA ENTRY
TDIDADDR DS    A        ADDRESS OF 1ST DEVICE DATA ENTRY
TDIDVHDR EQU   *-TDIDVICE LENGTH OF TDI DEVICE HEADER
*                      SPACE 1

```

Figure 16. The Tape Data Information Assembler Mapping Macro—CBRTDI (Part 2 of 3)

```

*****
*
*          DEVICE DATA ENTRY
*
*****
TDIDEVDT DSECT          DEVICE DATA ENTRY
TDIVDVID DS    XL2      VIRTUAL DEVICE IDENTIFIER
*                  AX0 IDENTIFIER/DEVICE NUMBER COMBINATION
TDIIOID DS    XL1      I/O VTS IDENTIFIER
TDIVOLSR DS    CL6      MOUNTED VOLUME
TDIVFLAG DS    BL1      VOLUME FLAGS
TDIWRITM EQU   B'10000000' AT LEAST ONE WRITE COMMAND SUCCESSFUL
*                  FOR THE MOUNTED VOLUME
*          DS    CL6      RESERVED
TDIDVLEN EQU   *-TDIDEVDT LENGTH OF ONE TDI DEVICE ENTRY
*          SPACE 1
*****
*
*          HEADER  CONSTANTS
*
*****
TDIIDC EQU   C'TDI '    TDI IDENTIFIER
TDIVERV EQU   1          VERSION
TDIREVV EQU   0          REVISION LEVEL

```

Figure 16. The Tape Data Information Assembler Mapping Macro—CBRTDI (Part 3 of 3)

Tape Volume Information (CBRTVI Macro)

Tape volume information (TVI), mapped by macro CBRTVI, is used to pass information from both the TCDB and the library manager inventory about the volume specified on a CBRXLCS query volume residence request.

Figure 17 on page 154 gives the format for the tape volume information. The **boldfaced** lines of code are new for this release.

```

*****
*
*          TAPE VOLUME INFORMATION MAPPING
*
*****
      SPACE 1
TVI      DSECT ,
      SPACE 1
*****
*
*          HEADER
*
*****
TVIHDR  DS    0F          TVI HEADER
TVIID   DS    CL4        TVI IDENTIFIER EBCDIC 'TVI '
TVILENG DS    F          LENGTH OF TVI
TVIVER  DS    XL1        VERSION OF TVI
TVIREV  DS    XL1        REVISION LEVEL OF TVI
TVISPNUM DS   XL1        SUBPOOL IN WHICH TVI WAS OBTAINED
          DS    XL1        RESERVED FOR IBM USE
          DS    F          RESERVED FOR IBM USE
*****
*
*          VOLUME SERIAL
*
*****
TVIVOLSR DS   CL6        VOLUME SERIAL NUMBER
*****
*
*          VOLUME INFORMATION FROM THE TCDB
*
*
* NOTE:  LIBRARY NAME AND CONSOLE NAME ARE FOUND IN THE LCSPL
*        - LIBRARY NAME IS STORED IN FIELD LCSLIBNM
*        - CONSOLE NAME IS STORED IN FIELD LCSCONS
*
* IF THE LIBRARY NAME IS SPECIFIED ON THE QVR INVOCATION, LCSLIBNM
* CONTAINS THE SPECIFIED LIBRARY AND LCSCONS CONTAINS THE CONSOLE
* NAME OF THE SPECIFIED LIBRARY. THE SPECIFIED LIBRARY NAME MAY
* OR MAY NOT MATCH THE LIBRARY NAME IN THE VOLUME RECORD, TVILIBNM.
*
* IF THE LIBRARY NAME IS NOT SPECIFIED ON THE QVR INVOCATION,
* LCSLIBNM CONTAINS THE LIBRARY NAME FOUND IN THE VOLUME RECORD,
* TVILIBNM, IF THE VOLUME RECORD IS FOUND.
* LCSCONS CONTAINS THE CONSOLE NAME OF TVILIBNM, IF THE VOLUME
* RECORD IS FOUND.
*
*          INCLUDE MAPPING MACRO CBRVERR TO DEFINE CONSTANTS
*          FOR THE VALUES ASSIGNED TO TVIERROR.
*
*****
TVIUSEA  DS    CL1        VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE AS DEFINED IN
*                               THE TAPE VOLUME RECORD
*                               'P' FOR PRIVATE
*                               'S' FOR SCRATCH
          DS    XL1        RESERVED FOR IBM USE
TVITDSI  DS    0F        TAPE DEVICE SELECTION INFORMATION
TVIREC   DS    XL1        RECORDING TECHNOLOGY
TVIMEDIA DS    XL1        MEDIA TYPE
TVICOMP  DS    XL1        COMPACTION
TVISPEC  DS    XL1        SPECIAL ATTRIBUTE

```

Figure 17. The Tape Volume Information Assembler Mapping Macro—CBRTVI (Part 1 of 4)

TVIERROR	DS	H	VOLUME ERROR STATUS
	DS	XL2	RESERVED FOR IBM USE
TVISTGRP	DS	CL8	STORAGE GROUP NAME
TVIWPROT	DS	CL1	WRITE PROTECTION STATUS
*			'Y' FOR WRITE-PROTECTED
*			'N' FOR NOT WRITE-PROTECTED
*			' ' BLANK FOR STATUS UNKNOWN
TVCHKPT	DS	CL1	CHECKPOINT VOLUME INDICATOR
*			'Y' FOR CHECKPOINT VOLUME
*			'N' FOR NOT CHECKPOINT VOLUME
*			' ' BLANK FOR STATUS UNKNOWN
TVILOC	DS	CL1	VOLUME LOCATION CODE
*			'L' FOR LIBRARY-RESIDENT
*			'S' FOR SHELF-RESIDENT
	DS	CL1	RESERVED FOR IBM USE
TVISHLOC	DS	CL32	SHELF LOCATION
TVIOWNER	DS	CL64	VOLUME OWNER INFORMATION
TVICREAT	DS	CL10	VOLUME RECORD CREATION DATE
TVIENTEJ	DS	CL10	LAST ENTRY OR EJECTION DATE
TVIMOUNT	DS	CL10	LAST MOUNTED DATE
TVIWRITE	DS	CL10	LAST WRITTEN DATE
TVIEXPIR	DS	CL10	VOLUME EXPIRATION DATE
TVILIBNM	DS	CL8	LIBRARY NAME FROM VOLUME RECORD
	DS	CL2	RESERVED FOR IBM USE
	DS	CL56	RESERVED FOR IBM USE

*			*
*		VOLUME INFORMATION FROM LIBRARY MANAGER	*
*			*

TVILCAT	DS	CL2	VOLUME CATEGORY FROM LIBRARY MANAGER
*			(CONSTANTS FOR CATEGORIES ASSIGNED TO
*			TVILCAT ARE DECLARED LATER IN MACRO
*			MACRO)
TVIMEDTY	DS	XL1	VOLUME MEDIA TYPE
*			X'00' FOR UNKNOWN
*			X'01' FOR MEDIA1
*			X'02' FOR MEDIA2
*			X'03' FOR MEDIA3
*			X'04' FOR MEDIA4
TVIATTR	DS	XL1	VOLUME ATTRIBUTE
*			0 PHYSICAL NON-VTS VOLUME
*			1 LOGICAL VTS VOLUME
*			2 VTS LOGICAL VOLUME BEING
*			IMPORTED
*			3 PHYSICAL VTS VOLUME
TVISTAT	DS	0BL2	VOLUME STATUS
TVISTAT1	DS	BL1	VOLUME STATUS - BYTE 1
TVIINACC	EQU	B'10000000'	VOLUME IS IN LIBRARY BUT INACCESSIBLE
TVIMNT	EQU	B'01000000'	VOLUME IS MOUNTED
TVIMNTQ	EQU	B'00100000'	VOLUME IS QUEUED FOR MOUNT
TVIMNTIP	EQU	B'00010000'	VOLUME IN PROCESS OF BEING MOUNTED
TVIDMNTQ	EQU	B'00001000'	VOLUME QUEUED FOR DEMOUNT
TVIDMNTIP	EQU	B'00000100'	VOLUME IN PROCESS OF BEING DEMOUNTED
TVIEJCQ	EQU	B'00000010'	VOLUME IS QUEUED FOR EJECT/EXPORT
TVIEJCIP	EQU	B'00000001'	VOLUME IN PROCESS OF BEING
*			EJECTED/EXPORTED
*			
TVISTAT2	DS	BL1	VOLUME STATUS - BYTE 2
TVIAUDQ	EQU	B'10000000'	VOLUME QUEUED FOR AUDIT

Figure 17. The Tape Volume Information Assembler Mapping Macro—CBRTVI (Part 2 of 4)

```

TVIAUDIP EQU B'01000000' VOLUME IN PROCESS OF BEING AUDITED
TVIMISS EQU B'00100000' VOLUME IS MISPLACED
TVIBLAB EQU B'00010000' VOLUME HAS UNREADABLE OR NO LABEL
TVIUMAN EQU B'00001000' VOLUME WAS USED DURING MANUAL MODE
TVIMANEJ EQU B'00000100' VOLUME WAS MANUALLY EJECTED
*
*
TVISTATA DS BL1 ADDITIONAL VOLUME STATUS
TVICACHE EQU B'10000000' VOLUME IS CACHE RESIDENT
TVIVCOPY EQU B'01000000' VALID COPY IN EACH DISTRIBUTED
* LIBRARY
*
          DS BL1 RESERVED FOR IBM USE
          DS CL24 RESERVED FOR IBM USE
          DS 0D END OF VTI
TVILNGTH EQU *-TVI
          SPACE 1
*****
*
* TCDB USE ATTRIBUTE CONSTANTS
*
*****
TVIPRIV EQU C'P' PRIVATE USE ATTRIBUTE
TVISCRT EQU C'S' SCRATCH USE ATTRIBUTE
          SPACE 1
*****
*
* TCDB TAPE DEVICE SELECTION INFORMATION CONSTANTS
*
*****
*          CONSTANTS TO DEFINE RECORDING TECHNOLOGY
TVINOREC EQU 0 RECORDING TECHNOLOGY UNKNOWN OR
*          UNSPECIFIED
TVI18TRK EQU 1 READ/WRITE ON 18 TRACK DEVICE
TVI36TRK EQU 2 READ/WRITE ON 36 TRACK DEVICE
TVI128TRK EQU 3 READ/WRITE ON 128 TRACK DEVICE
TVI256TRK EQU 4 READ/WRITE ON 256 TRACK DEVICE
*          CONSTANTS TO DEFINE MEDIA TYPE
TVINOMED EQU 0 MEDIA TYPE UNKNOWN OR UNSPECIFIED
TVIMED1 EQU 1 MEDIA1 - CARTRIDGE SYSTEM TAPE
TVIMED2 EQU 2 MEDIA2 - ENHANCED CAPACITY CARTRIDGE
*          SYSTEM TAPE
TVIMED3 EQU 3 MEDIA3 - HIGH PERFORMANCE CARTRIDGE
*          TAPE
TVIMED4 EQU 4 MEDIA4 - EXTENDED HIGH PERFORMANCE
*          CARTRIDGE TAPE
*          CONSTANTS TO DEFINE COMPACTION
*          (TVIIDRC AND TVICOMPT CAN BE USED INTERCHANGEABLY)
TVICMPNS EQU 0 COMPACTION UNKNOWN OR NOT SET
TVINOCMP EQU 1 NO COMPACTION
TVIIDRC EQU 2 COMPACTION
TVICOMPT EQU 2 COMPACTION
*          CONSTANTS TO DEFINE SPECIAL ATTRIBUTE
TVINOSPC EQU 0 VOLUME HAS NO SPECIAL ATTRIBUTE
TVIRDCOM EQU 1 VOLUME WILL BE MOUNTED FOR READ ONLY -
*          ALL READ-COMPATIBLE DEVICES MAY BE
*          SELECTED
*****
*
* VOLUME ATTRIBUTE CONSTANTS
*

```

Figure 17. The Tape Volume Information Assembler Mapping Macro—CBRTVI (Part 3 of 4)

```

*
*****
TVIPHYCL EQU 0          PHYSICAL NON-VTS VOLUME
TVILOGCL EQU 1          LOGICAL VTS VOLUME
TVIMPORT EQU 2          VTS LOGICAL VOLUME BEING IMPORTED
TVISTKED EQU 3          PHYSICAL VTS VOLUME
*
*****
*
* MISCELLANEOUS SOFTWARE CONSTANTS
*
*****
TVIYES EQU C'Y'         YES
TVINO EQU C'N'         NO
TVIBLANK EQU C' '      BLANK
*
*****
*
* LIBRARY MANAGER CATEGORY CONSTANTS FOR TVILCAT
*
*****
TVISCRM1 EQU C'S1'     VOLUME IS MEDIA1 SCRATCH
TVISCRM2 EQU C'S2'     VOLUME IS MEDIA2 SCRATCH
TVISCRM3 EQU C'S3'     VOLUME IS MEDIA3 SCRATCH
TVISCRM4 EQU C'S4'     VOLUME IS MEDIA4 SCRATCH
TVIERRC EQU C'ER'      VOLUME IS IN ERROR CATEGORY
TVIPRIVC EQU C'PR'     VOLUME IS IN PRIVATE CATEGORY
TVIINSRT EQU C'IN'     VOLUME IS IN INSERT CATEGORY
TVICNVEJ EQU C'CE'     VOLUME IS IN CONVENIENCE EJECT CATEGORY
TVIBLKEJ EQU C'BE'     VOLUME IS IN BULK EJECT CATEGORY
TVIPURGE EQU C'PG'     VOLUME IS IN PURGE CATEGORY
TVIMEJCT EQU C'ME'     VOLUME IS IN MANUAL EJECT CATEGORY
TVIIMPRT EQU C'IM'     VOLUME IS IN IMPORT CATEGORY
*
* (PHYSICAL VOLUMES CONTAINING LOGICAL
* VOLUMES TO IMPORT)
TVIIMPND EQU C'IP'     VOLUME IS IN IMPORT PENDING CATEGORY
TVIEXPND EQU C'XP'     VOLUME IS IN EXPORT PENDING CATEGORY
TVIEXPTD EQU C'XD'     VOLUME IS IN EXPORTED CATEGORY
TVISTAKD EQU C'ST'     VOLUME IS IN STACKED VOLUME CATEGORY
*
* (PHYSICAL VOLUMES THAT VTS MANAGES)
TVIUNASN EQU C'UA'     VOLUME IS IN UNASSIGNED CATEGORY
TVIEXPHD EQU C'EH'     VOLUME IS IN EXPORT HOLD CATEGORY
TVIBADTK EQU C'BT'     VOLUME IS IN CORRUPTED TOKEN CATEGORY
TVIUNK EQU C'UN'       VOLUME CATEGORY IS NOT KNOWN
*****
*
* HEADER CONSTANTS
*
*****
TVIIDC EQU C'TVI '     TVI IDENTIFIER
TVIVERV EQU 1          VERSION
TVIREVV EQU 6          REVISION LEVEL

```

Figure 17. The Tape Volume Information Assembler Mapping Macro—CBRTVI (Part 4 of 4)

Tape Device Selection Information

Tape device selection information (TDSI), mapped by macro CBRTDSI, is used to pass device selection information to and among system components providing tape library support. Figure 18 on page 158 gives the format for Tape Device Selection Information.

```

*-----*
*               TAPE DEVICE SELECTION INFORMATION               *
*-----*
TDSI      DSECT ,          TAPE DEVICE SELECTION INFORMATION
*
*-----*
TDSDEVT  DS      0F
TDSREC   DS      XL1      RECORDING TECHNOLOGY
TDSMEDIA DS      XL1      MEDIA TYPE
TDSCOMP  DS      XL1      COMPACTION TYPE
TDSSPEC  DS      XL1      SPECIAL ATTRIBUTES
*-----*
*               CONSTANT FOR DONTCARE OR ZERO                   *
*               ZERO, OR TDSNOCAR, IS AN ACCEPTABLE VALUE FOR TDSI. *
*-----*
TDSNOCAR EQU      0
*-----*
*               CONSTANTS TO DEFINE RECORDING TECHNOLOGY         *
*-----*
TDSNOREC EQU      0      RECORDING TECHNOLOGY UNKNOWN OR
*                          UNSPECIFIED
TDS18TRK EQU      1      READ/WRITE ON 18 TRACK DEVICE
TDS36TRK EQU      2      READ/WRITE ON 36 TRACK DEVICE
TDS128TRK EQU      3      READ/WRITE ON 128 TRACK DEVICE
TDS256TRK EQU      4      READ/WRITE ON 256 TRACK DEVICE
*-----*
*               CONSTANTS TO DEFINE MEDIA TYPE                   *
*-----*
TDSNOMED EQU      0      MEDIA TYPE UNKNOWN OR UNSPECIFIED
TDSMED1  EQU      1      MEDIA1 - CARTRIDGE SYSTEM TAPE
TDSMED2  EQU      2      MEDIA2 - ENHANCED CAPACITY
*                          CARTRIDGE SYSTEM TAPE
TDSMED3  EQU      3      MEDIA3 - HIGH PERFORMANCE CARTRIDGE
*                          TAPE
TDSMED4  EQU      4      MEDIA4 - EXTENDED HIGH PERFORMANCE
*                          CARTRIDGE TAPE
*-----*
*               CONSTANTS TO DEFINE COMPACTION TYPE              *
*               (THE MEANING OF THE COMPACTION FIELD HAS CHANGED *
*               FROM TYPE OF COMPACTION TO COMPACTION YES/NO.   *
*               TDSIDRC AND TDSCOMPT CAN BE USED INTERCHANGEABLY.) *
*-----*
TDSCMPNS EQU      0      COMPACTION TYPE UNKNOWN OR NOT SET
TDSNOCMP EQU      1      NO COMPACTION
TDSIDRC  EQU      2      COMPACTION
TDSCOMPT EQU      2      COMPACTION
*-----*
*               CONSTANTS TO DEFINE SPECIAL ATTRIBUTE            *
*-----*
TDSNOSPC EQU      0      VOLUME HAS NO SPECIAL ATTRIBUTE
TDSRDCOM EQU      1      VOLUME WILL BE MOUNTED FOR READ
*                          ONLY - ALL READ-COMPATIBLE
*                          DEVICES MAY BE SELECTED
*-----*

```

Figure 18. The Tape Device Selection Information Assembler Mapping—CBRTDSI

Chapter 7. Installation Exits

The following material provides information for creating your own installation exit routines. For examples of SAMPLIB jobs pertaining to these installation exits, refer to “Appendix A. SAMPLIB Members” on page 195.

Change Use Attribute Installation Exit (CBRUXCUA)

When the CBRXLCS macro is issued to change the use attribute of a volume, or when you use the ISMF ALTER line operator from the mountable tape volume list to change the use attribute of a volume, the change use attribute installation exit (CBRUXCUA) is called before the volume record is changed.

This installation exit is designed to allow the installation the opportunity to approve or disapprove the proposed change to the volume's use attribute, and to view, and if necessary, change many fields in the TCDB volume record. Approval or disapproval is communicated by way of the return code which is passed back in register 15. Volume record fields are updated by changing the appropriate fields in the change use attribute installation exit parameter list (CBRUXCPL).

The change use attribute installation exit is supplied by DFSMSrmm. If your installation is not using DFSMSrmm, the supplied exit returns a return code of 16, indicating that the installation exit not be invoked again. For more information, refer to *z/OS DFSMSrmm Guide and Reference*, *z/OS DFSMSrmm Implementation and Customization Guide*, and *z/OS DFSMSrmm Diagnosis Guide*.

If your installation is not using DFSMSrmm and your tape management vendor has not supplied an exit, OAM provides a sample change use attribute exit (CBRSPUXC) in SAMPLIB that can be customized to fit your needs. The discussion that follows will assist in determining whether the exit is needed on your system. For more information on this SAMPLIB member, see “SAMPLIB Member CBRSPUXC” on page 209.

If the caller of the CBRXLCS macro specified EXITINFO on the macro invocation, the 16 bytes of free-form information provided on the invocation are passed to the exit. If EXITINFO is not specified on the CBRXLCS invocation, the field in the exit parameter list contains binary zeros.

The following library-related information is passed to the exit but may not be updated by the installation:

- Library name
- Library device type
- Library logical type
- Library description
- Library console name (if specified) or blanks

If the volume is not library-resident, the exit parameter list indicates a library name of SHELF and all the other library fields in the exit parameter list are blank.

Both the current use attribute as it is recorded in the tape volume record and the new use attribute are passed to the exit as input variables.

On a change to SCRATCH, the fields that are passed to the exit represent the values in the tape volume record as it currently exists in the TCDB before any changes are made. If a volume is being changed from PRIVATE to SCRATCH, and

if the installation exit supplies new values for any of the following fields, they are ignored. The following default scratch values are set before committing the changes to the TCDB:

- Volume use attribute = **S**
- Storage group name = ***SCRATCH***
- Write protection status = **N**
- Checkpoint volume indicator = **N**
- Volume expiration date = blank
- Tape device selection values:
 - Recording technology is unchanged
 - Media type is unchanged
 - Compaction indicator is unchanged
 - Special attribute is set to none

On a change to PRIVATE, the fields that are passed to the exit represent the values in the volume record as updated with the parameters specified on the CBRXLCS macro invocation. The installation may override some of those parameters as described in the table below. If the installation makes no changes, the values are committed to the TCDB as presented in CBRUXCPL. If the exit changes some fields, they are processed as described below.

If a field is described as 'input only' in the table below, it may not be updated by the installation. If it is described as 'output', it may be updated by the installation. If it is further described as 'verified', the contents or format of the field is validated before updating the TCDB volume record with information from the installation.

If the installation exit returns with an invalid value in a record field, returns with an invalid return code, or abnormally terminates, the current request fails. In addition, change use attribute processing for subsequent private to scratch requests is disabled and the change use attribute exit is not called again until either OAM is stopped and started, or the LIBRARY RESET, CBRUXCUA operator command is issued.

Note: When an error occurs in the installation exit, private to scratch requests are disabled in order to prevent the inadvertent assignment of a private volume to scratch status. Processing continues for scratch to private, scratch to scratch, and private to private requests without invocation of the change use attribute installation exit.

Figure 19 on page 161 lists the fields from the TCDB tape volume record that are passed to the exit. The fields may or may not be updated by the installation, depending on the function being performed (for example, changed to SCRATCH or to PRIVATE).

VARIABLE	SCR->PRIV	PRIV->SCR
Volume serial number	Input only	Input only
Current use attribute	Input only	Input only
New use attribute	Input only	Input only
Storage group name	Output/Verified	Output (ignored)
Write protection status	Output/Verified	Output (ignored)
Checkpoint volume indicator	Output/Verified	Output (ignored)
Volume location code	Input only	Input only
Shelf location	Output	Output
Volume owner information	Output	Output
Volume record creation date	Input only	Input only
Last entry or eject date	Input only	Input only
Last mounted date	Output/Verified	Output/Verified
Last written date	Output/Verified	Output/Verified
Volume expiration date	Output/Verified	Output (ignored)
Tape device selection information	Input only	Input only
Installation exit information	Input only	Input only

Figure 19. Fields Passed To The Installation Exit—CBRUXCUA

If a field is described as *verified*, the following values are checked for validity upon return from the exit:

Storage group name

When a volume is changed from *scratch* to *private* or *private* to *private*, the storage group name supplied may be blanks. If a nonblank value is supplied, the name must be defined in the active SMS configuration as a tape storage group. In addition, if the volume is library-resident, the library must be defined to that storage group.

Write protection status

Y, N, or blank can be specified.

Checkpoint volume indicator

Y, N, or blank can be specified.

Last mounted date

The date specified must be in ISO format (YYYY-MM-DD) or blanks.

Last written date

The date specified must be in ISO format (YYYY-MM-DD) or blanks.

Volume expiration date

The date specified must be in ISO format (YYYY-MM-DD) or blanks.

Change Use Attribute Installation Exit Parameter List (CBRUXCPL)

The change use attribute installation exit (CBRUXCUA) is passed by way of register 1, the pointer to a parameter list mapped by CBRUXCPL. Figure 20 on page 162 provides the format of CBRUXCPL.

UXCPL	DSECT , SPACE 1	CBRUXCUA PARAMETER LIST

*		*
*	CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE INSTALLATION EXIT PARAMETERS	*
*		*

UXCPARM	DS 0D	CBRUXCUA PARAMETER SECTION
UXCLIB	DS CL8	LIBRARY NAME
*		(INPUT VARIABLE)
UXCLDEV	DS CL8	LIBRARY DEVICE TYPE
*		(INPUT VARIABLE)
UXCLCON	DS CL8	LIBRARY CONSOLE NAME
*		(INPUT VARIABLE)
UXCLTYP	DS CL1	LIBRARY LOGICAL TYPE
*		'R' FOR AUTOMATED LIBRARY
*		'M' FOR MANUAL LIBRARY
*		(INPUT VARIABLE)
	DS CL7	RESERVED
UXCLDESC	DS CL120	LIBRARY DESCRIPTION
*		(INPUT VARIABLE)
	DS CL8	RESERVED
UXCVOLSR	DS CL6	VOLUME SERIAL NUMBER
*		(INPUT VARIABLE)
	DS CL1	RESERVED
UXCCUSEA	DS CL1	VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE AS CURRENTLY
*		DEFINED IN THE TAPE VOLUME RECORD
*		'P' FOR PRIVATE
*		'S' FOR SCRATCH
*		(INPUT VARIABLE)
UXCUSEA	DS CL1	REQUESTED VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE
*		SPECIFIED ON THE CBRXLCS MACRO
*		'P' FOR PRIVATE
*		'S' FOR SCRATCH
*		(INPUT VARIABLE)
UXCWPROT	DS CL1	WRITE PROTECTION STATUS
*		'Y' FOR WRITE-PROTECTED
*		'N' FOR NOT WRITE-PROTECTED
*		(INPUT FOR CHANGE TO SCRATCH
*		OUTPUT FOR CHANGE TO PRIVATE)
UXCCHKPT	DS CL1	CHECKPOINT VOLUME INDICATOR
*		'Y' FOR CHECKPOINT VOLUME
*		'N' FOR NOT CHECKPOINT VOLUME
*		(INPUT FOR CHANGE TO SCRATCH
*		OUTPUT FOR CHANGE TO PRIVATE)
UXCLOC	DS CL1	VOLUME LOCATION CODE
*		'L' FOR LIBRARY-RESIDENT
*		'S' FOR SHELF-RESIDENT
*		(INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
UXCTDSI	DS 0F	TAPE DEVICE SELECTION INFORMATION
UXCREC	DS XL1	RECORDING TECHNOLOGY
*		(INPUT VARIABLE)

Figure 20. Change Use Attribute Installation Exit Parameter List—CBRUXCPL (Part 1 of 4)

UXCMEDIA	DS	XL1	MEDIA TYPE
*			(INPUT VARIABLE)
UXCCOMP	DS	XL1	COMPACTION TYPE
*			(INPUT VARIABLE)
UXCSPEC	DS	XL1	SPECIAL ATTRIBUTE
*			(INPUT VARIABLE)
UXCGROUP	DS	CL8	STORAGE GROUP NAME
*			(INPUT FOR CHANGE TO SCRATCH
*			OUTPUT FOR CHANGE TO PRIVATE)
UXCSHLOC	DS	CL32	SHELF LOCATION
*			(INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
UXCOWNER	DS	CL64	VOLUME OWNER INFORMATION
*			(INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
	DS	CL8	RESERVED
UXCCREAT	DS	CL10	VOLUME RECORD CREATION DATE
*			(INPUT VARIABLE)
UXCENTEJ	DS	CL10	LAST ENTRY OR EJECTION DATE
*			(INPUT VARIABLE)
UXCMOUNT	DS	CL10	LAST MOUNTED DATE
*			(INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
UXCWRITE	DS	CL10	LAST WRITTEN DATE
*			(INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
UXCEXPIR	DS	CL10	VOLUME EXPIRATION DATE
*			(INPUT FOR CHANGE TO SCRATCH
*			OUTPUT FOR CHANGE TO PRIVATE)
	DS	CL10	RESERVED
	DS	CL4	RESERVED
UXCEXITI	DS	CL16	INFORMATION TO BE PASSED TO THE
*			INSTALLATION EXIT
	DS	0D	END OF UXCPL
UXCPLEN	EQU	*-UXCPL	
	SPACE	1	

*	RETURN CODES		*

UXCNOCHG	EQU	0	CHANGE THE VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE AS
*			REQUESTED USING PARAMETER VALUES
*			PASSED IN ON INPUT
UXCCHG	EQU	4	CHANGE THE USE ATTRIBUTE AS
*			REQUESTED BUT NOTE THAT PARAMETER
*			VALUES HAVE BEEN RETURNED BY EXIT
UXCFAIL	EQU	8	DO NOT CHANGE THE VOLUME USE
*			ATTRIBUTE
*	EQU	12	RESERVED
UXCDONT	EQU	16	DO NOT CALL THE VOLUME USE
*			ATTRIBUTE INSTALLATION EXIT
*			AGAIN, BUT CHANGE THE USE
*			ATTRIBUTE AS REQUESTED USING
*			PARAMETER VALUES PASSED IN
*			ON INPUT
	SPACE	1	

Figure 20. Change Use Attribute Installation Exit Parameter List—CBRUXCPL (Part 2 of 4)

```

*****
*
*          LIBRARY LOGICAL TYPE CONSTANTS
*
*****
UXCREAL      EQU  C'R'          AUTOMATED LIBRARY
UXCMAN       EQU  C'M'          MANUAL LIBRARY
                SPACE 1
*****
*
*          USE ATTRIBUTE CONSTANTS
*
*****
UXCPRIV      EQU  C'P'          PRIVATE USE ATTRIBUTE
UXCSCRT      EQU  C'S'          SCRATCH USE ATTRIBUTE
                SPACE 1
*****
*
*          TAPE DEVICE SELECTION INFORMATION CONSTANTS
*
*****
UXNOCAR      EQU  0              ZERO IS AN ACCEPTABLE TDSI VALUE
*****
*          CONSTANTS TO DEFINE RECORDING TECHNOLOGY
*
*****
UXCNOREC     EQU  0              RECORDING TECHNOLOGY UNKNOWN OR
*                               UNSPECIFIED
UXC18TRK     EQU  1              READ/WRITE ON 18-TRACK DEVICE
UXC36TRK     EQU  2              READ/WRITE ON 36-TRACK DEVICE
UXC128TRK    EQU  3              READ/WRITE ON 128-TRACK DEVICE
UXC256TRK    EQU  4              READ/WRITE ON 256-TRACK DEVICE
*****
*          CONSTANTS TO DEFINE MEDIA TYPE
*
*****
UXCNOMED     EQU  0              MEDIA TYPE UNKNOWN OR UNSPECIFIED
UXCMED1      EQU  1              MEDIA1 - CARTRIDGE SYSTEM TAPE
UXCMED2      EQU  2              MEDIA2 - ENHANCED CAPACITY CARTRIDGE
*                               SYSTEM TAPE
UXCMED3      EQU  3              MEDIA3 - HIGH PERFORMANCE CARTRIDGE
*                               TAPE
UXCMED4      EQU  4              MEDIA4 - EXTENDED HIGH PERFORMANCE
*                               CARTRIDGE TAPE
*****
*          CONSTANTS TO DEFINE COMPACTION TYPE (THE MEANING OF THE
*          COMPACTION FIELD HAS CHANGED FROM TYPE OF COMPACTION
*          TO COMPACTION YES/NO - UXCIDRC AND UXCCOMPT
*          CAN BE USED INTERCHANGEABLY)
*
*****
UXCCMPNS     EQU  0              COMPACTION UNKNOWN OR NOT SET
UXCNOCMP     EQU  1              NO COMPACTION
UXCCOMPT     EQU  2              COMPACTION
UXCIDRC      EQU  2              COMPACTION

```

Figure 20. Change Use Attribute Installation Exit Parameter List—CBRUXCPL (Part 3 of 4)

```

*****
*          CONSTANTS TO DEFINE SPECIAL ATTRIBUTE          *
*****
UXCNOSPC      EQU  0          VOLUME HAS NO SPECIAL ATTRIBUTE
UXCRDCOM      EQU  1          VOLUME WILL BE MOUNTED FOR READ ONLY -
*                               ALL READ-COMPATIBLE DEVICES MAY BE
*                               SELECTED
*****
*
*          MISCELLANEOUS CONSTANTS                        *
*
*****
UXCPLSP      EQU  230          UXCPL SUBPOOL NUMBER
UXCYES      EQU  C'Y'          YES
UXCNO       EQU  C'N'          NO
UXCBLANK     EQU  C' '          BLANK
                SPACE 2
                MEND ,

```

Figure 20. Change Use Attribute Installation Exit Parameter List—CBRUXCPL (Part 4 of 4)

Storage is obtained below the line, from subpool 230, user key, for the installation exit parameter list.

Change Use Attribute Installation Exit (CBRUXCUA) Return Codes

The following are the return codes that can be passed back from the CBRUXCUA exit:

Code Meaning

- 0** Change the use attribute of the volume specified as requested. No changes have been made to the parameter list (CBRUXCPL). Use what existed at the time the installation exit was called.
- 4** Change the use attribute of the volume specified and note that one or more fields in the parameter list (CBRUXCPL) have changed.
- 8** Do not change the use attribute of the volume specified.

Note: If the installation does not allow the use attribute of a volume to be changed from SCRATCH to PRIVATE, the job may fail for the volume required.

- 12** Reserved.
- 16** Do not call the change use attribute installation exit again. Change the use attribute of the volume as requested using the existing volume record information.

Note: If the installation has returned return code 16 indicating that the exit should not be called again, the exit can be reactivated either by stopping and restarting OAM or issuing the LIBRARY RESET, CBRUXCUA command. If the exit abnormally terminates, passes back an invalid return code, or passes back invalid data, PRIVATE to SCRATCH change use attribute processing is discontinued until one of the above actions has been taken. This is intended to protect user data from being inadvertently scratched.

Change Use Attribute Installation Exit (CBRUXCUA) Usage Requirements

The change use attribute installation exit must reside in load module CBRUXCUA. It is invoked by way of the MVS LINK macro and must reside in a library in the LNKST concatenation. The installation exit can be executed above or below the 16-megabyte line. The installation exit must be coded and link-edited on the system as re-entrant.

Under some circumstances, CBRUXCUA may be invoked in a key other than the job key. Therefore, all storage dynamically acquired by CBRUXCUA should be obtained from subpool 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, or 241, in order to ensure that it is accessible in the program status word (PSW) key.

The following characteristics describe the execution environment in which the change use attribute installation exit is invoked:

- Task mode
- Unlocked
- Noncross memory mode (HASN = PASN = SASN)
- The addressing mode specified when the exit was linkage edited
- Primary ASC mode (not AR mode)
- User key, supervisor state

Mapping macro CBRUXCPL must be included by the installation exit.

Cartridge Entry Installation Exit (CBRUXENT)

This installation exit is called to approve or disapprove entry of a cartridge into a library and to determine TCDB volume record contents for each volume entered into a library.

The cartridge entry installation exit is supplied by DFSMSrmm. If your installation is not using DFSMSrmm, the supplied exit returns a return code of 16, indicating that the installation exit not be invoked again. For more information, refer to *z/OS DFSMSrmm Guide and Reference*, *z/OS DFSMSrmm Implementation and Customization Guide*, and *z/OS DFSMSrmm Diagnosis Guide*.

If your installation is not using DFSMSrmm and your tape management vendor has not supplied an exit, OAM provides a sample cartridge entry installation exit (CBRSPUXE) in SAMPLIB that can be customized to fit your needs. The discussion that follows will assist in determining whether the exit is needed on your system. For more information on this SAMPLIB member, see “SAMPLIB Member CBRSPUXE” on page 217.

The following library-related information is passed to the exit. None of the library-related information can be modified by the exit.

- Library name
- Library device type
- Library console name
- Library logical type
- Library description

Figure 21 on page 167 lists the fields from the TCDB volume record that are passed to the exit.

VARIABLE	INPUT/OUTPUT
Volume serial number	Input only
Volume attribute	Input only
Volume use attribute	Output/Verified
Storage group name	Output/Verified
Write protection status	Output/Verified
Checkpoint volume indicator	Output/Verified
Volume location code	Input only
Shelf location	Output
Volume owner information	Output
Volume record creation date	Input only
Last entry or eject date	Input only
Last mounted date	Output/Verified
Last written date	Output/Verified
Volume expiration date	Output/Verified
Tape device selection information	Output/Verified

Figure 21. Fields Passed to the Installation Exit—CBRUXENT

The fields that are not marked as input only may be modified by the exit. If it is described as *output*, it may be updated by the installation. If it is further described as *verified*, the contents or format of the field is validity checked before updating the TCDB volume record with information from the installation. Date fields are in ISO format (YYYY-MM-DD).

For a previously unknown volume (no volume record exists), the volume serial number, the default volume use attribute, and the default tape device selection information are passed to the exit. The default volume use attribute is set by the storage administrator using the ISMF library define panel. The default TDSI is derived from the default entry data class, which is also set by the storage administrator using the ISMF library define panel. The default TDSI information is set as follows:

1. The library vision system determines the media type when the cartridge is entered. OAM uses this information to set the TDSI media type.
2. If a default entry data class is supplied in the library definition, the TDSI recording technology is set from the data class.
3. For media type MEDIA1, OAM sets 36-track recording technology if the default volume use attribute is PRIVATE and no recording technology is specified.
4. For media type MEDIA2, OAM always sets 36-track recording technology, since this is the only valid combination.
5. For media types MEDIA3 and MEDIA4, OAM sets 128-track recording technology if the default volume use attribute is PRIVATE and no recording technology is specified.

The remaining volume-related values are set to blanks. A volume record creation date of blanks indicates that the TCDB volume record does not exist.

For a known volume, whatever information existed in the volume record at the time the cartridge was entered is passed to the exit.

The UXEVATTR field can be used to determine if the volume being entered is a physical (non-VTS) volume, a logical volume, or a logical volume being imported.

If the shelf location field for a logical volume being imported indicates STACKED=vol/ser at the beginning of the field, this information is passed to the entry exit and is cleared upon successful entry of the volume. This should be the exported stacked volume that was recorded in the volume record in the TCDB when the logical volume was exported.

If the cartridge entry processing in the manual tape library, was initiated with the manual cartridge entry programming interface, the 16-byte pass through value specified with the EXITINFO keyword on the CBRXLCS FUNC(MCE) macro invocation is passed to the installation exit as an input-only value. Otherwise, UXEEXITI contains binary zeros.

Since cartridge entry processing in a manual tape library can be initiated by the MCE programming interface, or the LIBRARY ENTER command, the tape device selection field UXEMEDIA may be modified by the installation exit. If a media type is not provided prior to the invocation of the exit, and the exit makes no changes, entry processing for this volume fails, but processing for other volumes continues. However, if the exit explicitly modifies the media type and specifies an invalid value, entry processing is discontinued for this and all subsequent volumes. For entry processing in an automated tape library dataset server, UXEMEDIA is an input only field (the media type returned by the vision system is used).

The following values are validity checked upon return from the exit:

- Volume use attribute
 S(scratch) or **P**(private) can be specified.
- Storage group name
 For a volume use attribute of scratch, the storage group name supplied by the exit is ignored. OAM sets the storage group name to ***SCRTCH***.
 For a volume use attribute of private, the storage group name may be set to blanks. A nonblank storage group name is always validity checked, even if the installation exit has not changed the value. The storage group name must be defined in the active SMS configuration as a tape storage group, and the library into which the volume is entered must be one of those in which the storage group resides. If the storage group name does not pass validation, and it is not provided by the installation exit, the cartridge is ejected, but cartridge entry processing continues.
- Write protection status
 Y, **N**, or blank can be specified.
- Checkpoint volume indicator
 Y, **N**, or blank can be specified.
- Last mounted date
 The date specified must be in ISO format (YYYY-MM-DD) or blanks.
- Last written date
 The date specified must be in ISO format (YYYY-MM-DD) or blanks.
- Volume expiration date
 The date specified must be in ISO format (YYYY-MM-DD) or blanks.
- Tape device selection information:

- Tape recording technology may be specified as 18-track, 36-track, 128-track, or 256-track. If it is returned as unknown, and the media type is MEDIA2, 36-track is set.
- For automated cartridge entry, the media type returned by the hardware is always used.
- Compaction may be specified as unknown, none, or compacted.
- Special attribute may be specified as none or read-compatible.
- The following combinations are invalid:
 - 18-track recording technology and MEDIA2 media type
 - 18-track, or 36-track recording technology and MEDIA3 or MEDIA4 media type
 - 128-track or 256-track recording technology and MEDIA1 or MEDIA2 media type
 - Unknown recording technology and MEDIA1, MEDIA3 or MEDIA4 media type and private volume use attribute

Shelf location and owner information are not validity checked.

If the installation exit returns with an invalid value in a volume record field, returns with an invalid return code, or abnormally terminates, cartridge entry processing is discontinued until OAM has been stopped and restarted, or the LIBRARY RESET,CBRUXENT command has been issued to re-enable the cartridge entry installation exit. This is intended to prevent the inadvertent assignment of a private volume to scratch status. For an automated tape library dataserer or for cartridge entry processing in a manual tape library initiated at the library manager console, the volume remains in the insert category.

Note: During cartridge entry processing in an ATLDS, it is not possible to determine which system in an SMS complex will perform cartridge entry processing for any particular occurrence unless the LIBRARY DISABLE,CBRUXENT command has been issued to disable cartridge entry installation exit processing on a system. However, to prevent unpredictable results, the installation should provide the same cartridge entry installation exit for each system in the SMS complex. If the library is being partitioned, each system in the TCDBplex must also run with the same cartridge entry installation exit. The LIBRARY DISABLE,CBRUXENT command can be used to test a new version of the exit by forcing cartridge entry processing to occur on a particular system.

Cartridge Entry Installation Exit Parameter List (CBRUXEPL)

The cartridge entry installation exit (CBRUXENT) is passed by way of register 1, the pointer to a parameter list mapped by CBRUXEPL. Figure 22 on page 170 provides the format of CBRUXEPL.

```

UXEPL      DSECT ,          CBRUXENT PARAMETER LIST
          SPACE 1
*****
*          CARTRIDGE ENTRY INSTALLATION EXIT PARAMETERS          *
*          *
*****
UXEPARM    DS      0D          CBRUXENT PARAMETER SECTION
UXELIB     DS      CL8          LIBRARY NAME
*          (INPUT VARIABLE)
UXELDEV    DS      CL8          LIBRARY DEVICE TYPE
*          (INPUT VARIABLE)
UXELCON    DS      CL8          LIBRARY CONSOLE NAME
*          (INPUT VARIABLE)
UXELTYP    DS      CL1          LIBRARY LOGICAL TYPE
*          'R' FOR AUTOMATED LIBRARY
*          'M' FOR MANUAL LIBRARY
*          (INPUT VARIABLE)
          DS      CL7          RESERVED
UXELDESC   DS      CL120        LIBRARY DESCRIPTION
*          (INPUT VARIABLE)
          DS      CL8          RESERVED
UXEVOLSR   DS      CL6          VOLUME SERIAL NUMBER
*          (INPUT VARIABLE)
UXEVATTR   DS      XL1          VOLUME ATTRIBUTE
*          0 PHYSICAL NON-VTS VOLUME
*          1 LOGICAL VTS VOLUME
*          2 IMPORTED VTS LOGICAL
*          VOLUME
*          (INPUT VARIABLE)
          DS      CL1          RESERVED
UXEUSEA    DS      CL1          VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE
*          'P' FOR PRIVATE
*          'S' FOR SCRATCH
*          (INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
UXEWPROT   DS      CL1          WRITE PROTECTION STATUS
*          'Y' FOR WRITE-PROTECTED
*          'N' FOR NOT WRITE-PROTECTED
*          (INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
UXECHKPT   DS      CL1          CHECKPOINT VOLUME INDICATOR
*          'Y' FOR CHECKPOINT VOLUME
*          'N' FOR NOT CHECKPOINT VOLUME
*          (INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
UXELOC     DS      CL1          VOLUME LOCATION CODE

```

Figure 22. The Cartridge Entry Installation Exit Parameter List—CBRUXEPL (Part 1 of 4)

*			'L' FOR LIBRARY-RESIDENT
*			'S' FOR SHELF-RESIDENT
*			(INPUT VARIABLE)
UXETDSI	DS	0F	TAPE DEVICE SELECTION INFO
UXEREC	DS	XL1	TAPE RECORDING TECHNOLOGY
*			(INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
UXEMEDIA	DS	XL1	MEDIA TYPE
*			(INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE FOR MTL)
*			(INPUT VARIABLE FOR ATLDS)
UXECOMP	DS	XL1	COMPACTION
*			(INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
UXESPEC	DS	XL1	SPECIAL ATTRIBUTE
*			(INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
UXEGROUP	DS	CL8	STORAGE GROUP NAME
*			(INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
UXESHLOC	DS	CL32	SHELF LOCATION
*			(INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
UXEOWNER	DS	CL64	VOLUME OWNER INFORMATION
*			(INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
	DS	CL8	RESERVED
UXECREAT	DS	CL10	VOLUME RECORD CREATION DATE
*			(INPUT VARIABLE)
UXEENTEJ	DS	CL10	LAST ENTRY OR EJECTION DATE
*			(INPUT VARIABLE)
UXEMOUNT	DS	CL10	LAST MOUNTED DATE
*			(INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
UXEWRITE	DS	CL10	LAST WRITTEN DATE
*			(INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
UXEEXPIR	DS	CL10	VOLUME EXPIRATION DATE
*			(INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
	DS	CL10	RESERVED
	DS	CL4	RESERVED
UXEEXITI	DS	CL16	INSTALLATION EXIT INFORMATION
*			(INPUT VARIABLE)
	DS	0D	END OF UXEPL
UXEPLLEN	EQU	*-UXEPL	
	SPACE	1	

*			*
*	RETURN CODES		*
*			*

UXENOCHEG	EQU	0	PERFORM ENTRY AS REQUESTED
*			USING PARAMETER VALUES
*			PASSED IN ON INPUT
UXECHG	EQU	4	PERFORM ENTRY REQUEST BUT
*			NOTE THAT PARAMETER VALUES
*			HAVE CHANGED ON EXIT
UXEFAIL	EQU	8	DENY ENTER REQUEST (FOR AN ATLDS
*			THE VOLUME IS EJECTED FROM THE
*			LIBRARY)
UXEIGNOR	EQU	12	IGNORE ENTER REQUEST (FOR AN ATLDS

Figure 22. The Cartridge Entry Installation Exit Parameter List—CBRUXEPL (Part 2 of 4)

```

*                                     THE VOLUME REMAINS IN THE
*                                     LIBRARY IN THE INSERT CATEGORY)
*
UXEDONT EQU 16                      DO NOT CALL THE CARTRIDGE
*                                     ENTRY INSTALLATION EXIT AGAIN
*                                     AND PERFORM CARTRIDGE ENTRY
*                                     AS REQUESTED USING THE
*                                     PARAMETER VALUES PASSED IN
*                                     ON INPUT
*
      SPACE 1
*****
*                                     *
*      LIBRARY LOGICAL TYPE CONSTANTS                                     *
*                                     *
*****
UXEAUTO EQU  C'R'                    AUTOMATED/REAL LIBRARY
UXEMAN EQU  C'M'                    MANUAL LIBRARY
      SPACE 1
*****
*                                     *
*      VOLUME ATTRIBUTE CONSTANTS                                       *
*                                     *
*****
UXEPHYCL EQU  0                      PHYSICAL NON-VTS VOLUME
UXELOGCL EQU  1                      LOGICAL VTS VOLUME
UXEIMPRT EQU  2                      IMPORTED VTS LOGICAL VOLUME
      SPACE 1
*****
*                                     *
*      USE ATTRIBUTE CONSTANTS                                         *
*                                     *
*****
UXEPRIV EQU  C'P'                    PRIVATE USE ATTRIBUTE
UXESCRT EQU  C'S'                    SCRATCH USE ATTRIBUTE
      SPACE 1
*****
*                                     *
*      TAPE DEVICE SELECTION INFORMATION (TDSI) CONSTANTS             *
*                                     *
*****
UXENOCAR EQU  0                      ZERO IS AN ACCEPTABLE VALUE
*                                     FOR TDSI
*****
*      CONSTANTS TO DEFINE TAPE RECORDING TECHNOLOGY                 *
*****
UXENOREC EQU  0                      RECORDING TECHNOLOGY UNKNOWN
*                                     OR UNSPECIFIED
UXE18TRK EQU  1                      READ/WRITE ON AN 18 TRACK
*                                     DEVICE
UXE36TRK EQU  2                      READ/WRITE ON A 36 TRACK

```

Figure 22. The Cartridge Entry Installation Exit Parameter List—CBRUXEPL (Part 3 of 4)

```

*                               DEVICE
UXE128TRK EQU 3                READ/WRITE ON A 128 TRACK
*                               DEVICE
UXE256TRK EQU 4                READ/WRITE ON A 256 TRACK
*                               DEVICE
*****
*   CONSTANTS TO DEFINE MEDIA TYPE   *
*****
UXENOMED EQU 0                 MEDIA TYPE UNKNOWN OR
*                               UNSPECIFIED
UXEMED1 EQU 1                 MEDIA1 - CARTRIDGE SYSTEM TAPE
UXEMED2 EQU 2                 MEDIA2 - ENHANCED CAPACITY
*                               CARTRIDGE SYSTEM TAPE
UXEMED3 EQU 3                 MEDIA3 - HIGH PERFORMANCE
*                               CARTRIDGE TAPE
UXEMED4 EQU 4                 MEDIA4 - EXTENDED HIGH PERFORMANCE
*                               CARTRIDGE TAPE
*****
*   CONSTANTS TO DEFINE COMPACTION   *
* (THE MEANING OF THE COMPACTION FIELD HAS CHANGED FROM TYPE OF *
* COMPACTION TO COMPACTION YES/NO - UXEIDRC AND UXECOMPT CAN BE *
* USED INTERCHANGEABLY) *
*****
UXECMPNS EQU 0                 COMPACTION UNKNOWN OR NOT SET
UXENOCMP EQU 1                 NO COMPACTION
UXEIDRC EQU 2                 COMPACTION
UXECOMPT EQU 2                 COMPACTION
*****
*   CONSTANTS TO DEFINE SPECIAL ATTRIBUTE *
*****
UXENOSPC EQU 0                 VOLUME HAS NO SPECIAL
*                               ATTRIBUTE
UXERDCOM EQU 1                 VOLUME WILL BE MOUNTED FOR READ
*                               ONLY - ALL READ-COMPATIBLE
*                               DEVICES MAY BE SELECTED
SPACE 1
*****
*   MISCELLANEOUS CONSTANTS *
*****
UXEPLSP EQU 0                 UXEPL SUBPOOL NUMBER
UXEYES EQU C'Y'                YES
UXENO EQU C'N'                 NO
UXEBLANK EQU C' '              BLANK
SPACE 2
MEND ,

```

Figure 22. The Cartridge Entry Installation Exit Parameter List—CBRUXEPL (Part 4 of 4)

OAM obtains storage below the line, from subpool 0, key 5, or subpool 0, user key, for the installation exit parameter list.

Cartridge Entry Installation Exit (CBRUXENT) Return Codes

The following are the return codes that can be passed back from the exit:

Code Meaning

- 0** Perform cartridge entry as requested. No changes have been made to the parameter list (CBRUXEPL). Use what existed at the time the installation exit was called.
- 4** Perform cartridge entry and note that one or more fields in the parameter list (CBRUXEPL) have changed.

- 8 Do not allow this cartridge to be entered. For an automated tape library daserver, OAM schedules the cartridge to be ejected.
- 12 Ignore the cartridge entry request. For an automated tape library daserver, OAM leaves the cartridge in the library (volume left in the insert category).
- 16 Do not call the cartridge entry installation exit again. Perform cartridge entry as requested using the attributes that existed at the time that the exit was originally called.

If an invalid return code is passed back, OAM discontinues cartridge entry processing.

Note: Once OAM is told not to invoke the installation exit again (return code 16) or cartridge entry processing is discontinued, the only way to reactivate the exit is to stop and restart OAM, or to issue the LIBRARY RESET, CBRUXENT command.

Cartridge Entry Installation Exit (CBRUXENT) Usage Requirements

The cartridge entry installation exit must reside in load module CBRUXENT. It is invoked by OAM by way of the MVS LINK macro and must reside in a library in the LNKST concatenation. The installation exit can be executed above or below the 16-megabyte line. If multiple tape libraries are defined to the system, the installation exit must be coded and link-edited on the system as reentrant.

The following characteristics describe the execution environment in which the cartridge entry installation exit is invoked:

- Task mode
- Unlocked
- Noncross memory mode (HASN = PASN = SASN)
- The addressing mode specified when the exit was linkage edited
- Primary ASC mode (not AR mode)
- Key 5, problem state; or a user key, supervisor state

Mapping macro CBRUXEPL must be included by the installation exit.

Cartridge Eject Installation Exit (CBRUXEJC)

This installation exit is called to approve or disapprove a request to eject a volume from a tape library, as a notification call when a logical volume has been exported, and to determine the TCDB volume record disposition and contents for each volume.

The cartridge eject installation exit is supplied by DFSMSrmm. If your installation is not using DFSMSrmm, the supplied exit returns a return code of 16, indicating that the installation exit not be invoked again. For more information, refer to *z/OS DFSMSrmm Guide and Reference*, *z/OS DFSMSrmm Implementation and Customization Guide*, and *z/OS DFSMSrmm Diagnosis Guide*.

If your installation is not using DFSMSrmm and your tape management vendor has not supplied an exit, OAM provides a sample cartridge eject installation exit (CBRSPUXJ) in SAMPLIB that can be customized to fit your needs. The discussion that follows will assist in determining whether the exit is needed on your system. For more information on this SAMPLIB member, see "SAMPLIB Member CBRSPUXJ" on page 224.

The following library-related information is passed to the exit. None of the library-related information may be modified by the installation exit.

- Library name
- Library device type
- Library console name, or blanks
- Library logical type
- Library description

The exit is also informed of the disposition of the volume record (KEEP or PURGE).

Figure 23 lists the fields from the TCDB volume record that are passed to the exit.

VARIABLE	INPUT/OUTPUT
Notification call indicator	Input only
Stacked container	Input only/with export call
Volume serial number	Input only
Storage group name	Output/Verified
Volume use attribute	Output/Verified
Write protection status	Output/Verified
Checkpoint volume indicator	Output/Verified
Volume location code	Input only
Shelf location	Output
Volume owner information	Output
Volume record creation date	Input only
Last entry or eject date	Input only
Last mounted date	Output/Verified
Last written date	Output/Verified
Volume expiration date	Output/Verified
Tape device selection information	Input only

Figure 23. Fields Passed to the Installation Exit—CBRUXEJC

The fields that are not marked as input only may be modified by the exit. If it is described as *output*, it may be updated by the installation. If it is further described as *verified*, the contents or format of the field is validity checked before updating the TCDB volume record with information from the installation. Date fields are in ISO format (YYYY-MM-DD).

The 16-byte pass-through value specified with the EXITINFO keyword on the CBRXLCS FUNC(EJECT) macro invocation is passed to the installation exit as an input-only value. If the eject request has come from any source except CBRXLCS, the field contains binary zeros.

If a volume record disposition of purge (**P**) is returned by the installation exit, the only value retained from the parameter list is the shelf location. This enables the proper shelf location to be displayed upon eject completion.

If a volume record disposition of keep (**K**) is returned by the installation exit, the following values are validity checked:

- Volume use attribute
S (scratch) or **P** (private) can be specified.
- Storage group name
For a volume use attribute of scratch, OAM sets the storage group name to *SCRTCH*. Any name supplied by the exit is ignored. For a volume use attribute of private, the storage group name may be set to blanks. If a nonblank value is provided, the storage group must be part of the active configuration, and it must be a tape storage group.
- Write protection status
Y, **N**, or blank can be specified.
- Checkpoint volume indicator
Y, **N**, or blank can be specified.
- Last mounted date
The date specified must be in ISO format (YYYY-MM-DD) or blanks.
- Last written date
The date specified must be in ISO format (YYYY-MM-DD) or blanks.
- Volume expiration date
The date specified must be in ISO format (YYYY-MM-DD) or blanks.

Shelf location and owner information are not validity checked.

If the installation exit returns with an invalid value in a volume record field, returns with an invalid return code, or abnormally terminates, cartridge eject processing is discontinued until OAM has been stopped and restarted, or the LIBRARY RESET,CBRUXEJC command has been issued to re-enable the cartridge eject installation exit.

Export Completion Processing

Unlike a physical volume, to remove a logical volume with data from a VTS, it cannot simply be ejected from the library.

To remove a logical volume with data from a library, the volume must be physically exported from the library. For more information on the export process, see “Exporting Logical Volumes from a VTS Subsystem” on page 27.

When a logical volume is successfully exported from the library, the cartridge eject installation exit is notified and a notification call indicator (UXJEXPRT) is set in field UXJNCALL. The volume serial number of the stacked container volume on which the logical volume resides can be found in the stacked volume container field, UXJSTKVS. The installation or its tape management system then stores the container information for later use when the logical volume is imported back into a library. If the TCDB is shared across multiple systems but each system has its own tape management system database, the exit can return with RC=12 (IGNORE) if the exported volume is not known to this tape management system. This leaves the volume in the exported category to be processed by a system that “owns” that volume. If appropriate for the installation, the 32-character free form shelf location field in the TCDB volume record (located in the UXJSHLOC field of the cartridge eject installation exit parameter list), can also be used to store the container volume serial number. This would require that the volume record be kept after a logical volume is exported from the library.

If the volume record disposition returned from the exit indicates that the volume record should be kept and the shelf location returned from the exit is blank, LCS automatically stores the container volume serial number in the shelf location field of the volume record as `STACKED=vo/ser`. This information can later be used in the volume not in library installation exit (CBRUXVNL) to assist the installation and operator in importing a logical volume. LCS also stores this information if the exit is not to be invoked, the volume record disposition is `KEEP`, and the shelf location is blank.

This call to the installation exit is a notification call only since the export operation for the logical volume is near completion. This means that the logical volume has already been written to a stacked volume, which will soon be ready for removal. All cartridge eject parameter list fields that can be updated today when a physical volume is ejected from a library can be updated when a logical volume is exported from a library and are subject to the same validity checks.

Cartridge Eject Installation Exit Parameter List (CBRUXJPL)

The cartridge eject installation exit (CBRUXEJC) is passed by way of register 1, the pointer to a parameter list mapped by CBRUXJPL. Figure 24 on page 178 provides the format of CBRUXJPL.

UXJPL	DSECT ,		CBRUXEJC PARAMETER LIST
	SPACE 1		

```

*****
*
*          CARTRIDGE EJECT INSTALLATION EXIT PARAMETERS
*
*****
UXJPARM      DS    0D          CBRUXEJC PARAMETER SECTION
UXJLIB       DS    CL8        LIBRARY NAME
*                               (INPUT VARIABLE)
UXJLDEV      DS    CL8        LIBRARY DEVICE TYPE
*                               (INPUT VARIABLE)
UXJLCON      DS    CL8        LIBRARY CONSOLE NAME
*                               (INPUT VARIABLE)
UXJLTYP      DS    CL1        LIBRARY LOGICAL TYPE
*                               'R' FOR AUTOMATED LIBRARY
*                               'M' FOR MANUAL LIBRARY
*                               (INPUT VARIABLE)
*
*                               DS    CL7        RESERVED
UXJLDESC     DS    CL120      LIBRARY DESCRIPTION
*                               (INPUT VARIABLE)
*
*                               DS    CL8        RESERVED
UXJVDISP     DS    CL1        VOLUME RECORD DISPOSITION
*                               'K' KEEP VOLUME RECORD IN
*                               THE TAPE CONFIGURATION
*                               DATA BASE
*                               'P' PURGE VOLUME RECORD FROM
*                               THE TAPE CONFIGURATION
*                               DATA BASE
*                               (INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
UXJNCALL      DS    XL1        NOTIFICATION CALL INDICATOR
*                               0 EJECT REQUEST FOR PHYSICAL
*                               VOLUME
*                               1 LOGICAL VOLUME SUCCESSFULLY
*                               EXPORTED
*                               (INPUT VARIABLE)
UXJSTKVS     DS    CL6        STACKED CONTAINER
*                               VOLUME ON WHICH EXPORTED
*                               LOGICAL VOLUME RESIDES
*                               (INPUT VARIABLE W/EXPORT CALL)
UXJVOLSR     DS    CL6        VOLUME SERIAL NUMBER
*                               (INPUT VARIABLE)
*
*                               DS    CL2        RESERVED
UXJUSEA      DS    CL1        VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE
*                               'P' FOR PRIVATE
*                               'S' FOR SCRATCH
*                               (INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
UXJWPROT     DS    CL1        WRITE PROTECTION STATUS
*                               'Y' FOR WRITE-PROTECTED
*                               'N' FOR NOT WRITE-PROTECTED
*                               (INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
UXJCHKPT     DS    CL1        CHECKPOINT VOLUME INDICATOR
*                               'Y' FOR CHECKPOINT VOLUME
*                               'N' FOR NOT CHECKPOINT VOLUME
*                               (INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)

```

Figure 24. The Cartridge Eject Installation Exit Parameter List—CBRUXJPL (Part 1 of 4)

UXJLOC	DS	CL1	VOLUME LOCATION CODE
*			'L' FOR LIBRARY-RESIDENT
*			'S' FOR SHELF-RESIDENT
*			(INPUT VARIABLE)
UXJTDSI	DS	0F	TAPE DEVICE SELECTION INFO
UXJREC	DS	XL1	TAPE RECORDING TECHNOLOGY
*			(INPUT VARIABLE)
UXJMEDIA	DS	XL1	MEDIA TYPE
*			(INPUT VARIABLE)
UXJCOMP	DS	XL1	COMPACTION TYPE
*			(INPUT VARIABLE)
UXJSPEC	DS	XL1	SPECIAL ATTRIBUTE
*			(INPUT VARIABLE)
UXJGROUP	DS	CL8	STORAGE GROUP NAME
*			(INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
UXJSHLOC	DS	CL32	SHELF LOCATION
*			(INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
UXJOWNER	DS	CL64	VOLUME OWNER INFORMATION
*			(INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
	DS	CL8	RESERVED
UXJCREAT	DS	CL10	VOLUME RECORD CREATION DATE
*			(INPUT VARIABLE)
UXJENTEJ	DS	CL10	LAST ENTRY OR EJECTION DATE
*			(INPUT VARIABLE)
UXJMOUNT	DS	CL10	LAST MOUNTED DATE
*			(INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
UXJWRITE	DS	CL10	LAST WRITTEN DATE
*			(INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
UXJEXPIR	DS	CL10	VOLUME EXPIRATION DATE
*			(INPUT/OUTPUT VARIABLE)
	DS	CL10	RESERVED
	DS	CL4	RESERVED
UXJEXITI	DS	CL16	INSTALLATION EXIT INFORMATION
*			(INPUT VARIABLE)
			END OF UXJPL
UXJPLEN	EQU	*-UXJPL	
		SPACE 1	

*			*
*	RETURN CODES		*
*			*

UXJNOCHG	EQU	0	PERFORM EJECT/EXPORT AS NOTIFIED
*			USING PARAMETER VALUES
*			PASSED IN ON INPUT
UXJCHG	EQU	4	PERFORM EJECT/EXPORT AS NOTIFIED
*			BUT NOTE THAT PARAMETER VALUES
*			HAVE CHANGED ON EXIT
UXJFAIL	EQU	8	PHYSICAL VOLUME NOT TO BE EJECTED
UXJIGNOR	EQU	12	IGNORE EXPORT COMPLETION PROCESSING
*			FOR THIS LOGICAL VOLUME (VOLUME
*			REMAINS IN EXPORTED CATEGORY)
UXJDONT	EQU	16	DO NOT CALL THE CARTRIDGE
*			EJECT INSTALLATION EXIT AGAIN
*			AND PERFORM CARTRIDGE
*			EJECT/EXPORT AS NOTIFIED
*			USING THE PARAMETER VALUES
*			PASSED IN ON INPUT

Figure 24. The Cartridge Eject Installation Exit Parameter List—CBRUXJPL (Part 2 of 4)

```

SPACE 1
*****
*
*      LIBRARY LOGICAL TYPE CONSTANTS      *
*
*****
UXJAUTO      EQU  C'R'      AUTOMATED/REAL LIBRARY
UXJMAN       EQU  C'M'      MANUAL LIBRARY
SPACE 1
*****
*
*      VOLUME RECORD DISPOSITION (EJECT TYPE) CONSTANTS      *
*
*****
UXJKEEP      EQU  C'K'      KEEP VOLUME RECORD
UXJPURGE     EQU  C'P'      PURGE VOLUME RECORD
SPACE 1
*****
*
*      NOTIFICATION CALL INDICATOR CONSTANTS      *
*****
UXJEJECT     EQU  0      EJECT REQUEST FOR PHYSICAL
*              VOLUME
UXJEXPRT     EQU  1      LOGICAL VOLUME SUCCESSFULLY
*              EXPORTED
SPACE 1
*****
*
*      USE ATTRIBUTE CONSTANTS      *
*
*****
UXJPRIV      EQU  C'P'      PRIVATE USE ATTRIBUTE
UXJSCRT      EQU  C'S'      SCRATCH USE ATTRIBUTE
SPACE 1
*****
*
*      TAPE DEVICE SELECTION INFORMATION (TDSI) CONSTANTS      *
*
*****
UXJNOCAR     EQU  0      ZERO IS AN ACCEPTABLE VALUE
*              FOR TDSI
*****
*      CONSTANTS TO DEFINE TAPE RECORDING TECHNOLOGY      *
*****
UXJNOREC     EQU  0      RECORDING TECHNOLOGY UNKNOWN
*              OR UNSPECIFIED
UXJ18TRK     EQU  1      READ/WRITE ON AN 18 TRACK
*              DEVICE
UXJ36TRK     EQU  2      READ/WRITE ON A 36 TRACK
*              DEVICE
UXJ128TRK    EQU  3      READ/WRITE ON A 128 TRACK
*              DEVICE
UXJ256TRK    EQU  4      READ/WRITE ON A 256 TRACK
*              DEVICE

```

Figure 24. The Cartridge Eject Installation Exit Parameter List—CBRUXJPL (Part 3 of 4)

```

*****
*          CONSTANTS TO DEFINE MEDIA TYPE          *
*****
UXJNOMED      EQU  0          MEDIA TYPE UNKNOWN OR
*                               UNSPECIFIED
UXJMEDI1      EQU  1          MEDIA1 - CARTRIDGE SYSTEM TAPE
UXJMEDI2      EQU  2          MEDIA2 - ENHANCED CAPACITY
*                               CARTRIDGE SYSTEM TAPE
UXJMEDI3      EQU  3          MEDIA3 - HIGH PERFORMANCE
*                               CARTRIDGE TAPE
UXJMEDI4      EQU  4          MEDIA4 - EXTENDED HIGH PERFORMANCE
*                               CARTRIDGE TAPE
*****
*          CONSTANTS TO DEFINE COMPACTION (THE MEANING OF THE *
*          COMPACTION FIELD HAS CHANGED FROM TYPE OF COMPACTION *
*          TO COMPACTION YES/NO - UXJIDRC AND UXJCOMPT *
*          CAN BE USED INTERCHANGEABLY) *
*****
UXJCMPSN      EQU  0          COMPACTION UNKNOWN OR NOT SET
UXJNOCMP      EQU  1          NO COMPACTION
UXJCOMPT      EQU  2          COMPACTION
UXJIDRC       EQU  2          COMPACTION
*****
*          CONSTANTS TO DEFINE SPECIAL ATTRIBUTE          *
*****
UXJNOSPC      EQU  0          VOLUME HAS NO SPECIAL
*                               ATTRIBUTE
UXJRDCOM      EQU  1          VOLUME WILL BE MOUNTED FOR READ
*                               ONLY - ALL READ-COMPATIBLE
*                               DEVICES MAY BE SELECTED
*
*          SPACE 1
*****
*
*          MISCELLANEOUS CONSTANTS
*
*****
UXJPLSP       EQU  0          UXJPL SUBPOOL NUMBER
UXJYES        EQU  C'Y'      YES
UXJNO         EQU  C'N'      NO
UXJBLANK      EQU  C' '      BLANK
*          SPACE 2
*          MEND ,

```

Figure 24. The Cartridge Eject Installation Exit Parameter List—CBRUXJPL (Part 4 of 4)

OAM obtains storage below the line, from subpool 0, key 5, for the installation exit parameter list.

Cartridge Eject Installation Exit (CBRUXEJC) Return Codes

The following are the return codes that can be passed back to OAM:

Code Meaning

- 0** Perform cartridge ejection as requested. No changes have been made to the parameter list (CBRUXJPL). Use the attributes that existed at the time the installation exit was originally called.
- 4** Perform cartridge ejection and note that one or more fields in the parameter list (CBRUXJPL) have changed.
- 8** Do not allow this cartridge to be ejected.
- 12** Ignore export completion processing for this logical volume. OAM leaves the volume in the library in the exported category.

- 16** Do not call the cartridge eject installation exit again and perform cartridge ejection as requested using the attributes that existed at the time the installation exit was originally called.

Note: If an invalid return code is passed back, OAM discontinues cartridge eject processing.

Cartridge Eject Installation Exit (CBRUXEJC) Usage Requirements

The cartridge eject installation exit must reside in load module CBRUXEJC. It is invoked by OAM through the MVS LINK macro and must reside in a library in the LNKLST concatenation. The installation exit can be executed above or below the 16-megabyte line. If multiple tape libraries are defined to the system, the installation exit must be coded and linkedited on the system as reentrant.

Note: Once OAM is told not to invoke the installation exit again (return code 16) or cartridge ejection processing is discontinued, the only way to reactivate the exit is to stop and restart OAM, or issue the LIBRARY RESET, CBRUXEJC command.

The following characteristics describe the execution environment in which the cartridge eject installation exit is invoked:

- Task mode
- Unlocked
- Noncross memory mode (HASN = PASN = SASN)
- The addressing mode specified when the exit was linkage edited
- Primary ASC mode (not AR mode)
- Key 5, problem state

Mapping macro CBRUXJPL must be included by the installation exit.

Volume Not in Library Installation Exit (CBRUXVNL)

The volume not in library installation exit (CBRUXVNL) receives control under a variety of circumstances and error conditions. The primary purpose of the exit is to give the installation the opportunity to enter a volume into a tape library during job step setup, device allocation, and library mount processing.

The volume not in library installation exit is supplied by DFSMSrmm. If your installation is not using DFSMSrmm, the supplied exit returns a return code of 16, indicating that the installation exit not be invoked again. For more information, refer to *z/OS DFSMSrmm Guide and Reference*, *z/OS DFSMSrmm Implementation and Customization Guide*, and *z/OS DFSMSrmm Diagnosis Guide*.

If your installation is not using DFSMSrmm and your tape management vendor has not supplied an exit, OAM provides a sample volume not in library installation exit (CBRSPUXV) in SAMPLIB that can be customized to fit your needs. The discussion that follows will assist in determining whether the exit is needed on your system. For more information on this SAMPLIB member, see "SAMPLIB Member CBRSPUXV" on page 231.

Note: For an MTL, the LIBRARY ENTER command can be used to allow an operator to enter the desired volume into the MTL.

Invoking the Installation Exit

This installation exit can be invoked during the following processing steps:

- Job step setup
- Device allocation
- Library mount

The following conditions can cause invocation of the exit:

- If some of the tape volumes in a multivolume tape data set are not resident in a tape library, the request would fail, because all the tape volumes belonging to the same multivolume data set must reside in the same tape library. The exit can be used to direct the missing tape volumes back into the library.

Note: In a multivolume data set request, during job step setup and device allocation processing, the exit is only invoked when the first volume of the data set does not reside in a tape library. However, later during library mount processing, the exit is invoked each time a multivolume data set volume is needed but does not reside in the tape library. The exit can wait until library mount processing to get the additional volumes entered on an “as needed” basis, or if it is known that specific applications always use the entire multivolume data set, the exit, during job step setup, can instruct the operator to enter all volumes of the multivolume data set. The choice is determined by the exit. However, keep in mind that the exit is only passed one volume serial number at a time, and is not passed all the volumes in the multivolume data set, nor is it passed any data set information.

- If none of the tape volumes reside in a tape library, or the tape volumes were previously resident in a tape library but are currently shelf-resident, they are considered non-SMS managed tape volumes and are allocated to a tape drive of the appropriate device type outside a tape library. The exit can be used to enter the tape volumes into a tape library.

For example, if the only 3490E tape drives that an installation has are inside a tape library, then whenever a shelf-resident enhanced capacity cartridge system tape is requested, it must be entered into a tape library containing a 3490E tape drive. The exit can be used to direct the enhanced capacity cartridge system tape into a library that is capable of handling the request.

Note: Prior to invoking the exit during job step setup, OAM does not know if there are any stand-alone drives capable of handling the volume. The exit is simply invoked to report that the tape volume is not in a tape library, and it allows the exit to decide whether the volume should reside in a tape library, and if so, which tape library should be used.

- If a tape volume is ejected from a tape library between job step setup and library mount processing, the request requiring the tape volume would fail. The exit can reenter the required tape volume into the specified tape library to prevent the job from failing.

However, if a logical volume is being exported from a tape library dataset server between job setup and library mount processing, the mount request immediately fails, since an export operation is not immediate.

Note: The input to the exit at device allocation does not identify the library to which the tape volume must return, because the information was erased when the volume was ejected from the library. Therefore, the exit must rely upon other sources to determine which library should receive the missing volume.

- If tape volumes are not library-resident in a tape library and are physically located in a remote area, requests for these volumes are allocated to stand-alone tape drives and are delayed until the volumes are retrieved and mounted on the stand-alone tape drives. While jobs are waiting for these tape volumes to be mounted, the system resources allocated to these tape volumes are unavailable for use by other jobs. CBRUXVNL can identify this condition and interact with the installation's tape management system to determine the best course of action to alleviate this waste of time and resource.
- Since the ATLDs has a *finite* tape cartridge capacity, infrequently used tape volumes may be ejected until their next scheduled use. These tape cartridges should be reentered in advance of reuse to avoid job processing delays, but since this is not always possible, this exit can be used to identify and correct this condition, preventing job failures.

Note: With JES3, the job step notification occurs prior to the job being scheduled for execution. Therefore, missing tapes can be located and entered into the tape library well in advance of usage.

Processing Options for the Installation Exit

The following options are available to the exit:

- Continue without entering the cartridge into a library.
- Locate the requested volume and enter it into a tape library.
- Cancel the request immediately.
- Indicate that the exit not be invoked again.

Logical Volume Considerations

If a logical volume is requested to be mounted, it is important that the installation exit also display the exported stacked volume that contains the logical volume. If the OAM supplied default is being used, this information is automatically displayed if the shelf location in the TCDB volume record is `STACKED=volser`.

Entering Tape Volumes in the Library Using the Installation Exit

To enter tape volumes into the library under the direction of the exit, the following conditions must both be met:

- OAM must be up and running on at least one of the systems sharing the tape library dataser in the SMS complex or TCDBplex.
- OAM must have been started since the most recent IPL on the system running the requested job.

When entering a volume into a tape library under the direction of CBRUXVNL, you must set the volume use attribute to "PRIVATE"; otherwise, the request fails. This is because only specific volume requests are handled by the exit and a specific volume request for a scratch tape is not permitted. Volume use attributes are set by default from the ISMF Library Definition or by the cartridge entry installation exit.

Perform the following steps when you enter a volume into a tape library:

- Locate the requested volume using the tape management system inventory.
- Enter the volume into a tape library (or if indicated, the specific tape library). For a logical volume, enter the required exported stacked volume and initiate a single volume import at the library manager console.
- Reply to the outstanding WTOR at the MVS console.

Note: If the exit is waiting for an extended period for human intervention to finish processing, this causes delays for other jobs that may be processing at the

same time or that may need the same resources as the job for which the exit is active. If the volume is not entered into the library within 15 minutes, CBR3646D is issued indicating that the operator should retry or cancel the job request.

Possible Error Conditions

The installation may introduce a number of error conditions in the process of re-entering a cartridge into a library under the control of the volume not in library installation exit. The following errors may cause immediate or eventual job failures:

- Entering a volume into the wrong library (prompts the issuance of message CBR3646D)
- Setting the wrong storage group name in the cartridge entry installation exit
- Setting incorrect tape device selection information in the cartridge entry installation exit
- Setting the scratch volume use attribute in the cartridge entry installation exit incorrectly
- Inadvertently requesting a volume with a level of TDSI information not recognized by the system

Note: If the operator enters the volume into the wrong library, or OAM is not aware of the entry of the volume within 15 minutes, OAM issues the CBR3646D message. This allows the operator the opportunity to correct the situation and retry or cancel the operation.

The best way to avoid these errors is to not eject the volumes in the first place. If this is not practical, then the tape volume record should be kept by using the KEEP option of the LIBRARY EJECT operator command or through the ISMF Mountable Tape Volume line operator when the volume is ejected. This preserves the information about the tape volume so that the Cartridge Entry Installation Exit does not have to rebuild the tape volume record.

If a job on a lower-level system inadvertently requests a volume whose media type or recording technology is not understood at this software level, the exit can cancel the job, returning a return code 8, or it can proceed with entering the volume. If the exit proceeds and enters the volume, once it is successfully entered on an up-level system and the exit returns with a return code 4 (indicating retry), the job on the down-level system fails during job step setup on subsequent retrieval of the volume record. If the host detects that it is an up-level volume (if the TCDB volume record exists), the call to the exit is bypassed and the job is canceled.

Job Step Setup

CBRUXVNL is invoked during job step setup processing to provide an opportunity to enter the tape volume into any tape library chosen. The call to the exit is made when the first or only volume serial number specified on the DD statement or dynamic allocation request is not an online DASD volume and no record exists in the TCDB for the volume, or a record exists but indicates the volume is shelf-resident. Shelf-resident means the tape volume was ejected from the tape library with the KEEP option, which retained the TCDB record. For new data sets, this occurs just prior to calling the ACS routines; for old data sets, this occurs when the TCDB search completes prior to device allocation.

Figure 25 on page 186 lists the contents of the exit input when a volume record does not exist in the TCDB.

Variable	Meaning
UXNVOLSR	Volume serial number
UXNWHERE	1 indicates job step setup processing
UXNERROR	1 indicates no TCDB record

Figure 25. CBRUXVNL Input During Job Step Setup—No TCDB Volume Record

Figure 26 lists the contents of the exit input when a shelf-resident tape volume record exists in the TCDB.

Variable	Meaning
UXNVOLSR	Volume serial number
UXNWHERE	1 indicates job step setup processing
UXNERROR	2 indicates volume is shelf-resident
UXNGROUP	Storage group name
UXNUSEA	Volume use attribute
UXNWPROT	Write protection status
UXNCHKPT	Checkpoint volume indicator
UXNLOC	Volume location code
UXNSHLOC	Shelf location
UXNOWNER	Volume owner information
UXNCREAT	Volume record creation date
UXNENTEJ	Last entry or ejection date
UXNMOUNT	Last mounted date
UXNWRITE	Last written date
UXNEXPIR	Volume expiration date
UXNTDSI	Tape device selection information

Figure 26. CBRUXVNL Input During Job Step Setup—Existing TCDB Volume Record

Device Allocation

If a tape volume is inadvertently ejected from a tape library between job step setup processing and device allocation, the exit is invoked during device allocation to let the installation reenter the volume. This invocation occurs for the first or only volume of the request when there is no TCDB record or the volume is shelf-resident. The requested volume should be entered into the tape library in which it was resident during job step setup.

Note: Although there are circumstances in which the job may run successfully if the volume is entered into any tape library, it is recommended that the volume be entered into the library in which it was resident during job step setup.

Figure 27 on page 187 lists the contents of the exit input when a volume record does not exist in the TCDB.

Variable	Meaning
UXNVOLSR	Volume serial number
UXNWHERE	2 indicates device allocation processing
UXNERROR	1 indicates no TCDB record

Figure 27. CBRUXVNL Input During Device Allocation—No TCDB Volume Record

Figure 28 lists the contents of the exit input when a shelf-resident tape volume record exists in the TCDB.

Variable	Meaning
UXNVOLSR	Volume serial number
UXNWHERE	2 indicates device allocation processing
UXNERROR	2 indicates volume is shelf-resident
UXNGROUP	Storage group name
UXNUSEA	Volume use attribute
UXNWPROT	Write protection status
UXNCHKPT	Checkpoint volume indicator
UXNLOC	Volume location code
UXNSHLOC	Shelf location
UXNOWNER	Volume owner information
UXNCREAT	Volume record creation date
UXNENTEJ	Last entry or ejection date
UXNMOUNT	Last mounted date
UXNWRITE	Last written date
UXNEXPIR	Volume expiration date
UXNTDSI	Tape device selection information

Figure 28. CBRUXVNL Input During Device Allocation—Existing TCDB Volume Record

Library Mount Processing

If a tape volume is inadvertently ejected from a tape library between device allocation and library mount processing, the exit is invoked during library mount processing to let the installation reenter the volume. This exit is only invoked when the tape library fails a mount request because the tape volume is being ejected or cannot be found in the tape library. To prevent the CBR3646D message from being issued, the requested volume must be reentered into the tape library in which it was resident when the tape drive was allocated.

Figure 29 on page 188 lists the contents of the exit input when the volume record does not exist in the TCDB.

Variable	Meaning
UXNVOLSR	Volume serial number
UXNWHERE	3 indicates library mount processing
UXNERROR	1 indicates no volume record in the TCDB
UXNLIB	Library name to which the volume must be re-entered (target)
UXNLDEV	Library device type of the target library
UXNLCON	Library console name of the target library
UXNLTYP	Library logical type of the target library
UXNLDESC	Library description of the target library

Figure 29. CBRUXVNL Input Library Mount Processing—No TCDB Volume Record

Figure 30 lists the contents of the exit input when the volume record still exists in the TCDB.

Volume Not in Library Installation Exit Parameter List (CBRUXNPL)

Variable	Meaning
UXNVOLSR	Volume serial number
UXNWHERE	3 indicates library mount processing
UXNERROR	4 indicates volume is being ejected 3 indicates volume is in a different library 2 indicates volume is shelf-resident
UXNLIB	Library in which the volume must be re-entered (target)
UXNLDEV	Library device type of the target library
UXNLCON	Library console name of the target library
UXNLTYP	Library logical type of the target library
UXNLDESC	Library description of the target library
UXNLIBRS	Library in which the volume currently resides (might not be the same library as the target resident library)
UXNGROUP	Storage group name
UXNUSEA	Volume use attribute
UXNWPROT	Write protection status
UXNCHKPT	Checkpoint volume indicator
UXNLOC	Volume location code
UXNSHLOC	Shelf location
UXNOWNER	Volume owner information
UXNCREAT	Volume record creation date
UXNENTEJ	Last entry or ejection date
UXNMOUNT	Last mounted date
UXNWRITE	Last written date
UXNEXPIR	Volume expiration date
UXNTDSI	Tape device selection information

Figure 30. CBRUXVNL Input Library Mount Processing—Existing TCDB Volume Record

The volume not in library installation exit (CBRUXVNL) is passed by way of register 1, the pointer to a parameter list mapped by CBRUXNPL.

The installation exit, CBRUXVNL, cannot update the tape volume record. All fields in the volume not in library installation exit parameter list (CBRUXNPL) are input only. Figure 31 provides the format of CBRUXNPL.

```

UXNPL          DSECT ,          VOLUME NOT IN LIBRARY PARAMETER LIST
*****
*
* VOLUME NOT IN LIBRARY PARAMETERS: ALL FIELDS ARE INPUT ONLY AND      *
*                               CAN NOT BE MODIFIED BY                  *
*                               INSTALLATION EXIT                       *
*
*****
UXNPARM DS      0D              CBRUXVNL PARAMETER SECTION
UXNWHERE DS     XL1             WHERE THE ERROR WAS FOUND
*                               1 JOB STEP SETUP PROCESSING
*                               2 DEVICE ALLOCATION PROCESSING
*                               3 LIBRARY MOUNT PROCESSING
UXNERROR DS     XL1             ERROR INDICATOR
*                               1 VOLUME RECORD NOT IN TCDB
*                               2 VOLUME IS SHELF RESIDENT
*                               3 VOLUME IN DIFFERENT LIBRARY
*                               4 VOLUME EJECT PENDING AND
*                               EJECT CANNOT BE CANCELED
*
*                               DS      CL6              RESERVED
UXNLIB DS      CL8              LIBRARY NAME IN WHICH THE VOLUME SHOULD
*                               BE ENTERED OR BLANKS
UXNLDEV DS      CL8              LIBRARY DEVICE TYPE OR BLANKS
UXNLCON DS      CL8              LIBRARY CONSOLE NAME OR BLANKS
UXNLTYP DS      CL1              LIBRARY LOGICAL TYPE OR BLANK
*                               'R' FOR AUTOMATED LIBRARY
*                               'M' FOR MANUAL LIBRARY
*
*                               DS      CL7              RESERVED
UXNLDESC DS     CL120            LIBRARY DESCRIPTION OR BLANKS
UXNVOLSR DS     CL6              VOLUME SERIAL NUMBER
*                               DS      CL2              RESERVED
UXNLIBRS DS     CL8              LIBRARY NAME IN WHICH THE VOLUME
*                               RESIDES OR "SHELF" OR BLANKS
UXNUSEA DS      CL1              VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE OR BLANKS
*                               'P' FOR PRIVATE
*                               'S' FOR SCRATCH
UXNWPROT DS     CL1              WRITE PROTECTION STATUS OR BLANK
*                               'Y' FOR WRITE-PROTECTED
*                               'N' FOR NOT WRITE-PROTECTED
UXNCHKPT DS     CL1              CHECKPOINT VOLUME INDICATOR OR BLANK
*                               'Y' FOR CHECKPOINT VOLUME
*                               'N' FOR NOT CHECKPOINT VOLUME
UXNLOC DS      CL1              VOLUME LOCATION OR BLANK
*                               'L' FOR LIBRARY-RESIDENT
*                               'S' FOR SHELF-RESIDENT
UXNTDSI DS      0F              TAPE DEVICE SELECTION INFORMATION
UXNREC DS      XL1              TAPE RECORDING TECHNOLOGY OR ZERO
UXNMEDIA DS     XL1              MEDIA TYPE OR ZERO
UXNCOMP DS     XL1              COMPACTION TYPE OR ZERO
UXNSPEC DS     XL1              SPECIAL ATTRIBUTE OR ZERO

```

Figure 31. Volume Not in Library Installation Exit Parameter List—CBRUXNPL (Part 1 of 4)

```

UXNGROUP DS    CL8      STORAGE GROUP NAME OR BLANKS
UXNSHLOC DS    CL32     SHELF LOCATION OR BLANKS
UXNOWNER DS    CL64     VOLUME OWNER INFORMATION OR BLANKS
          DS    CL8      RESERVED
UXNCREAT DS    CL10     VOLUME RECORD CREATION DATE YYYY-MM-DD
*          OR BLANKS
UXNENTEJ DS    CL10     LAST ENTRY OR EJECTION DATE YYYY-MM-DD
*          OR BLANKS
UXNMOUNT DS    CL10     LAST MOUNTED DATE          YYYY-MM-DD
*          OR BLANKS
UXNWRITE DS    CL10     LAST WRITTEN DATE          YYYY-MM-DD
*          OR BLANKS
UXNEXPIR DS    CL10     VOLUME EXPIRATION DATE      YYYY-MM-DD
*          OR BLANKS
          DS    CL10     RESERVED
          DS    CL4      RESERVED
UXNEND  DS    0D        END OF CBRUXVNL PARAMETER SECTION
          SPACE 1
UXNPLEN EQU    * - UXNPL LENGTH OF THE PARAMETER LIST
*****
*
*          RETURN CODES
*
*****
UXNNORML EQU    0        PERFORM NORMAL PROCESSING
UXNRETRY EQU    4        RETRY THE FAILING OPERATION
UXNFAIL  EQU    8        CANCEL THE JOB STEP
UXNDONT  EQU    16       DO NOT CALL THE VOLUME NOT IN LIBRARY
*          INSTALLATION EXIT AGAIN AND PERFORM
*          NORMAL PROCESSING
          SPACE 1
*****
*
*          WHERE CONSTANTS (UXNWHERE)
*
*****
UXNSETUP EQU    1        DURING JOB SETUP PROCESSING
UXNALLOC EQU    2        DURING DEVICE ALLOCATION PROCESSING
UXNLBMNT EQU    3        DURING LIBRARY MOUNT PROCESSING
          SPACE 1
*****
*
*          ERROR CONSTANTS (UXNERROR)
*
*****
UXNNTCDB EQU    1        VOLUME RECORD NOT IN TCDB
UXNSHELF EQU    2        VOLUME IS SHELF RESIDENT
UXNDFRNT EQU    3        VOLUME IN DIFFERENT LIBRARY
UXNEJECT EQU    4        VOLUME EJECT PENDING AND
*          EJECT CANNOT BE CANCELED
          SPACE 1

```

Figure 31. Volume Not in Library Installation Exit Parameter List—CBRUXNPL (Part 2 of 4)

```

*****
*
*          LIBRARY LOGICAL TYPE CONSTANTS (UXNLTY)
*
*****
UXNAUTO EQU  C'R'          AUTOMATED/REAL LIBRARY
UXNMAN  EQU  C'M'          MANUAL LIBRARY
SPACE 1
*****
*
*          USE ATTRIBUTE CONSTANTS (UXNUSEA)
*
*****
UXNPRIV EQU  C'P'          PRIVATE USE ATTRIBUTE
UXNSCRT EQU  C'S'          SCRATCH USE ATTRIBUTE
SPACE 1
*****
*
*          LOCATION CONSTANTS (UXNLOC)
*
*****
UXNLBRY EQU  C'L'          LIBRARY RESIDENT
UXNSHLF EQU  C'S'          SHELF RESIDENT
SPACE 1
*****
*
*          TAPE DEVICE SELECTION INFORMATION (TDSI) CONSTANTS
*
*****
*          CONSTANTS TO DEFINE TAPE RECORDING TECHNOLOGY
*
*****
UXNNOREC EQU  0          RECORDING TECHNOLOGY UNKNOWN OR
*                          UNSPECIFIED
UXN18TRK EQU  1          READ/WRITE ON AN 18 TRACK DEVICE
UXN36TRK EQU  2          READ/WRITE ON A 36 TRACK DEVICE
UXN128TRK EQU  3          READ/WRITE ON A 128 TRACK DEVICE
UXN256TRK EQU  4          READ/WRITE ON A 256 TRACK DEVICE
*****
*          CONSTANTS TO DEFINE MEDIA TYPE
*
*****
UXNNOMED EQU  0          MEDIA TYPE UNKNOWN OR UNSPECIFIED
UXNMED1 EQU  1          MEDIA1 - CARTRIDGE SYSTEM TAPE
UXNMED2 EQU  2          MEDIA2 - ENHANCED CAPACITY CARTRIDGE
*                          SYSTEM TAPE
UXNMED3 EQU  3          MEDIA3 - HIGH PERFORMANCE CARTRIDGE TAPE
UXNMED4 EQU  4          MEDIA4 - EXTENDED HIGH PERFORMANCE CARTRIDGE
*                          TAPE
*****
*          CONSTANTS TO DEFINE COMPACTION
*
*****
UXNCOMPNS EQU  0          COMPACTION UNKNOWN OR NOT SET
UXNNOCMP EQU  1          NO COMPACTION
UXNIDRC EQU  2          COMPACTION

```

Figure 31. Volume Not in Library Installation Exit Parameter List—CBRUXNPL (Part 3 of 4)

```

*****
*          CONSTANTS TO DEFINE SPECIAL ATTRIBUTE          *
*****
UXNNOSPC EQU   0          VOLUME HAS NO SPECIAL ATTRIBUTE
UXNRDCOM EQU   1          VOLUME WILL BE MOUNTED FOR READ ONLY -
*                          ALL READ-COMPATIBLE DEVICES MAY BE
*                          SELECTED
*
SPACE 1
*****
*
*          MISCELLANEOUS CONSTANTS          *
*
*****
UXNPLSP EQU   230          SUBPOOL NUMBER
UXNYES EQU   C'Y'          YES
UXNNO EQU   C'N'          NO
UXNBLANK EQU   C' '          BLANK

```

Figure 31. Volume Not in Library Installation Exit Parameter List—CBRUXNPL (Part 4 of 4)

Storage is obtained below the line, from subpool 230, user key, for the installation exit parameter list.

Volume Not in Library Installation Exit Return Codes for Job Step Processing

The following return codes can be passed back to OAM from CBRUXVNL for job step setup processing:

Code Meaning

- 0** Perform normal processing.
The system allocates a stand-alone tape drive capable of handling the requested volume. If the required device type is not installed, the job or dynamic allocation fails.
- 4** Retry the failing operation.
Locate the requested tape volume, using the tape management system inventory or other sources, and enter it into any tape library connected to the system on which the requesting job is running.

The system rereads the tape volume record for the specified tape volume. If the tape volume record exists in the TCDB and the record indicates that the volume is library-resident, the system proceeds with normal library-resident tape volume processing. If the tape volume record exists but indicates that the tape volume is still shelf-resident, the CBR3646D message is issued to allow the operator to retry or cancel the job request.

Note: CBRUXVNL is mostly used for old data sets, but new data sets can specify a specific volume serial number. When this occurs and the volume is entered into a tape library at the direction of CBRUXVNL, the library name is subsequently made available to the ACS routines. The ACS routines must assign a storage class and a tape storage group to the request; otherwise, the request fails.
- 8** Cancel.
The job step or dynamic allocation is canceled.
- 16** Do not call the exit again.

CBRUXVNL is not invoked again until reactivated. The system allocates a stand-alone tape drive. If there is no stand-alone tape drive capable of handling the tape volume request, the job or dynamic allocation fails.

Volume Not in Library Installation Exit Return Codes for Device Allocation

The following return codes can be passed back to OAM from CBRUXVNL for device allocation processing:

Code	Meaning
-------------	----------------

- | | |
|-----------|---|
| 0 | Perform normal processing.

The job step or dynamic allocation fails. |
| 4 | Retry the failing operation.

Locate the requested tape volume, using the tape management system inventory or other sources, and enter it into the specific tape library in which it was previously resident when the job step was set up.

The system rereads the tape volume record for the specified tape volume. If the tape volume record exists in the TCDB and the record indicates that the volume is library-resident, the system proceeds with normal library-resident tape volume processing. If the tape volume record does not exist or the tape volume record exists but indicates that the tape volume is still shelf-resident, the CBR3646D message is issued allowing the operator to retry or cancel the job request. |
| 8 | Cancel.

The system cancels the job step or dynamic allocation. |
| 16 | Do not call the exit again.

The job step or dynamic allocation fails. The installation exit is not called again until it is reactivated. |

Volume Not in Library Installation Exit Return Codes for Library Mount Processing

The following return codes can be passed back to OAM from CBRUXVNL for library mount processing:

Code	Meaning
-------------	----------------

- | | |
|----------|---|
| 0 | Perform normal processing.

The job step or dynamic allocation is failed. |
| 4 | Retry the failing operation.

Locate the requested volume, using the tape management system inventory or other sources, and reenter the volume into the tape library identified by the UXNLIB field of the installation exit parameter list.

If the tape volume record still indicates that the tape volume is shelf-resident or the volume was entered into the wrong library, the CBR3646D message is issued. This message indicates which library the CBRUXVNL volume should be entered into and prompts the operator to retry or cancel the job request. |
| 8 | Cancel the job step.

The job step or dynamic allocation fails. |

16 Do not call the exit again.

The job step or dynamic allocation fails. The exit is not called again.

If the installation returns a return code 16, indicating that the exit not be invoked again, or the installation exit is deactivated as the result of an abnormal termination or an invalid return code, the exit can be reactivated by stopping and restarting the OAM address space, or by issuing the LIBRARY RESET, CBRUXVNL command.

Volume Not in Library Installation Exit (CBRUXVNL) Usage Requirements

The volume not in library installation exit must reside in load module CBRUXVNL. It is invoked by way of the MVS LINK macro and must reside in a library in the LNKST concatenation.

Since the volume not in library installation exit (CBRUXVNL) receives control through an MVS LINK macro, the addressing mode on entry to the exit may be either 24-bit or 31-bit addressing mode. Also, the installation exit can be executed above or below the 16-megabyte line. The addressing mode and the residency mode are determined by whatever AMODE (for addressing mode) or RMODE (for residency mode) characteristics are assigned to the load module when it is created by the MVS Linkage Editor and Loader or the MVS Program Binder.

Because the exit may be invoked in a key other than the job key:

- All storage dynamically acquired by the exit must be obtained from subpool 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, or 241.
- The exit must be written as a reentrant program and the resulting load module must be link-edited on the system as REENTRANT.

The following characteristics describe the execution environment in which the volume not in library installation exit is invoked:

- Task mode (not SRB mode)
- Unlocked
- Noncross memory mode (HASN = PASN = SASN)
- The 24-bit or 31-bit addressing mode depending on AMODE characteristics assigned when load module was created
- APF-authorized load module or in an APF-authorized library
- Primary ASC mode (not AR mode)
- Enabled for I/O external interrupts
- PSW key of the caller might not match the job key
- State of the caller

Mapping macro CBRUXNVL must be included by the installation exit.

Appendix A. SAMPLIB Members

This appendix contains sample library members that you can modify to suit your own business requirements.

Sample Library Members

This appendix contains information on sample library members for the following:

- CBRSP LCS, which is an example program that invokes the CBRXLCS programming interface.
- CBRUXCUA, CBRUXENT, CBRUXEJC, and CBRUXVNL installation exits. For more information on the specific installation exit that is illustrated in each of these SAMPLIB members, refer to “Chapter 7. Installation Exits” on page 159.
- CBRAPROC that is used to create member OAM in SYS1.PROCLIB.
- CBRSPSIM, CBRSP PIM, CBRSPSXP, and CBRSP PXP, which are four JCL samples that can be used for creating import or export list volumes.

The installation exits, as supplied by DFSMSrmm, are linked in SMP/E as reentrant. Installation exits CBRUXCUA and CBRUXVNL must be coded and link-edited on the system as reentrant. If multiple tape libraries are defined to the system, CBRUXENT and CBRUXEJC must also be coded and link-edited on the system as reentrant. To demonstrate this, and to provide multiple library support, the sample jobs for CBRUXCUA, CBRUXVNL, CBRUXENT, and CBRUXEJC are all coded as reentrant. The linkage editor parameters found in the prolog are used for each sample job. If you choose to code the installation exits as nonreentrant, you need to create the JCL to link-edit the exits as nonreentrant.

Note: These SAMPLIB members are available to you as part of the z/OS product. Refer to them as examples for exits you may write to suit your own storage administration plan objectives.

Additionally, there are four sample JCL examples that are provided to illustrate the format and required files for both the import and export list volume. The JCL is commented with the expected format of each of the required files followed by some sample data, if applicable. The four JCL samples, shipped in SYS1.SAMPLIB, are:

- CBRSPSIM for import list volume (scratch request), see “SAMPLIB Member CBRSPSIM” on page 246
- CBRSP PIM for import list volume (private request), see “SAMPLIB Member CBRSP PIM” on page 248
- CBRSPSXP for export list volume (scratch request), see “SAMPLIB Member CBRSPSXP” on page 251
- CBRSP PXP for export list volume (private request), see “SAMPLIB Member CBRSP PXP” on page 254

Both scratch and private examples are provided; however, in order to allocate a scratch volume in a target library in an installation with multiple libraries, the ACS routines need to direct the device allocation for the scratch mount to a specific library. To accomplish this, use an exclusive storage group for each library. This ensures that based on the storage group selected by the ACS routines, the target library for the export or import operation will be the library selected for the scratch mount request. This is necessary since the import or export list volume must reside in the same library as the logical volumes intended for import or export processing.

To initiate the import or export operation from within the JCL, the specific volser examples invoke the CBRXLCS FUNC=EXPORT or FUNC=IMPORT functions using the CBRSPCLS sample program.

SAMPLIB Member CBRSPCLS

This SAMPLIB member is an example of a program that uses the CBRXLCS macro interface.

```

SPLCS      TITLE 'CBRSPCLS - SAMPLE INSTALLATION MANAGEMENT PACKAGE'
CBRSPCLS START 0                      SAMPLE INSTALLATION MGMT PACKAGE
          SPACE 2
**** START OF SPECIFICATIONS ****
*
*   MODULE NAME:          CBRSPCLS
*
*   DESCRIPTIVE NAME:    SAMPLE INSTALLATION MANAGEMENT PACKAGE FOR
*                       AUTOMATED TAPE LIBRARIES
*
*   FUNCTION:
*   MODULE CBRSPCLS IS PART OF THE SAMPLE INSTALLATION
*   MANAGEMENT PACKAGE FOR AUTOMATED TAPE LIBRARIES. IT HANDLES
*   REQUESTS ENTERED VIA AN INPUT TRANSACTION DATASET:
*       1. EJECT A VOLUME FROM A LIBRARY
*       2. CHANGE A VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE TO SCRATCH
*       3. CHANGE A VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE TO PRIVATE
*       4. INITIATE AN IMPORT OPERATION
*       5. INITIATE AN EXPORT OPERATION
*       6. PERFORM CARTRIDGE ENTRY INTO AN MTL (MCE)
*
*   CBRSPCLS DEMONSTRATES THE USE OF THE FOLLOWING FUNCTIONS:
*       1. THE "QUERY VOLUME RESIDENCE" FUNCTION OF CBRXLCS, USED
*          TO DETERMINE WHETHER A VOLUME RESIDES IN A LIBRARY.
*       2. THE "CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE" FUNCTION OF CBRXLCS, USED
*          TO CHANGE THE USE ATTRIBUTE OF A VOLUME TO SCRATCH OR
*          TO PRIVATE.
*       3. THE "EJECT" FUNCTION OF CBRXLCS, USED TO EJECT A VOLUME
*          FROM A LIBRARY, USING EITHER THE CONVENIENCE OUTPUT
*          STATION OR THE HIGH CAPACITY OUTPUT STATION.
*       4. THE ABILITY TO PASS 16 CHARACTERS OF INFORMATION TO
*          THE CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE INSTALLATION EXIT AND TO THE
*          CARTRIDGE EJECT INSTALLATION EXIT. THE CHARACTER STRING
*          PASSED HERE CONTAINS AN AUTHORIZATION CODE, SO THAT THE
*          EXIT CAN DETERMINE THE SOURCE OF THE REQUEST.
*       5. THE "IMPORT" FUNCTION OF CBRXLCS INITIATES AN IMPORT
*          OPERATION FOR A VOLUME OR VOLUMES INTO A LIBRARY OR
*          TO CANCEL AN IMPORT OPERATION THAT'S ALREADY IN
*          PROCESS.
*       6. THE "EXPORT" FUNCTION OF CBRXLCS INITIATES AN EXPORT
*          OPERATION FOR A VOLUME OR VOLUMES FROM A LIBRARY OR
*          TO CANCEL AN EXPORT OPERATION THAT'S ALREADY IN
*          PROCESS.
*       7. THE "MCE" FUNCTION ILLUSTRATES ENTERING A VOLUME
*          INTO AN MTL (MANUAL TAPE LIBRARY).
*

```

Figure 32. Sample Installation Management Package—CBRSPCLS (Part 1 of 14)

```

*
*  NOTES:
*
*  CHARACTER CODE:      EBCDIC
*
*  RESTRICTIONS:        NONE
*
*  REGISTER CONVENTIONS:
*    R0 - STANDARD LINKAGE REGISTER
*        - REASON CODE REGISTER
*        - WORK REGISTER
*    R1 - STANDARD LINKAGE REGISTER
*        - WORK REGISTER
*    R2 - NOT USED
*    R3 - NOT USED
*    R4 - NOT USED
*    R5 - NOT USED
*    R6 - NOT USED
*    R7 - NOT USED
*    R8 - NOT USED
*    R9 - LINKAGE REGISTER TO INTERNAL SUBROUTINES
*    R10 - NOT USED
*    R11 - NOT USED
*    R12 - CBRSPCLS BASE REGISTER
*    R13 - STANDARD LINKAGE REGISTER
*        - SAVE AREA ADDRESS
*    R14 - STANDARD LINKAGE REGISTER
*        - RETURN POINT ADDRESS
*        - WORK REGISTER
*    R15 - STANDARD LINKAGE REGISTER
*        - ENTRY POINT ADDRESS
*        - RETURN CODE REGISTER
*        - WORK REGISTER
*
*  MODULE TYPE:          CONTROL SECTION
*
*  PROCESSOR:            ASSEMBLER H
*
*  ATTRIBUTES:
*
*    LOCATION:           JOB PACK AREA
*    STATE:              PROBLEM
*    AMODE:              24
*    RMODE:              24
*    KEY:                8
*    MODE:               TASK
*    SERIALIZATION:      UNLOCKED
*    TYPE:               SERIALLY REUSABLE
*    AUTHORIZATION:      APF AUTHORIZED
*
*  LINKAGE:              STANDARD LINKAGE CONVENTIONS
*
*  CALLING SEQUENCE:
*    CBRSPCLS IS INVOKED DIRECTLY FROM A JCL EXEC STATEMENT.
*

```

Figure 32. Sample Installation Management Package—CBRSPCLS (Part 2 of 14)

```

* INPUT:
* INPUT TRANSACTIONS ARE CONTAINED IN DATASET INDD. EACH
* TRANSACTION CONTAINS THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION:
* 1. A TRANSACTION CODE, WHICH INDICATES THE REQUESTED
* FUNCTION: EJECT, CHANGE THE USE ATTRIBUTE TO SCRATCH,
* CHANGE THE USE ATTRIBUTE TO PRIVATE, IMPORT,
* EXPORT, OR MCE
* 2. A TRANSACTION MODIFIER, WHICH INDICATES WHETHER TO
* VERIFY THAT THE VOLUME RESIDES IN A LIBRARY BEFORE
* ATTEMPTING THE FUNCTION IN THE TRANSACTION CODE. NOTE
* THAT CUA MAY BE PERFORMED ON A SHELF-RESIDENT VOLUME,
* PROVIDED THAT THERE IS A TAPE VOLUME RECORD IN THE
* TAPE CONFIGURATION DATA BASE, AND THEREFORE THAT THE
* MODIFIER MAY BE USED TO PREVENT THIS. THE TRANSACTION
* MODIFIER IS IGNORED FOR MCE PROCESSING.
* 3. THE VOLUME SERIAL NUMBER.
* 4. FOR A REQUEST TO CHANGE THE USE ATTRIBUTE TO PRIVATE,
* THE STORAGE GROUP NAME. THIS MAY BE SUPPLIED AS
* BLANKS. THE CUA INSTALLATION EXIT MAY THEN SUPPLY A
* NON-BLANK VALUE OR LEAVE THE BLANK STORAGE GROUP NAME
* UNCHANGED.
* 5. FOR AN EJECT REQUEST, A CODE TO SELECT EITHER THE
* CONVENIENCE OUTPUT STATION OR THE HIGH CAPACITY OUTPUT
* STATION.
* 6. FOR AN IMPORT REQUEST, A CODE TO INITIATE A CANCEL
* TO TERMINATE THE IMPORT FUNCTION.
* 7. FOR AN EXPORT REQUEST, A CODE TO INITIATE A CANCEL
* TO TERMINATE THE EXPORT FUNCTION.
* 8. FOR A MANUAL CARTRIDGE ENTRY REQUEST:
* A. THE REQUIRED EIGHT CHARACTER LIBRARY NAME INTO
* WHICH THE VOLUME IS TO BE ENTERED, LEFT-JUSTIFIED
* IN THE FIELD AND PADDED ON THE RIGHT WITH
* BLANKS.
* B. A REQUIRED ONE CHARACTER SEPARATOR (BLANK)
* C. AN OPTIONAL 1 CHARACTER MEDIA TYPE, SPECIFIED AS
* 1 - F.
*
* OUTPUT:
* A MESSAGE DESCRIBING THE RESULTS OF PROCESSING IS BUILT
* FOLLOWING THE INPUT TRANSACTION. THE COMBINED TRANSACTION
* AND MESSAGE ARE THEN WRITTEN TO DATASET OUTDD AND TO THE
* TAPE POOL AND TAPE LIBRARY CONSOLE DESTINATIONS.
*
* EXIT NORMAL:
* RETURN TO THE CALLER WITH RETURN CODE ZERO.
*
* EXIT ERROR: NONE
*
* EXTERNAL REFERENCES:
*
* ROUTINES: NONE
*
* CONTROL BLOCKS: NONE
*
* EXECUTABLE MACROS:
* CBRXLCS
* CLOSE
* GET
* OPEN
* PUT
* RETURN
* SAVE

```

Figure 32. Sample Installation Management Package—CBRSPLCS (Part 3 of 14)

```

*      WTO                                                    *
*                                                                *
*      MESSAGES:  NONE                                        *
*                                                                *
*      ABEND CODES:  NONE                                    *
*                                                                *
**** END OF SPECIFICATIONS *****
      TITLE 'STANDARD REGISTER DEFINITIONS'
*-----*
*                                                                *
*      STANDARD REGISTER DEFINITIONS                        *
*                                                                *
*-----*
R0      EQU  0          GENERAL REGISTER 0
R1      EQU  1          GENERAL REGISTER 1
R2      EQU  2          GENERAL REGISTER 2
R3      EQU  3          GENERAL REGISTER 3
R4      EQU  4          GENERAL REGISTER 4
R5      EQU  5          GENERAL REGISTER 5
R6      EQU  6          GENERAL REGISTER 6
R7      EQU  7          GENERAL REGISTER 7
R8      EQU  8          GENERAL REGISTER 8
R9      EQU  9          GENERAL REGISTER 9
R10     EQU 10          GENERAL REGISTER 10
R11     EQU 11          GENERAL REGISTER 11
R12     EQU 12          GENERAL REGISTER 12
R13     EQU 13          GENERAL REGISTER 13
R14     EQU 14          GENERAL REGISTER 14
R15     EQU 15          GENERAL REGISTER 15
      TITLE 'CBRLCSPL - LCS EXTERNAL SERVICES PARAMETER LIST'
CBRLCSPL ,              LCS EXTERNAL SERVICES PARM LIST
      TITLE 'CBRSPLCS - SAMPLE INSTALLATION MANAGEMENT PACKAGE'
*-----*
*                                                                *
*      CBRSPCLCS ENTRY POINT                                *
*                                                                *
*-----*
CBRSPLCS CSECT ,              SAMPLE INSTALLATION MGMT PACKAGE
CBRSPLCS AMODE 24
CBRSPLCS RMODE 24
      SAVE (14,12),,          SAVE CALLER'S REGISTERS AND      +
      'CBRSPLCS&SYSDATE      MARK ENTRY POINT
      LR  R12,R15             COPY ENTRY POINT ADDRESS
      USING CBRSPCLCS,R12     CBRSPCLCS BASE REGISTER
      ST  R13,SAVE+4          BACKWARD CHAIN SAVE AREAS
      LA  R0,SAVE             CBRSPCLCS SAVE AREA ADDRESS
      ST  R0,8(,R13)          FORWARD CHAIN SAVE AREAS
      LR  R13,R0              SET CBRSPCLCS SAVE AREA ADDRESS
      SPACE 2
*-----*
*                                                                *
*      OPEN BOTH DATA CONTROL BLOCKS                      *
*                                                                *
*-----*
      OPEN (INDCB,(INPUT),OUTDCB,(OUTPUT)) OPEN BOTH DCBS
      SPACE 2
*-----*
*                                                                *
*      READ AND PROCESS THE INPUT TRANSACTION REQUEST DATASET
*                                                                *
*-----*

```

Figure 32. Sample Installation Management Package—CBRSPLCS (Part 4 of 14)

```

*-----*
CUA1000 DS    0H
        GET   INDCB,TRANSACTION    READ FIRST/NEXT TRANSACTION
        EJECT ,
*-----*
*
*       VERIFY THAT THE VOLUME RESIDES IN A LIBRARY, IF REQUESTED
*
*-----*
        CLI   TRANCODE,TRANMCE      MANUAL CARTRIDGE ENTRY?
        BE    CUA6000                YES, SKIP VERIFY
        CLI   TRANMOD,TRANVER        VERIFY VOLUME IN LIBRARY?
        BNE   CUA2000                NO. GO CHECK REQUEST TYPE
        BAL   R9,CUACOPY              COPY MODEL TO LCS PARAMETER LIST
        CBRXLCS TYPE=TAPE,           QUERY VOLUME RESIDENCE CALL      +
                FUNC=QVR,              +
                VOLUME=TRANVOL,        +
                MF=(E,LCSLIST)
        LTR   R15,R15                VOLUME IN LIBRARY?
        BZ    CUA2000                YES. GO CHECK REQUEST TYPE
        C     R15,=A(LCSWARN)         WARNING RETURN CODE?
        BNE   CUA1100                NO. FORMAT ERROR MESSAGE
        C     R0,=A(LCSFNLRS)         VOLUME NOT LIBRARY RESIDENT?
        BNE   CUA1100                NO. FORMAT ERROR MESSAGE
        MVC   TRANMSG,=CL45'NOT IN LIBRARY' SET TRANS RESPONSE
        BAL   R9,CUARESP              WRITE TRANSACTION RESPONSE
        B     CUA1000                GET NEXT TRANSACTION
CUA1100 DS    0H
        MVC   ERRFUNC,=CL5'QVR'      SET ERROR FUNCTION
        BAL   R9,CUACODES             FORMAT RETURN AND REASON CODES
        BAL   R9,CUARESP              WRITE TRANSACTION RESPONSE
        B     CUA1000                GET NEXT TRANSACTION
        EJECT ,
*-----*
*
*       EJECT A VOLUME FROM ITS LIBRARY, IF REQUESTED
*
*-----*
CUA2000 DS    0H
        CLI   TRANCODE,TRANEJECT     EJECT VOLUME FROM LIBRARY?
        BNE   CUA3000                NO. CHECK CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE
        BAL   R9,CUACOPY              COPY MODEL TO LCS PARAMETER LIST
        CLI   TRANDEST,TRANBULK       BULK EJECT REQUEST?
        BNE   CUA2100                NO. ISSUE EJECT REQUEST
        CBRXLCS BULKEJECT=YES,        EJECT TO BULK OUTPUT STATION    +
                MF=(M,LCSLIST)
CUA2100 DS    0H
        CBRXLCS TYPE=TAPE,           EJECT VOLUME FROM LIBRARY      +
                FUNC=EJECT,              +
                VOLUME=TRANVOL,          +
                EXITINFO=PASSTHRU,      +
                MF=(E,LCSLIST)
        LTR   R15,R15                EJECT SUCCESSFULLY SCHEDULED?
        BNZ   CUA2200                NO. FORMAT ERROR MESSAGE
        MVC   TRANMSG,=CL45'EJECT SCHEDULED' SET TRANS RESPONSE
        BAL   R9,CUARESP              WRITE TRANSACTION RESPONSE
        B     CUA1000                GET NEXT TRANSACTION
CUA2200 DS    0H
        MVC   ERRFUNC,=CL5'EJECT'    SET ERROR FUNCTION
        BAL   R9,CUACODES             FORMAT RETURN AND REASON CODES
        BAL   R9,CUARESP              WRITE TRANSACTION RESPONSE
        B     CUA1000                GET NEXT TRANSACTION
        EJECT ,

```

Figure 32. Sample Installation Management Package—CBRSPLCS (Part 5 of 14)

```

*-----*
*
*      CHANGE THE VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE, IF REQUESTED
*
*-----*
CUA3000 DS      0H
        CLI      TRANCOD,TRANCHGP      CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE TO PRIVATE?
        BNE      CUA3100                NO. CHECK CHANGE TO SCRATCH
        BAL      R9,CUACOPY              COPY MODEL TO LCS PARAMETER LIST
        CBRXLCS  USE=PRIVATE,            CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE TO PRIVATE  +
                        GRPNAME=TRANSGRP, STORAGE GROUP NAME OR BLANKS  +
                        MF=(M,LCSLIST)
        B        CUA3200                GO INVOKE LCS EXTERNAL SERVICES
CUA3100 DS      0H
        CLI      TRANCOD,TRANCHGS      CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE TO SCRATCH?
        BNE      CUA4000                NO. INVALID TRANSACTION CODE
        BAL      R9,CUACOPY              COPY MODEL TO LCS PARAMETER LIST
        CBRXLCS  USE=SCRATCH,            CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE TO SCRATCH  +
                        MF=(M,LCSLIST)
CUA3200 DS      0H
        CBRXLCS  TYPE=TAPE,              CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE CALL      +
                        FUNC=CUA,          +
                        VOLUME=TRANVOL,    +
                        EXITINFO=PASSTHRU, +
                        MF=(E,LCSLIST)
        LTR      R15,R15                USE ATTRIBUTE CHANGED?
        BNZ      CUA3300                NO. FORMAT ERROR MESSAGE
        MVC      TRANMSG,=CL45'USE ATTRIBUTE CHANGED' SET TRANS RESPONSE
        BAL      R9,CUARESP              WRITE TRANSACTION RESPONSE
        B        CUA1000                GET NEXT TRANSACTION
CUA3300 DS      0H
        C        R15,=A(LCSWARN)         WARNING RETURN CODE?
        BNE      CUA3500                NO. FORMAT ERROR MESSAGE
        C        R0,=A(LCSWVAS)          VOLUME ALREADY SCRATCH?
        BE       CUA3400                YES. FORMAT NOT CHANGED MESSAGE
        C        R0,=A(LCSWVAP)          VOLUME ALREADY PRIVATE?
        BNE      CUA3500                NO. FORMAT ERROR MESSAGE
CUA3400 DS      0H
        MVC      TRANMSG,=CL45'USE ATTRIBUTE NOT CHANGED' SET TRANS RESP
        BAL      R9,CUARESP              WRITE TRANSACTION RESPONSE
        B        CUA1000                GET NEXT TRANSACTION
CUA3500 DS      0H
        MVC      ERRFUNC,=CL5'CUA'      SET ERROR FUNCTION
        BAL      R9,CUACODES             FORMAT RETURN AND REASON CODES
        BAL      R9,CUARESP              WRITE TRANSACTION RESPONSE
        B        CUA1000                GET NEXT TRANSACTION
        EJECT ,

```

Figure 32. Sample Installation Management Package—CBRSPLCS (Part 6 of 14)

```

*-----*
*
*      IMPORT FUNCTION
*
*-----*
CUA4000 DS      0H
        CLI      TRANCOD,TRANIMP      IMPORT VOL INTO A VTS LIBRARY
        BNE      CUA5000              NO. CHECK FOR EXPORT
        BAL      R9,CUACOPY            COPY MODEL TO LCS PARM LIST
        CLI      TRANCOP,TRANCAN      CANCEL IMPORT REQUEST?
        BNE      CUA4100              IMPORT VOL INTO A VTS LIBRARY
        CBRXLCS  TYPE=TAPE,           CANCEL IMPORT REQUEST
                FUNC=IMPORT,
                VOLUME=TRANVOL,
                CANCEL=YES,
                MF=(E,LCSLIST)
        LTR      R15,R15              IMPORT CANCEL SUCCESSFULLY?
        BNZ      CUA4200              NO. FORMAT ERROR MESSAGE
        MVC      TRANMSG,=CL45'IMPORT CANCELED' SET TRANS RESPONSE
        BAL      R9,CUARESP            WRITE TRANSACTION RESPONSE
        B        CUA1000              GET NEXT TRANSACTION
CUA4100 DS      0H
        CBRXLCS  TYPE=TAPE,           IMPORT VOLUME INTO A VTS LIBRARY
                FUNC=IMPORT,
                VOLUME=TRANVOL,
                MF=(E,LCSLIST)
        LTR      R15,R15              IMPORT SUCCESSFULLY?
        BNZ      CUA4200              NO. FORMAT ERROR MESSAGE
        MVC      TRANMSG,=CL45'IMPORT SCHEDULED' SET TRANS RESPONSE
        BAL      R9,CUARESP            WRITE TRANSACTION RESPONSE
        B        CUA1000              GET NEXT TRANSACTION
CUA4200 DS      0H
        MVC      ERRFUNC,=CL5'IMP'    SET ERROR FUNCTION
        BAL      R9,CUACODES           FORMAT RETURN AND REASON CODES
        BAL      R9,CUARESP            WRITE TRANSACTION RESPONSE
        B        CUA1000              GET NEXT TRANSACTION
        EJECT ,
*-----*
*
*      EXPORT FUNCTION
*
*-----*
CUA5000 DS      0H
        CLI      TRANCOD,TRANEXP      EXPORT VOLUME FROM LIBRARY?
        BNE      CUA6000              NO. CHECK FOR MCE
        BAL      R9,CUACOPY            COPY MODEL TO LCS PARM LIST
        CLI      TRANCOP,TRANCAN      CANCEL EXPORT REQUEST
        BNE      CUA5100              EXPORT VOL FROM A VTS LIBRARY
        CBRXLCS  TYPE=TAPE,           CANCEL EXPORT REQUEST
                FUNC=EXPORT,
                VOLUME=TRANVOL,
                CANCEL=YES,
                MF=(E,LCSLIST)
        LTR      R15,R15              EXPORT CANCEL SUCCESSFULLY?
        BNZ      CUA5200              NO. FORMAT ERROR MESSAGE
        MVC      TRANMSG,=CL45'EXPORT CANCELED' SET TRANS RESPONSE
        BAL      R9,CUARESP            WRITE TRANSACTION RESPONSE

```

Figure 32. Sample Installation Management Package—CBRSPLCS (Part 7 of 14)


```

CUA5100  B    CUA1000          GET NEXT TRANSACTION
        DS    0H
        CBRXLCS  TYPE=TAPE,      EXPORT VOLUME FROM A VTS LIBRARY  +
        FUNC=EXPORT,            +
        VOLUME=TRANVOL,        +
        MF=(E,LCSLIST)
        LTR    R15,R15          EXPORT SUCCESSFULLY?
        BNZ    CUA5200          NO. FORMAT ERROR MESSAGE
        MVC    TRANMSG,=CL45'EXPORT SCHEDULED'  SET TRANS RESPONSE
        BAL    R9,CUARESP       WRITE TRANSACTION RESPONSE
        B      CUA1000          GET NEXT TRANSACTION
CUA5200  DS    0H
        MVC    ERRFUNC,=CL5'EXP' SET ERROR FUNCTION
        BAL    R9,CUACODES      FORMAT RETURN AND REASON CODES
        BAL    R9,CUARESP       WRITE TRANSACTION RESPONSE
        B      CUA1000          GET NEXT TRANSACTION
        EJECT ,

*-----*
*                                           *
*      MCE (MANUAL CARTRIDGE ENTRY)      *
*                                           *
*      THIS ROUTINE WAS CREATED WITH THE MTL CHANGES  *
*-----*
CUA6000  DS    0H
        CLI    TRANCOD,TRANMCE  MANUAL CARTRIDGE ENTRY?
        BNE    CUA7000          NO, INVALID TRANSACTION CODE
        BAL    R9,GETVOLST      GET STORAGE FOR VOLUMELIST

*
*      *-----*
*      *      INITIALIZE VOLUME LIST HEADER      *
*      *-----*
        L      R2,MCEADDR        ADDRESS OF LCSV FOR MCE
        USING  LCSV,R2          ADDRESSIBILITY TO LCSV

*
        LA     R8,LCSVEND+LCSMLEND  CALC LEN OF HEADER & VOLIST
        ST     R8,LCSVBUF          STORE INTO LCSV

*
        LA     R8,1              NUMBER OF VOLUMES IN LIST
        ST     R8,LCSVCNT         STORE INTO LCSV

        LA     R8,LCSMLEND        LEN OF SINGLE ENTRY VOLUME LST
        ST     R8,LCSVLEN         STORE INTO LCSV

*
        LA     R8,LCSVEND(,R2)    ADDR OF BEGINNING OF VOL LIST
        ST     R8,LCSVADDR        STORE INTO LCSV

*
*      *-----*
*      *      INITIALIZE VOLUME LIST ITSELF      *
*      *-----*
        LR     R3,R8              ADDRESS OF VOLUME LIST
        USING  LCSMLIST,R3        ADDRESSIBILITY TO LCSV

*
        MVC    LCSMVOL(6),TRANVOL  VOLSER TO LIST

```

Figure 32. Sample Installation Management Package—CBRSPLCS (Part 8 of 14)

```

*
*      *-----*
*      *   PROCESS THE MEDIA TYPE   *
*      *-----*
*      CLI  TRANMEDT,X'40'          MEDIA TYPE NOT SPECIFIED?
*      BE    CUA6100                BR IF NOT SPEC'D, WILL DEFAULT
*
*      TM    TRANMEDT,X'F0'          IS HIGH NIBBLE ALL ONES?
*      BNO    CUA6800                BR IF NO, CANT BE NUMERIC
*
*      MVC    LCSMMED(1),TRANMEDT    MOVE MEDIATYPE CHAR INTO VLIST
*      NI      LCSMMED,X'0F'          ZERO HIGH NIBBLE
*
CUA6100 EQU *
BAL     R9,CUACOPY                  COPY MODEL TO LCS PARM LIST
*
CBRXLCS TYPE=TAPE,                  MCE REQUEST                      +
        FUNC=MCE,                    MANUAL CARTRIDGE ENTRY          +
        LIBNAME=TRANLIBN,            LIBRARY NAME PASSED TO US      +
        VOLLIST=(R2),                PTR TO VOLUME HEADER & LIST    +
        MF=(E,LCSLIST)
*
DROP    R2
DROP    R3
*
LTR     R15,R15                     SUCCESSFUL ENTRY?
BNZ     CUA6200                     NO. FORMAT ERROR MESSAGE
*
MVC     TRANMSG,=CL45'VOLUME        SUCCESSFULLY ENTERED'
B       CUA6900                     COMPLETE PROCESSING
*
CUA6200 EQU *
C       R15,=A(LCSWARN)             WARNING RETURN CODE?
BNE     CUA6500                     NO. FORMAT ERROR MESSAGE
C       R0,=A(LCSWSTMP)             SCRATCH THRESHOLD MSG FAILURE?
BE      CUA6300                     YES, FORMAT MESSAGE
C       R0,=A(LCSWSCNU)             LIB SCRATCH COUNT NOT UPDATED
BNE     CUA6500                     NO. FORMAT ERROR MESSAGE
*
MVC     TRANMSG,=CL45'LIBRARY SCRATCH COUNT NOT UPDATED'
B       CUA6900                     COMPLETE PROCESSING
*
CUA6300 EQU *
MVC     TRANMSG,=CL45'SCRATCH THRESHOLD PROCESSING FAILURE'
B       CUA6900                     COMPLETE PROCESSING

```

Figure 32. Sample Installation Management Package—CBRSPLCS (Part 9 of 14)

```

*
CUA6500 EQU *
MVC ERRFUNC,=CL5'MCE' SET ERROR FUNCTION
BAL R9,CUACODES FORMAT RETURN AND REASON CODES
B CUA6900 COMPLETE PROCESSING

*
CUA6800 EQU *
MVC TRANMSG,=CL45'INVALID MEDIATYPE SPECIFIED'

*
CUA6900 EQU *
BAL R9,CUARESP WRITE TRANSACTION RESPONSE
BAL R9,RELVOLST RELEASE THE GOTTEN VOLUME LIST
B CUA1000 GET NEXT TRANSACTION

*
EJECT ,

*-----*
*
* INVALID TRANSACTION CODE REQUESTED
*
*-----*
CUA7000 DS 0H
MVC TRANMSG,=CL45'INVALID TRANSACTION CODE' SET TRANS RESP
BAL R9,CUARESP WRITE TRANSACTION RESPONSE
B CUA1000 GET NEXT TRANSACTION
EJECT ,

*-----*
*
* CLEAN UP AND RETURN TO THE CALLER
*
*-----*
EXIT DS 0H
CLOSE (INDCB,,OUTDCB) CLOSE BOTH DATA CONTROL BLOCKS
L R13,SAVE+4 RESTORE CALLER'S SAVE AREA ADDRESS
RETURN (14,12), RESTORE CALLER'S REGISTERS, THEN +
RC=0 RETURN TO CALLER
EJECT ,

*-----*
*
* COPY THE MODEL LCS PARAMETER LIST TO THE ACTUAL LIST
*
*-----*
CUACOPY DS 0H
LA R0,LCSMODEL ADDRESS OF SOURCE
LA R1,LCSPLENG LENGTH OF SOURCE
LA R14,LCSLIST ADDRESS OF TARGET
LR R15,R1 LENGTH OF TARGET
MVCL R14,R0 COPY MODEL TO LCS PARAMETER LIST

```

Figure 32. Sample Installation Management Package—CBRSPLCS (Part 10 of 14)

```

BR      R9                      RETURN TO CALLER
EJECT ,

*-----*
*
*      FORMAT THE RETURN AND REASON CODES FOR PRINTING
*
*-----*
CUACODES DS      0H
CVD      R15,PRETCODE          CONVERT TO PACKED DECIMAL
UNPK     ZRETCODE,PRETCODE     CONVERT TO ZONED DECIMAL
OI       ZRETCODE+3,X'F0'      CORRECT FINAL ZONE
CVD      R0,PRSNCODE           CONVERT TO PACKED DECIMAL
UNPK     ZRSNCODE,PRSNCODE     CONVERT TO ZONED DECIMAL
OI       ZRSNCODE+3,X'F0'      CORRECT FINAL ZONE
MVC      TRANMSG,RETREAS       MOVE TEXT TO RESPONSE AREA
BR      R9                      RETURN TO CALLER
EJECT ,

*-----*
*
*      GET AND ZERO OUT THE VOLUME LIST FOR THE MCE CALL
*
*-----*
GETVOLST EQU      *
LA      R8,LCSVEND+LCSMLEND    CALC AMOUNT OF STORAGE TO GET
*
      STORAGE OBTAIN,          INVOKE STORAGE MACRO          +
      LENGTH=(R8),            AMOUNT TO GET                  +
      ADDR=MCEADDR,          VARIABLE FOR RETURNED ADDRESS   +
      COND=YES,              CONDITIONAL SO DON'T ABEND       +
      RTCD=STGRTCD           RETURN CODE VARIABLE
*
      LTR      R15,R15          VIRTUAL STORAGE ACQUIRED?
      BNZ     GETFAILD          BR, IF STORAGE NOT ACQUIRED
*
      LA      R2,1(,R1)         POINT 1 PAST BEGIN OF STORAGE
      LR      R3,R8             LENGTH TO CLEAR
      BCTR    R8,0              LENGTH - 1
      LR      R4,R1             POINT TO BEGINNING OF STORAGE
      SR      R5,R5             ZERO OUT
*
      MVCL    R2,R4             CLEAR THE AUTODATA AREA
*
      BR      R9                RETURN TO CALLER OF GETVOLST
*
GETFAILD EQU      *
MVC      TRANMSG,=CL45'OBTAIN FAILURE' SET TRANS RESPONSE
RELFAILD EQU      *
BAL      R9,STGCODES           FORMAT RETURN AND REASON CODES
BAL      R9,CUARESP            WRITE TRANSACTION RESPONSE
B        CUA1000               GET NEXT TRANSACTION
EJECT ,

*-----*
*
*      RELEASE THE VOLUME LIST FOR THE MCE CALL
*
*-----*

```

Figure 32. Sample Installation Management Package—CBRSPLCS (Part 11 of 14)

```

RELVOLST EQU  *
*
*      L      R2,MCEADDR      ADDRESS OF LCSV
*      USING LCSV,R2          ADDRESSIBILITY TO LCSV
*
*      L      R2,LCSVBUFF      LENGTH OF RELEASE
*
*      STORAGE RELEASE,        INVOKE STORAGE MACRO          +
*      LENGTH=(R2),            AMOUNT TO RELEASE            +
*      ADDR=MCEADDR,           VARIABLE FOR RETURNED ADDRESS +
*      COND=YES,                CONDITIONAL RELEASE          +
*      RTCD=STGRTCD            RETURN CODE VARIABLE
*
*      LTR     R15,R15          VIRTUAL STORAGE ACQUIRED?
*      BZR     R9               BR, IF STORAGE RELEASED
*
*      MVC     TRANMSG,=CL45'RELEASE FAILURE' SET TRANS RESPONSE
*      B        RELFAILED
*
*      DROP    R2
*      EJECT ,
*-----*
*
*      FORMAT FAILED STORAGE RETURN AND REASON CODES FOR PRINTING
*
*-----*
STGCODES DS    0H
*      L      R15,STGRTCD      GET FAILING RETURN CODE
*      CVD     R15,STGRCDCEC   CONVERT TO PACKED DECIMAL
*
UNPK     ZRETCD,STGRCDCEC      CONVERT TO ZONED DECIMAL
*      OI      ZRETCD+3,X'F0'  CORRECT FINAL ZONE
*      CVD     R0,PRSNCODE      CONVERT TO PACKED DECIMAL
*      MVC     TRANMSG,RETREAS  MOVE TEXT TO RESPONSE AREA
*      BR      R9               RETURN TO CALLER
*      EJECT ,
*-----*
*
*      WRITE THE TRANSACTION RESPONSE
*
*-----*
CUARESP  DS    0H
*      PUT     OUTDCB,TRANSACT  WRITE TRANSACTION RESPONSE
*      WTO     TEXT=TRANLEN,     WRITE RESPONSE TO OPERATOR      +
*      ROUTCDE=(3,5)            SEND TO TAPE POOL, TAPE LIBRARY
*      BR      R9               RETURN TO CALLER
*      TITLE   'CONSTANTS AND WORK AREAS'
*-----*
*
*      CONSTANTS AND WORK AREAS
*
*-----*
*      LTORG ,                  LITERAL CONSTANTS
*      EJECT ,
*-----*
*
*      DATA CONTROL BLOCKS
*
*-----*
INDCB    DCB    DDNAME=INDD,    INPUT: TRANSACTION REQUESTS  +
*      DSORG=PS,                +
*      MACRF=GM,                +
*      EODAD=EXIT

```

Figure 32. Sample Installation Management Package—CBRSPLCS (Part 12 of 14)

```

      EJECT ,
OUTDCB DCB DDNAME=OUTDD,      OUTPUT:  RESULT NOTIFICATION      +
      MACRF=PM,                +
      DSORG=PS,                +
      RECFM=FB,                +
      LRECL=80,                +
      BLKSIZE=400
      EJECT ,
*-----*
*
*      CBRSPCLS TRANSACTION RECORD AND RESPONSE AREA
*
*-----*
TRANLEN DC    AL2(L'TRANSACT)    LENGTH FOR WTO TEXT
TRANSACT DS    0CL80            TRANSACTION RECORD
TRANCODE DS    CL1              TRANSACTION CODE
TRANEJCT EQU   C'E'              EJECT VOLUME FROM LIBRARY
TRANCHGP EQU   C'P'              CHANGE VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE TO
*                                PRIVATE
TRANCHGS EQU   C'S'              CHANGE VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE TO
*                                SCRATCH
TRANIMP EQU    C'I'              IMPORT FUNCTION
TRANEXP EQU    C'X'              EXPORT FUNCTION
TRANMCE EQU    C'M'              MANUAL CARTRIDGE ENTRY
TRANMOD DS     CL1              TRANSACTION CODE MODIFIER
TRANVER EQU    C'V'              VERIFY VOLUME RESIDES IN LIBRARY
*                                BEFORE EXECUTING REQUEST
*                                SEPARATOR
      DS      CL1
TRANVOL DS     CL6              VOLUME SERIAL NUMBER
      DS     CL1              SEPARATOR
TRANSPEC DS    CL25            REQUEST-SPECIFIC AREA
      ORG    TRANSPEC          VOLUME EJECT SECTION
TRANDEST DS    CL1              EJECT DESTINATION
TRANCONV EQU   C'C'              CONVENIENCE OUTPUT STATION
TRANBULK EQU   C'B'              HIGH CAPACITY OUTPUT STATION
      ORG    TRANSPEC          IMPORT/EXPORT SECTION
TRANCOPT DS    CL1              CANCEL AREA
TRANCAN EQU    C'C'              CANCEL REQUEST
      ORG    TRANSPEC          CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE SECTION
TRANSGRP DS    CL8              STORAGE GROUP NAME FOR CHANGE TO
*                                PRIVATE
      ORG    TRANSPEC          MCE SECTION
TRANLIBN DS    CL8              LIBRARY NAME INTO WHICH VOLUME
*                                IS TO BE ENTERED
      DS     CL1              SEPARATOR
TRANMEDT DS    CL1              OPTIONAL MEDIA TYPE OF VOLUME
      ORG    ,                RESTORE LOCATION COUNTER
TRANMSG DS     CL45            TRANSACTION COMPLETION MESSAGE
      EJECT ,
*-----*
*
*      CBRXLCS PARAMETER LISTS
*
*-----*

```

Figure 32. Sample Installation Management Package—CBRSPLCS (Part 13 of 14)

```

CBRXLCS MF=(L,LCSLIST)    LCS EXTERNAL SERVICES PARM LIST
SPACE 2
CBRXLCS MF=(L,LCSMODEL)   LCS EXTERNAL SERVICES MODEL LIST
EJECT ,

*-----*
*                                     *
*      MISCELLANEOUS WORK AREAS      *
*                                     *
*-----*
SAVE      DC      18F'0'          STANDARD SAVE AREA
SPACE 2
PRETCODE  DC      D'0'          CBRXLCS RETURN CODE - PACKED DEC
PRSNCODE  DC      D'0'          CBRXLCS REASON CODE - PACKED DEC
SPACE 2
RETREAS   DS      0CL45
ERRFUNC   DC      CL5' '        QVR, CUA, EJECT, IMP, EXP, OR MCE
          DC      CL15' RETURN CODE = '
ZRETCODE  DC      CL4' '        CBRXLCS RETURN CODE - ZONED DEC
          DC      CL16' REASON CODE = '
ZRSNCODE  DC      CL4' '        CBRXLCS REASON CODE - ZONED DEC
          DC      CL1'.'
SPACE 2
PASSTHRU  DC      CL16'SIMP'     PASSTHRU VALUE FOR EJECT, CUA
SPACE 2
MCEADDR   DC      A(0)          ADDR OF GOTTEN MCE STORAGE
STGRTCD   DC      F'0'          RETURN CODE FOR STORAGE CALL
STGRCDCEC DC      D'0'          PACKED DECIMAL STORAGE RC
SPACE 2
END       CBRSPCLS

```

Figure 32. Sample Installation Management Package—CBRSPLCS (Part 14 of 14)

SAMPLIB Member CBRSPUXC

This SAMPLIB member is a sample change use attribute installation exit.

```

UCXCUA    TITLE 'CBRUXCUA - SAMPLE CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE INST. EXIT'
CBRUXCUA  START 0          SAMPLE CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE INSTALLATION EXIT
          SPACE 2
**** START OF SPECIFICATIONS *****
*
*      MODULE NAME:          CBRUXCUA
*
*      DESCRIPTIVE NAME:    SAMPLE CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE INSTALLATION
*                          EXIT
*
*      FUNCTION:
*      MODULE CBRUXCUA IS INVOKED EACH TIME A REQUEST IS MADE TO
*      CHANGE THE VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE OF AN SMS-MANAGED TAPE
*      VOLUME. CBRUXCUA MAY REFUSE TO ALLOW THE VOLUME USE
*      ATTRIBUTE TO BE CHANGED, OR UPDATE CERTAIN FIELDS IN THE TAPE
*      VOLUME RECORD, OR APPROVE THE CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE REQUEST
*      WITHOUT CHANGE.
*
*      CBRUXCUA DEMONSTRATES THE USE OF THE FOLLOWING FUNCTIONS:
*      1. SETTING THE "REJECT" RETURN CODE TO PREVENT A CHANGE IN
*         THE VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE.
*      2. USING THE INFORMATION IN VARIOUS FIELDS IN THE TAPE VOLUME
*         RECORD.
*      3. PASSING INFORMATION TO CBRUXCUA USING THE LIBRARY
*         DESCRIPTION FIELD, AS SET BY THE ISMF LIBRARY MANAGEMENT
*         APPLICATION.
*      4. PASSING INFORMATION TO CBRUXCUA USING THE CBRXLCS
*         FUNC(CUA) PROGRAMMING INTERFACE.
*
*      NOTES:
*
*      DEPENDENCIES:          MVS/SP VERSION 4.3.0
*                          DFSMS/MVS 1.1.0
*
*      CHARACTER CODE:        EBCDIC
*      RESTRICTIONS:          NONE
*
*      REGISTER CONVENTIONS:
*      R0 - WORK REGISTER
*      R1 - STANDARD LINKAGE REGISTER
*          - PARAMETER LIST ADDRESS
*          - WORK REGISTER
*      R2 - NOT USED
*      R3 - NOT USED
*      R4 - NOT USED
*      R5 - NOT USED
*      R6 - NOT USED
*      R7 - NOT USED
*      R8 - CBRUXCUA WORKING STORAGE BASE REGISTER

```

Figure 33. Sample Change Use Attribute Installation Exit—CBRSPUXC (Part 1 of 7)


```

*      R9 - RETURN CODE WORK REGISTER      *
*      R10 - LIBRARY DESCRIPTION BASE REGISTER *
*      R11 - UXCPL BASE REGISTER           *
*      R12 - CBRUXCUA BASE REGISTER        *
*      R13 - STANDARD LINKAGE REGISTER      *
*      - SAVE AREA ADDRESS                 *
*      R14 - STANDARD LINKAGE REGISTER      *
*      - RETURN POINT ADDRESS              *
*      - WORK REGISTER                     *
*      R15 - STANDARD LINKAGE REGISTER      *
*      - ENTRY POINT ADDRESS               *
*      - RETURN CODE                       *
*      - WORK REGISTER                     *
*
*      MODULE TYPE:          CONTROL SECTION *
*
*      PROCESSOR:            ASSEMBLER H     *
*
*      ATTRIBUTES:          *
*
*      LOCATION:            JOB PACK AREA    *
*      STATE:               SUPERVISOR      *
*      AMODE:               31               *
*      RMODE:               ANY              *
*      KEY:                 CALLER'S        *
*      MODE:                TASK             *
*      SERIALIZATION:       UNLOCKED         *
*      TYPE:                REUSABLE         *
*                        REENTRANT           *
*                        REFRESHABLE         *
*      AUTHORIZATION:       APF AUTHORIZED   *
*
*      LINKAGE:              STANDARD LINKAGE CONVENTIONS *
*
*      CALLING SEQUENCE:    *
*      CBRUXCUA IS INVOKED USING THE MVS LINK MACRO.      *
*
*      INPUT:              *
*      AT ENTRY TO CBRUXCUA, REGISTER 1 CONTAINS THE ADDRESS OF *
*      THE CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE INSTALLATION EXIT PARAMETER LIST. *
*
*      OUTPUT:             *
*      A RETURN CODE IS PLACED IN REGISTER 15:             *
*      CODE  MEANING      *
*      0     CHANGE THE VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE AS REQUESTED. NO *
*            CHANGES HAVE BEEN MADE TO THE TAPE VOLUME RECORD. *
*      4     CHANGE THE VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE AS REQUESTED. ONE *
*            OR MORE FIELDS IN THE TAPE VOLUME RECORD HAVE BEEN *
*            CHANGED. *
*      8     DO NOT ALLOW THE VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE TO BE *
*            CHANGED. *

```

Figure 33. Sample Change Use Attribute Installation Exit—CBRSPUXC (Part 2 of 7)

```

*          12  NOT USED.
*          16  DO NOT INVOKE THE CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE INSTALLATION
*              EXIT AGAIN.  ALLOW ALL REQUESTS TO CHANGE THE
*              VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE.
*
*  EXIT NORMAL:
*      RETURN TO THE CALLER WITH ONE OF THE RETURN CODES DESCRIBED
*      ABOVE.
*
*  EXIT ERROR:  NONE
*
*  EXTERNAL REFERENCES:
*
*  ROUTINES:  NONE
*
*  CONTROL BLOCKS:
*      CBRUXCPL - CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE INSTALLATION
*              EXIT PARAMETER LIST - R/W
*
*  EXECUTABLE MACROS:
*      FREEMAIN
*      GETMAIN
*      RETURN
*      SAVE
*
*  MESSAGES:  NONE
*
*  ABEND CODES:  NONE
*
*** END OF SPECIFICATIONS *****
      TITLE 'CBRUXCPL - CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE INST EXIT PARAM LIST'
      CBRUXCPL ,          CHANGE USE ATTR INST EXIT PLIST
      TITLE 'STANDARD REGISTER DEFINITIONS'
*-----*
*
*      STANDARD REGISTER DEFINITIONS
*
*-----*
R0      EQU    0          GENERAL REGISTER 0
R1      EQU    1          GENERAL REGISTER 1
R2      EQU    2          GENERAL REGISTER 2
R3      EQU    3          GENERAL REGISTER 3
R4      EQU    4          GENERAL REGISTER 4
R5      EQU    5          GENERAL REGISTER 5
R6      EQU    6          GENERAL REGISTER 6
R7      EQU    7          GENERAL REGISTER 7

```

Figure 33. Sample Change Use Attribute Installation Exit—CBRSPUXC (Part 3 of 7)

```

R8      EQU    8          GENERAL REGISTER 8
R9      EQU    9          GENERAL REGISTER 9
R10     EQU    10         GENERAL REGISTER 10
R11     EQU    11         GENERAL REGISTER 11
R12     EQU    12         GENERAL REGISTER 12
R13     EQU    13         GENERAL REGISTER 13
R14     EQU    14         GENERAL REGISTER 14
R15     EQU    15         GENERAL REGISTER 15
      TITLE 'LIBRARY DESCRIPTION FIELD FORMAT'

*-----*
*
*      LIBRARY DESCRIPTION FIELD FORMAT
*
*      NOTE: THIS IS INTENDED AS AN EXAMPLE OF THE KIND OF
*              INFORMATION THE INSTALLATION CAN PASS TO THE EXIT
*              VIA THE LIBRARY DESCRIPTION FIELD, WHICH IS SET
*              USING THE ISMF LIBRARY MANAGEMENT APPLICATION.
*-----*
LIBDESC DSECT ,          LIBRARY DESCRIPTION FIELD
LIBDDSGN DS   CL8        DEFAULT STORAGE GROUP NAME
          DS   CL1        SEPARATOR
LIBDPRIV DS   CL1        ALLOW PREVIOUSLY UNKNOWN PRIVATE
*                          VOLUME TO BE ENTERED
*                          'Y' - ALLOW BOTH PRIVATE AND
*                          SCRATCH VOLUMES TO BE
*                          ENTERED
*                          'N' - ALLOW ONLY SCRATCH
*                          VOLUMES TO BE ENTERED
          DS   CL1        SEPARATOR
LIBDRDCM DS   CL1        SET READ-COMPATIBLE ATTRIBUTE
*                          FOR PREVIOUSLY UNKNOWN MEDIA1
*                          PRIVATE VOLUME
*                          'Y' - SET ATTRIBUTE
*                          'N' - DO NOT SET ATTRIBUTE
          DS   CL1        SEPARATOR
LIBDAUTH DS   CL1        AUTHORIZATION REQUIRED FOR
*                          CARTRIDGE EJECT
*                          'Y' - AUTHORIZATION REQUIRED
*                          'N' - AUTH NOT REQUIRED
          DS   CL106      AVAILABLE
      TITLE 'CBRUXCUA WORKING STORAGE'

*-----*
*
*      CBRUXCUA WORKING STORAGE
*
*-----*
CUAWORK DSECT ,          CBRUXCUA WORKING STORAGE
SAVE     DS   18F        CBRUXCUA SAVE AREA
          SPACE 2
WORKEND  DS   0D         END OF CBRUXCUA WORKING STORAGE
WORKLEN  EQU   *-CUAWORK CBRUXCUA WORKING STORAGE LENGTH

```

Figure 33. Sample Change Use Attribute Installation Exit—CBRSPUXC (Part 4 of 7)

```

      TITLE 'CBRUXCUA - SAMPLE CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE INST EXIT'
*-----*
*
*      CBRUXCUA ENTRY POINT
*
*-----*
CBRUXCUA CSECT ,                SAMPLE CHANGE USE ATTR INST EXIT
CBRUXCUA AMODE 31
CBRUXCUA RMODE ANY
      SAVE  (14,12),,          SAVE CALLER'S REGISTERS AND
      'CBRUXCUA&SYSDATE'      MARK ENTRY POINT
      LR   R12,R15             COPY ENTRY POINT ADDRESS
      USING CBRUXCUA,R12      CBRUXCUA BASE REGISTER
      LR   R11,R1             COPY PARAMETER ADDRESS
      USING UXCPL,R11         CHANGE USE ATTR INST EXIT PARM LIST
      GETMAIN RU,             GETMAIN WORKING STORAGE FROM
      LV=WORKLEN,            SUBPOOL 230 TO GET PSW KEY
      SP=230                 STORAGE
      LR   R8,R1             SAVE WORKING STORAGE ADDRESS
      USING CUAWORK,R8       CBRUXCUA WORKING STORAGE
      LR   R14,R1            START ADDRESS OF TARGET AREA
      LA   R15,WORKLEN       TARGET LENGTH
      LR   R0,R1             START ADDRESS OF SOURCE AREA
      SR   R1,R1             ZERO SOURCE LENGTH AND PAD BYTE
      MVCL R14,R0            CLEAR WORKING STORAGE
      ST   R13,SAVE+4        BACKWARD CHAIN SAVE AREAS
      LA   R0,SAVE           CBRUXCUA SAVE AREA ADDRESS
      ST   R0,8(,R13)        FORWARD CHAIN SAVE AREAS
      LR   R13,R0            SET CBRUXCUA SAVE AREA ADDRESS
      LA   R10,UXCLDESC      ADDRESS OF LIBRARY DESCRIPTION
      USING LIBDESC,R10      LIBRARY DESCRIPTION FIELD
      EJECT ,
*-----*
*
*      PRESET RETURN CODE ZERO
*
*-----*
      LA   R9,UXCNOCHG       CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE WITHOUT
*                               CHANGING TAPE VOLUME RECORD
      SPACE 2
*-----*
*
*      IF THE VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE WILL NOT CHANGE, ALLOW THE
*      FUNCTION TO CONTINUE.  THE INVOKER OF CUA IS PROBABLY ISMF
*      VOLUME ALTER, AND THE PURPOSE IS TO ENSURE THAT THE USE
*      ATTRIBUTE AND THE LIBRARY MANAGER CATEGORY MATCH.
*
*-----*
      CLC   UXCCUSEA,UXCUSEA   OLD ATTRIBUTE = NEW ATTRIBUTE?
      BE    EXIT              YES. RETURN TO CALLER
      SPACE 2

```

Figure 33. Sample Change Use Attribute Installation Exit—CBRSPUXC (Part 5 of 7)

```

*-----*
*
*      IF THE VOLUME IS SHELF-RESIDENT, DO NOT ALLOW THE VOLUME
*      USE ATTRIBUTE TO BE CHANGED.
*
*      SET THE REJECT RETURN CODE, AND EXIT.
*
*-----*
          CLC    UXCLIB,=CL8'SHELF'    SHELF-RESIDENT VOLUME?
          BNE    CUA2000                NO. CHECK CHANGE TO SCRATCH
          LA     R9,UXCFAIL            SET CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE REQUEST
*                                     DENIED RETURN CODE
          B      EXIT                  RETURN TO CALLER
          EJECT ,
*-----*
*
*      IF THE USE ATTRIBUTE IS TO BE CHANGED TO SCRATCH, AND IF
*      THE REQUEST IS FROM THE PROGRAMMED INTERFACE (USING THE
*      CBRXLCS MACRO), ALLOW THE REQUEST.
*
*-----*
CUA2000 DS    0H
          CLI    UXCUSEA,UXCSCRT      CHANGE TO SCRATCH?
          BNE    CUA3000                NO. CHECK STORAGE GROUP NAME
          CLC    UXCEXITI,PASSTHRU     EJECT AUTHORIZED BY PROGRAMMED
*                                     INTERFACE?
          BE     EXIT                  YES. RETURN TO CALLER
          SPACE 2
*-----*
*
*      THE REQUEST IS NOT FROM THE PROGRAMMED INTERFACE. ALLOW
*      THE CHANGE TO SCRATCH ONLY WHEN THE VOLUME IS NOT WRITE
*      PROTECTED AND IS NOT A SECURE CHECKPOINT VOLUME.
*
*-----*
          CLI    UXCWPROT,UXCYES      WRITE PROTECTED VOLUME?
          BE     CUA2100                YES. REJECT CUA REQUEST
          CLI    UXCCHKPT,UXCYES      SECURE CHECKPOINT VOLUME?
          BNE    EXIT                  NO. RETURN TO CALLER
CUA2100 DS    0H
          LA     R9,UXCFAIL            SET CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE REQUEST
*                                     DENIED RETURN CODE
          B      EXIT                  RETURN TO CALLER
          EJECT ,
*-----*
*
*      THE USE ATTRIBUTE IS TO BE CHANGED TO PRIVATE.
*
*      IF THE STORAGE GROUP NAME IS BLANK, SET THE DEFAULT STORAGE
*      GROUP NAME FROM THE LIBRARY DESCRIPTION.
*
*-----*

```

Figure 33. Sample Change Use Attribute Installation Exit—CBRSPUXC (Part 6 of 7)

```

CUA3000 DS    0H
        CLC   UXCGROUP,=CL8'  '    BLANK STORAGE GROUP NAME?
        BNE   EXIT              NO. RETURN TO CALLER
        LA    R9,UXCCHG          ALLOW CHANGE USE ATTRIBUTE WITH
*                                     TAPE VOLUME RECORD CHANGED
        MVC   UXCGROUP,LIBDDSGN   SET DEFAULT STORAGE GROUP NAME
        EJECT ,

*-----*
*
*      RETURN TO THE CALLER
*
*-----*
EXIT     DS    0H
        L     R13,SAVE+4          RESTORE CALLER'S SAVE AREA ADDRESS
        FREEMAIN RU,              RELEASE WORKING STORAGE
                LV=WORKLEN,
                A=(R8),
                SP=230
        LR    R15,R9              SET RETURN CODE
        RETURN (14,12),           RESTORE CALLER'S REGISTERS, THEN
                RC=(15)            RETURN TO CALLER
        TITLE 'CBRUXCUA CONSTANTS'

*-----*
*
*      CBRUXCUA CONSTANTS
*
*-----*
        LTORG ,                  LITERAL CONSTANTS
        SPACE 2
PASSTHRU DC   CL16'SIMP'          PASSTHRU VALUE TO AUTHORIZE CUA
        SPACE 2
        END   CBRUXCUA

```

Figure 33. Sample Change Use Attribute Installation Exit—CBRSPUXC (Part 7 of 7)

SAMPLIB Member CBRSPUXE

This SAMPLIB member is a sample cartridge entry installation exit.

```
UXENT    TITLE 'CBRUXENT - SAMPLE CARTRIDGE ENTRY INSTALLATION EXIT'
CBRUXENT START 0                      SAMPLE CARTRIDGE ENTRY INST EXIT
        SPACE 2
**** START OF SPECIFICATIONS ****
*
*   MODULE NAME:          CBRUXENT
*
*   DESCRIPTIVE NAME:    SAMPLE CARTRIDGE ENTRY INSTALLATION EXIT
*
*   FUNCTION:
*   MODULE CBRUXENT IS INVOKED EACH TIME A CARTRIDGE IS ENTERED
*   INTO A TAPE LIBRARY.  CBRUXENT MAY REFUSE TO ALLOW THE
*   CARTRIDGE TO BE ENTERED, OR UPDATE CERTAIN FIELDS IN THE TAPE
*   VOLUME RECORD, OR APPROVE THE CARTRIDGE ENTRY WITHOUT CHANGE,
*   OR LEAVE THE CARTRIDGE FOR PROCESSING BY SOME OTHER SYSPLEX.
*
*   CBRUXENT DEMONSTRATES THE USE OF THE FOLLOWING FUNCTIONS:
*   1. SETTING THE "IGNORE" RETURN CODE TO LEAVE AN ENTERED
*   VOLUME IN THE LIBRARY MANAGER INSERT CATEGORY SO THAT IT
*   MAY BE PROCESSED FOR ENTRY BY ANOTHER SYSPLEX.
*   2. SETTING THE "REJECT" RETURN CODE TO PREVENT A VOLUME FROM
*   BEING ENTERED INTO THE LIBRARY.
*   3. USING THE SHELF LOCATION AND OWNER INFORMATION FIELDS IN
*   THE TAPE VOLUME RECORD.
*   4. PASSING INFORMATION TO CBRUXENT USING THE LIBRARY
*   DESCRIPTION FIELD, AS SET BY THE ISMF LIBRARY MANAGEMENT
*   APPLICATION.
*   5. SETTING THE READ-COMPATIBLE ATTRIBUTE, TO ALLOW A PRIVATE
*   VOLUME RECORDED IN 18-TRACK MODE TO BE MOUNTED ON A
*   36-TRACK DRIVE FOR READ-ONLY USAGE.
*
*   NOTES:
*
*   DEPENDENCIES:          MVS/SP VERSION 4.3.0
*                           DFSMS/MVS 1.1.0
*
*   CHARACTER CODE:        EBCDIC
*
*   RESTRICTIONS:          NONE
```

Figure 34. Sample Cartridge Entry Installation Exit—CBRSPUXE (Part 1 of 8)

```

*
* REGISTER CONVENTIONS:
*
*   R0 - WORK REGISTER
*   R1 - STANDARD LINKAGE REGISTER
*       - PARAMETER LIST ADDRESS
*       - WORK REGISTER
*   R2 - NOT USED
*   R3 - NOT USED
*   R4 - NOT USED
*   R5 - NOT USED
*   R6 - NOT USED
*   R7 - NOT USED
*   R8 - BASE REGISTER FOR WORKING STORAGE
*   R9 - RETURN CODE WORK REGISTER
*   R10 - LIBRARY DESCRIPTION BASE REGISTER
*   R11 - UXEPL BASE REGISTER
*   R12 - CBRUXENT BASE REGISTER
*   R13 - STANDARD LINKAGE REGISTER
*       - SAVE AREA ADDRESS
*   R14 - STANDARD LINKAGE REGISTER
*       - RETURN POINT ADDRESS
*   R15 - STANDARD LINKAGE REGISTER
*       - ENTRY POINT ADDRESS
*       - RETURN CODE
*
* MODULE TYPE:          CONTROL SECTION
*
* PROCESSOR:            ASSEMBLER H
*
* ATTRIBUTES:
*
*   LOCATION:           JOB PACK AREA
*   STATE:              PROBLEM
*   AMODE:              31 - MAY BE 24 IF NECESSARY
*   RMODE:              ANY - MAY BE 24 IF NECESSARY
*   KEY:                5 (DATA MANAGEMENT)
*   MODE:              TASK
*   SERIALIZATION:     UNLOCKED
*   TYPE:              REUSABLE
*                   REENTRANT
*                   REFRESHABLE
*   AUTHORIZATION:      APF AUTHORIZED
*
* LINKAGE:              STANDARD LINKAGE CONVENTIONS
*
* CALLING SEQUENCE:
*   CBRUXENT IS INVOKED IN THE OAM ADDRESS SPACE USING THE MVS
*   LINK MACRO.

```

Figure 34. Sample Cartridge Entry Installation Exit—CBRSPUXE (Part 2 of 8)


```

*
* INPUT:
*   AT ENTRY TO CBRUXENT, REGISTER 1 CONTAINS THE ADDRESS OF
*   THE CARTRIDGE ENTRY INSTALLATION EXIT PARAMETER LIST.
*
* OUTPUT:
*   A RETURN CODE IS PLACED IN REGISTER 15:
*   CODE MEANING
*   0 ENTER THE CARTRIDGE INTO THE LIBRARY. THE TAPE
*   VOLUME RECORD IS UNCHANGED.
*   4 ENTER THE CARTRIDGE INTO THE LIBRARY. ONE OR MORE
*   FIELDS IN THE TAPE VOLUME RECORD HAVE BEEN CHANGED.
*   8 DO NOT ALLOW THE CARTRIDGE TO BE ENTERED INTO THE
*   LIBRARY. EJECT THE CARTRIDGE IMMEDIATELY.
*   12 IGNORE THE REQUEST TO ENTER THE CARTRIDGE INTO THE
*   LIBRARY. LEAVE THE CARTRIDGE IN THE INSERT
*   CATEGORY FOR PROCESSING BY ANOTHER SYSPLEX.
*   16 DO NOT INVOKE THE CARTRIDGE ENTRY INSTALLATION EXIT
*   AGAIN. ALLOW ALL CARTRIDGES TO BE ENTERED WITHOUT
*   CHANGES TO THEIR TAPE VOLUME RECORDS.
*
* EXIT NORMAL:
*   RETURN TO THE CALLER WITH ONE OF THE RETURN CODES DESCRIBED
*   ABOVE.
*
* EXIT ERROR: NONE
*
* EXTERNAL REFERENCES:
*
* ROUTINES: NONE
*
* CONTROL BLOCKS:
*   CBRUXEPL - CARTRIDGE ENTRY INSTALLATION EXIT
*   PARAMETER LIST - R/W
*
* EXECUTABLE MACROS:
*   RETURN
*   SAVE
*
* MESSAGES: NONE
*
* ABEND CODES: NONE
*
**** END OF SPECIFICATIONS *****

```

Figure 34. Sample Cartridge Entry Installation Exit—CBRSPUXE (Part 3 of 8)

```

TITLE 'CBRUXEPL - CARTRIDGE ENTRY INST EXIT PARAMETER LIST'
CBRUXEPL ,          CART ENTRY INST EXIT PARM LIST
TITLE 'STANDARD REGISTER DEFINITIONS'

*-----*
*
*          STANDARD REGISTER DEFINITIONS
*
*-----*
R0      EQU    0          GENERAL REGISTER 0
R1      EQU    1          GENERAL REGISTER 1
R2      EQU    2          GENERAL REGISTER 2
R3      EQU    3          GENERAL REGISTER 3
R4      EQU    4          GENERAL REGISTER 4
R5      EQU    5          GENERAL REGISTER 5
R6      EQU    6          GENERAL REGISTER 6
R7      EQU    7          GENERAL REGISTER 7
R8      EQU    8          GENERAL REGISTER 8
R9      EQU    9          GENERAL REGISTER 9
R10     EQU   10          GENERAL REGISTER 10
R11     EQU   11          GENERAL REGISTER 11
R12     EQU   12          GENERAL REGISTER 12
R13     EQU   13          GENERAL REGISTER 13
R14     EQU   14          GENERAL REGISTER 14
R15     EQU   15          GENERAL REGISTER 15
TITLE 'CBRUXENT WORKING STORAGE'

*-----*
*
*          CBRUXENT WORKING STORAGE
*
*-----*
ENTWORK DSECT ,          XXA
SAVE    DS    18F          CBRUXENT SAVE AREA
WORKEND DS    0D          XXA
WORKLEN EQU   *-ENTWORK    XXA
SPACE 2
TITLE 'LIBRARY DESCRIPTION FIELD FORMAT'

*-----*
*
*          LIBRARY DESCRIPTION FIELD FORMAT
*
*          NOTE:  THIS IS INTENDED AS AN EXAMPLE OF THE KIND OF
*                  INFORMATION THE INSTALLATION CAN PASS TO THE EXIT
*                  VIA THE LIBRARY DESCRIPTION FIELD, WHICH IS SET
*                  USING THE ISMF LIBRARY MANAGEMENT APPLICATION.
*
*-----*
LIBDESC DSECT ,          LIBRARY DESCRIPTION FIELD
LIBDDSGN DS    CL8          DEFAULT STORAGE GROUP NAME
          DS    CL1          SEPARATOR

```

Figure 34. Sample Cartridge Entry Installation Exit—CBRSPUXE (Part 4 of 8)

LIBDPRIV DS	CL1	ALLOW PREVIOUSLY UNKNOWN PRIVATE	
*		VOLUME TO BE ENTERED	
*		'Y' - ALLOW BOTH PRIVATE AND	
*		SCRATCH VOLUMES TO BE	
*		ENTERED	
*		'N' - ALLOW ONLY SCRATCH	
*		VOLUMES TO BE ENTERED	
	DS CL1	SEPARATOR	
LIBDRDCM DS	CL1	SET READ-COMPATIBLE ATTRIBUTE	
*		FOR PREVIOUSLY UNKNOWN MEDIA1	
*		PRIVATE VOLUME	
*		'Y' - SET ATTRIBUTE	
*		'N' - DO NOT SET ATTRIBUTE	
	DS CL1	SEPARATOR	
LIBDAUTH DS	CL1	AUTHORIZATION REQUIRED FOR	
*		CARTRIDGE EJECT	
*		'Y' - AUTHORIZATION REQUIRED	
*		'N' - AUTH NOT REQUIRED	
	DS CL106	AVAILABLE	
	TITLE 'CBRUXENT - SAMPLE CARTRIDGE ENTRY INSTALLATION EXIT'		

*			*
*	CBRUXENT ENTRY POINT		*
*			*

CBRUXENT CSECT ,		SAMPLE CARTRIDGE ENTRY INST EXIT	
CBRUXENT AMODE 31			
CBRUXENT RMODE ANY			
SAVE (14,12),,		SAVE CALLER'S REGISTERS AND	+
'CBRUXENT&SYSDATE'		MARK ENTRY POINT	
LR R12,R15		COPY ENTRY POINT ADDRESS	
USING CBRUXENT,R12		CBRUXENT BASE REGISTER	
LR R11,R1		COPY PARAMETER ADDRESS	
USING UXEPL,R11		CHANGE USE ATTR INST EXIT PARM LIST	
GETMAIN RU,		GETMAIN WORKING STORAGE FROM	+
LV=WORKLEN,		SUBPOOL 0 TO GET PSW KEY	+
SP=0		STORAGE	
LR R8,R1		SAVE WORKING STORAGE ADDRESS	
USING ENTWORK,R8		CBRUXENT WORKING STORAGE	
LR R14,R1		START ADDRESS OF TARGET AREA	
LA R15,WORKLEN		TARGET LENGTH	
LR R0,R1		START ADDRESS OF SOURCE AREA	
SR R1,R1		ZERO SOURCE LENGTH & PAD BYTE	
MVCL R14,R0		CLEAR WORKING STORAGE	
ST R13,SAVE+4		BACKWARD CHAIN SAVE AREAS	
LA R0,SAVE		CBRUXENT SAVE AREA ADDRESS	
ST R0,8(,R13)		FORWARD CHAIN SAVE AREAS	
LR R13,R0		SET CBRUXENT SAVE AREA ADDRESS	
LA R10,UXELDESC		ADDRESS OF LIBRARY DESCRIPTION	
USING LIBDESC,R10		LIBRARY DESCRIPTION FIELD	
SPACE 2			

Figure 34. Sample Cartridge Entry Installation Exit—CBRSPUXE (Part 5 of 8)

```

*-----*
*
*      PRESET RETURN CODE ZERO
*
*-----*
*      LA      R9,UXENOCBG      ENTER CARTRIDGE WITHOUT CHANGING
*                                TAPE VOLUME RECORD
*      EJECT ,
*
*-----*
*
*      CHECK FOR A VOLUME WHICH BELONGS TO ANOTHER SYSPLEX
*
*-----*
*      CLI     UXEVOLSR,C'0'      FIRST VOLSER CHARACTER NUMERIC?
*      BL      ENT1000            NO. CHECK VOLSER PREV UNKNOWN
*      LA      R9,UXEIGNOR        IGNORE CARTRIDGE ENTRY - LEAVE
*                                VOLUME FOR ANOTHER SYSPLEX
*      B       EXIT              RETURN TO CALLER
*      EJECT ,
*
*-----*
*
*      CHECK FOR A PREVIOUSLY UNKNOWN VOLUME.
*
*      IF THE VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE IS PRIVATE, ALLOW THE CARTRIDGE
*      TO BE ENTERED ONLY IF SPECIFICALLY AUTHORIZED IN THE
*      LIBRARY DESCRIPTION.
*
*-----*
ENT1000 DS      0H
        CLC     UXECREAT,=CL10' ' BLANK RECORD CREATION DATE?
        BNE     ENT2000            NO. RECORD ALREADY EXISTED
        LA      R9,UXECHG        ALLOW CARTRIDGE ENTRY WITH TAPE
*                                VOLUME RECORD CHANGED
*      MVC     UXEOWNER,=CL64'TUCSON PROGRAMMING CENTER' SET LOCALLY
*                                OWNED VOLUME
*      CLI     UXEUSEA,UXESCRT    SCRATCH USE ATTRIBUTE?
*      BE      EXIT              YES. RETURN TO CALLER
*      CLI     LIBDPRIV,UXEYES    ALLOW PRIVATE VOLUME ENTRY?
*      BE      ENT1100            YES. SET STORAGE GROUP NAME
*      LA      R9,UXEFAIL        SET CARTRIDGE ENTRY REQUEST DENIED
*                                RETURN CODE
*      B       EXIT              RETURN TO CALLER
*      SPACE 2
*
*-----*
*
*      A PREVIOUSLY UNKNOWN PRIVATE VOLUME IS BEING ENTERED.
*
*      SET THE STORAGE GROUP NAME AND THE READ-COMPATIBLE
*      ATTRIBUTE USING INFORMATION FROM THE LIBRARY DESCRIPTION.
*
*-----*

```

Figure 34. Sample Cartridge Entry Installation Exit—CBRSPUXE (Part 6 of 8)

```

ENT1100 DS    0H
        MVC   UXEGROUP,LIBDDSGN      SET DEFAULT STORAGE GROUP NAME
        CLI   UXEMEDIA,UXEMED1      MEDIA TYPE MEDIA1?
        BNE   EXIT                   NO. RETURN TO CALLER
        CLI   UXEREC,UXE18TRK       18-TRACK RECORDING TECHNOLOGY?
        BNE   EXIT                   NO. RETURN TO CALLER
        CLI   LIBDRDCM,UXEYES       SET READ COMPATIBILITY FOR MEDIA1?
        BNE   EXIT                   NO. RETURN TO CALLER
        MVI   UXESPEC,UXERDCOM      SET READ-COMPATIBLE ATTRIBUTE
        B     EXIT                   RETURN TO CALLER
        EJECT ,

*-----*
*
*   THE TAPE VOLUME RECORD ALREADY EXISTS FOR THE CARTRIDGE
*   BEING ENTERED.
*
*   IF THE SHELF LOCATION INDICATES THAT THE VOLUME MUST RESIDE
*   ON THE SHELF, OR THE VOLUME OWNER IS NOT CURRENT IN PAYING
*   LIBRARY RENT, THE CARTRIDGE DOES NOT BELONG IN THE LIBRARY.
*
*   SET THE REJECT RETURN CODE, AND EXIT.
*-----*
ENT2000 DS    0H
        CLC   UXESHLOC,=CL32'TO THINE OWN SHELF BE TRUE'  MUST VOLUME
*                               REMAIN ON SHELF?
        BE    ENT2100               YES. SET REJECT RETURN CODE
        CLC   UXEOWNER,=CL64'JOHN Q. DEADBEAT'  HAS OWNER PAID BILL?
        BNE   ENT3000               YES. CHECK TAPE VOLUME REC CHANGES
ENT2100 DS    0H
        LA    R9,UXEFAIL            SET CARTRIDGE ENTRY REQUEST DENIED
*                               RETURN CODE
        B     EXIT                   RETURN TO CALLER
        EJECT ,

*-----*
*
*   IF THE VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE IS PRIVATE, THE MEDIA TYPE IS
*   MEDIA1 (CARTRIDGE SYSTEM TAPE), AND THE TAPE RECORDING
*   TECHNOLOGY IS 18-TRACK, THE VOLUME IS INTENDED FOR USE IN
*   READ-ONLY MODE.  SET THE READ-COMPATIBLE SPECIAL ATTRIBUTE.
*-----*
ENT3000 DS    0H
        CLI   UXEUSEA,UXEPRIV       PRIVATE USE ATTRIBUTE?
        BNE   EXIT                   NO. RETURN TO CALLER
        CLI   UXEMEDIA,UXEMED1      MEDIA TYPE MEDIA1?
        BNE   EXIT                   NO. RETURN TO CALLER
        CLI   UXEREC,UXE18TRK       18-TRACK RECORDING TECHNOLOGY?
        BNE   EXIT                   NO. RETURN TO CALLER
        LA    R9,UXECHG             ALLOW CARTRIDGE ENTRY WITH TAPE
*                               VOLUME RECORD CHANGED
        MVI   UXESPEC,UXERDCOM      SET READ-COMPATIBLE ATTRIBUTE
        EJECT ,

```

Figure 34. Sample Cartridge Entry Installation Exit—CBRSPUXE (Part 7 of 8)

```

*-----*
*                                           *
*      RETURN TO THE CALLER                *
*                                           *
*-----*
EXIT  DS    0H
      L      R13,SAVE+4          RESTORE CALLER'S SAVE AREA ADDRESS
      FREEMAIN RU,
      LV=WORKLEN,
      A=(R8),
      SP=0
      LR     R15,R9              SET RETURN CODE
      RETURN (14,12),           RESTORE CALLER'S REGISTERS, THEN
      RC=(15)                   RETURN TO CALLER
      SPACE 2
      END    CBRUXENT

```

Figure 34. Sample Cartridge Entry Installation Exit—CBRSPUXE (Part 8 of 8)

SAMPLIB Member CBRSPUXJ

This SAMPLIB member is a sample cartridge eject installation exit.

```

UXEJC    TITLE 'CBRUXEJC - SAMPLE CARTRIDGE EJECT INSTALLATION EXIT'
CBRUXEJC START 0                      SAMPLE CARTRIDGE EJECT INST EXIT
        SPACE 2
**** START OF SPECIFICATIONS *****
*
*      MODULE NAME:          CBRUXEJC
*
*      DESCRIPTIVE NAME:    SAMPLE CARTRIDGE EJECT INSTALLATION EXIT
*
*      FUNCTION:
*      MODULE CBRUXEJC IS INVOKED EACH TIME A REQUEST IS MADE TO
*      EJECT A CARTRIDGE FROM A TAPE LIBRARY.  CBRUXEJC MAY REFUSE
*      TO ALLOW THE CARTRIDGE TO BE EJECTED, OR UPDATE CERTAIN
*      FIELDS IN THE TAPE VOLUME RECORD, OR APPROVE THE CARTRIDGE
*      EJECT WITHOUT CHANGE.
*
*      CBRUXEJC DEMONSTRATES THE USE OF THE FOLLOWING FUNCTIONS:
*      1. SETTING THE "REJECT" RETURN CODE TO PREVENT A VOLUME FROM
*         BEING EJECTED FROM THE LIBRARY.
*      2. USING THE SHELF LOCATION AND OWNER INFORMATION FIELDS IN
*         THE TAPE VOLUME RECORD.
*      3. PASSING INFORMATION TO CBRUXEJC USING THE LIBRARY
*         DESCRIPTION FIELD, AS SET BY THE ISMF LIBRARY MANAGEMENT
*         APPLICATION.
*      4. PASSING INFORMATION TO CBRUXEJC USING THE CBRXLCS
*         FUNC(EJECT) PROGRAMMING INTERFACE.
*      5. CHANGING THE VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE AND THE TAPE VOLUME
*         RECORD DISPOSITION.
*
*      NOTES:
*
*      DEPENDENCIES:          z/OS
*
*      CHARACTER CODE:        EBCDIC
*
*      RESTRICTIONS:          NONE
*
*      REGISTER CONVENTIONS:
*      R0  - WORK REGISTER
*      R1  - STANDARD LINKAGE REGISTER
*           - PARAMETER LIST ADDRESS
*           - WORK REGISTER
*      R2  - NOT USED
*      R3  - NOT USED
*      R4  - NOT USED
*      R5  - NOT USED
*      R6  - NOT USED
*      R7  - NOT USED
*      R8  - BASE REGISTER FOR WORKING STORAGE
*      R9  - RETURN CODE WORK REGISTER
*      R10 - LIBRARY DESCRIPTION BASE REGISTER
*      R11 - UXJPL BASE REGISTER

```

Figure 35. Sample Cartridge Eject Installation Exit—CBRSPUXJ (Part 1 of 7)

```

*      R12 - CBRUXEJC BASE REGISTER      *
*      R13 - STANDARD LINKAGE REGISTER    *
*      - SAVE AREA ADDRESS                *
*      R14 - STANDARD LINKAGE REGISTER    *
*      - RETURN POINT ADDRESS              *
*      R15 - STANDARD LINKAGE REGISTER    *
*      - ENTRY POINT ADDRESS              *
*      - RETURN CODE                      *
*
*
*      MODULE TYPE:          CONTROL SECTION
*
*      PROCESSOR:            ASSEMBLER H
*
*      ATTRIBUTES:
*
*      LOCATION:            JOB PACK AREA
*      STATE:               PROBLEM
*      AMODE:               31 - MAY BE 24 IF NECESSARY
*      RMODE:              ANY - MAY BE 24 IF NECESSARY
*      KEY:                 5 (DATA MANAGEMENT)
*      MODE:               TASK
*      SERIALIZATION:      UNLOCKED
*      TYPE:               REUSABLE
*                        REENTRANT
*                        REFRESHABLE
*      AUTHORIZATION:      APF AUTHORIZED
*
*      LINKAGE:             STANDARD LINKAGE CONVENTIONS
*
*      CALLING SEQUENCE:
*      CBRUXEJC IS INVOKED IN THE OAM ADDRESS SPACE USING THE MVS
*      LINK MACRO.
*
*      INPUT:
*      AT ENTRY TO CBRUXEJC, REGISTER 1 CONTAINS THE ADDRESS OF
*      THE CARTRIDGE EJECT INSTALLATION EXIT PARAMETER LIST.
*
*      OUTPUT:
*      A RETURN CODE IS PLACED IN REGISTER 15:
*      CODE  MEANING
*      0     EJECT/EXPORT THE VOLUME FROM THE LIBRARY.  THE
*            TAPE VOLUME RECORD IS UNCHANGED.
*      4     EJECT/EXPORT THE VOLUME FROM THE LIBRARY.  ONE OR
*            MORE FIELDS IN THE TAPE VOLUME RECORD HAVE BEEN
*            CHANGED.
*      8     DO NOT ALLOW THE CARTRIDGE TO BE EJECTED FROM THE
*            LIBRARY.
*      12    IGNORE EXPORT COMPLETION.
*      16    DO NOT INVOKE THE CARTRIDGE EJECT INSTALLATION EXIT
*            AGAIN.  ALLOW ALL VOLUMES TO BE EJECTED/EXPORTED
*            WITHOUT CHANGES TO THEIR TAPE VOLUME RECORDS.
*

```

Figure 35. Sample Cartridge Eject Installation Exit—CBRSPUXJ (Part 2 of 7)


```

*      EXIT NORMAL:
*      RETURN TO THE CALLER WITH ONE OF THE RETURN CODES DESCRIBED
*      ABOVE.
*
*      EXIT ERROR:  NONE
*
*      EXTERNAL REFERENCES:
*
*      ROUTINES:  NONE
*
*      CONTROL BLOCKS:
*      CBRUXJPL - CARTRIDGE EJECT INSTALLATION EXIT
*                PARAMETER LIST                                - R/W
*
*      EXECUTABLE MACROS:
*      RETURN
*      SAVE
*
*      MESSAGES:  NONE
*
*      ABEND CODES:  NONE
*
*      $L1=MTLSOFT 1F0 082500 TUCLJS:  REMOVED TIME MACRO CODE
*                                     (0W43042 FIN/KFI0168)
*
**** END OF SPECIFICATIONS *****
      TITLE 'CBRUXJPL - CARTRIDGE EJECT INST EXIT PARAMETER LIST'
      CBRUXJPL ,          CART EJECT INST EXIT PARM LIST
      TITLE 'STANDARD REGISTER DEFINITIONS'
*-----*
*
*      STANDARD REGISTER DEFINITIONS
*
*-----*
R0      EQU  0          GENERAL REGISTER 0
R1      EQU  1          GENERAL REGISTER 1
R2      EQU  2          GENERAL REGISTER 2
R3      EQU  3          GENERAL REGISTER 3
R4      EQU  4          GENERAL REGISTER 4
R5      EQU  5          GENERAL REGISTER 5
R6      EQU  6          GENERAL REGISTER 6
R7      EQU  7          GENERAL REGISTER 7
R8      EQU  8          GENERAL REGISTER 8
R9      EQU  9          GENERAL REGISTER 9
R10     EQU 10          GENERAL REGISTER 10
R11     EQU 11          GENERAL REGISTER 11
R12     EQU 12          GENERAL REGISTER 12
R13     EQU 13          GENERAL REGISTER 13
R14     EQU 14          GENERAL REGISTER 14
R15     EQU 15          GENERAL REGISTER 15
      TITLE 'CBRUXEJC WORKING STORAGE'
*-----*
*
*      CBRUXEJC WORKING STORAGE
*
*-----*
EJCWORK DSECT ,
SAVE    DS  18F
WORKEND DS  0D
WORKLEN EQU *-EJCWORK
        SPACE 2
        TITLE 'LIBRARY DESCRIPTION FIELD FORMAT'

```

Figure 35. Sample Cartridge Eject Installation Exit—CBRSPUXJ (Part 3 of 7)

```

*-----*
*
*      LIBRARY DESCRIPTION FIELD FORMAT
*
*      NOTE: THIS IS INTENDED AS AN EXAMPLE OF THE KIND OF
*             INFORMATION THE INSTALLATION CAN PASS TO THE EXIT
*             VIA THE LIBRARY DESCRIPTION FIELD, WHICH IS SET
*             USING THE ISMF LIBRARY MANAGEMENT APPLICATION.
*
*-----*
LIBDESC DSECT ,      LIBRARY DESCRIPTION FIELD
LIBDDSGN DS      CL8  DEFAULT STORAGE GROUP NAME
          DS      CL1  SEPARATOR
LIBDPRIV DS      CL1  ALLOW PREVIOUSLY UNKNOWN PRIVATE
*                      VOLUME TO BE ENTERED
*                      'Y' - ALLOW BOTH PRIVATE AND
*                      SCRATCH VOLUMES TO BE
*                      ENTERED
*                      'N' - ALLOW ONLY SCRATCH
*                      VOLUMES TO BE ENTERED
          DS      CL1  SEPARATOR
LIBDRDCM DS      CL1  SET READ-COMPATIBLE ATTRIBUTE
*                      FOR PREVIOUSLY UNKNOWN MEDIA1
*                      PRIVATE VOLUME
*                      'Y' - SET ATTRIBUTE
*                      'N' - DO NOT SET ATTRIBUTE
          DS      CL1  SEPARATOR
LIBDAUTH DS      CL1  AUTHORIZATION REQUIRED FOR
*                      CARTRIDGE EJECT
*                      'Y' - AUTHORIZATION REQUIRED
*                      'N' - AUTH NOT REQUIRED
          DS      CL106 AVAILABLE
          TITLE 'CBRUXEJC - SAMPLE CARTRIDGE EJECT INSTALLATION EXIT'

```

Figure 35. Sample Cartridge Eject Installation Exit—CBRSPUXJ (Part 4 of 7)

```

*-----*
*
*          CBRUXEJC ENTRY POINT
*
*-----*
CBRUXEJC CSECT ,          SAMPLE CARTRIDGE EJECT INST EXIT
CBRUXEJC AMODE 31
CBRUXEJC RMODE ANY
          SAVE (14,12),,          SAVE CALLER'S REGISTERS AND      +
          'CBRUXEJC&SYSDATE      MARK ENTRY POINT
          LR R12,R15              COPY ENTRY POINT ADDRESS
          USING CBRUXEJC,R12      CBRUXEJC BASE REGISTER
          LR R11,R1              COPY PARAMETER ADDRESS
          USING UXJPL,R11        CART EJECT INST EXIT PARM LIST
          GETMAIN RU,            GETMAIN WORKING STORAGE FROM      +
          LV=WORKLEN,           SUBPOOL 0 TO GET PSW KEY          +
          SP=0                  STORAGE
          LR R8,R1              SAVE WORKING STORAGE ADDRESS
          USING EJCWORK,R8       CBRUXEJC WORKING STORAGE
          LR R14,R1             START ADDRESS OF TARGET AREA
          LA R15,WORKLEN        TARGET LENGTH
          LR R0,R1              START ADDRESS OF SOURCE AREA
          SR R1,R1              ZERO SOURCE LENGTH & PAD BYTE
          MVCL R14,R0           CLEAR WORKING STORAGE
          ST R13,SAVE+4         BACKWARD CHAIN SAVE AREAS
          LA R0,SAVE            CBRUXEJC SAVE AREA ADDRESS
          ST R0,8(,R13)         FORWARD CHAIN SAVE AREAS
          LR R13,R0             SET CBRUXEJC SAVE AREA ADDRESS
          LA R10,UXJLDESC       ADDRESS OF LIBRARY DESCRIPTION
          USING LIBDESC,R10     LIBRARY DESCRIPTION FIELD
          SPACE 2

*-----*
*
*          PRESET RETURN CODE ZERO
*
*-----*
          LA R9,UXJNOCHG        EJECT CARTRIDGE WITHOUT CHANGING
          EJECT ,               TAPE VOLUME RECORD

*-----*
*
*          IF THE VOLUME OWNER IS ENTITLED TO LEAVE VOLUMES IN THE
*          LIBRARY ON A PERMANENT BASIS, OR THE SHELF LOCATION SHOWS
*          PERMANENT LIBRARY RESIDENCE, DO NOT ALLOW THE CARTRIDGE TO
*          BE EJECTED.
*
*          SET THE REJECT RETURN CODE, AND EXIT.
*
*-----*
          CLC UXJOWNER,=CL64'CONAN THE LIBRARIAN' PRIVILEGED OWNER?
          BE EJC1100            YES. SET REJECT RETURN CODE
          CLC UXJSHLOC,=CL32'UNSHELFISH' MUST VOLUME REMAIN IN
          *                      LIBRARY?
          BNE EJC2000           NO. CHECK AUTHORIZATION REQUIRED
EJC1100 DS 0H
          LA R9,UXJFAIL        SET CARTRIDGE EJECT REQUEST DENIED
          *                      RETURN CODE
          B EXIT               RETURN TO CALLER
          EJECT ,

```

Figure 35. Sample Cartridge Eject Installation Exit—CBRSPUXJ (Part 5 of 7)

```

*-----*
*
*      CHECK FOR EJECT AUTHORIZATION REQUIRED.
*
*      USING INFORMATION FROM THE LIBRARY DESCRIPTION, DETERMINE
*      WHETHER THE EJECT REQUEST REQUIRES AUTHORIZATION VIA THE
*      PROGRAMMED INTERFACE PASS-THROUGH VALUE.
*
*-----*
EJC2000 DS    0H
        CLI    LIBDAUTH,UXJYES      AUTHORIZATION REQUIRED?
        BNE    EJC3000              NO. CHECK VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE
        CLC    UXJEXITI,PASSTHRU    EJECT AUTHORIZED BY PROGRAMMED
*                                     INTERFACE?
        BE     EJC3000              YES. CHECK VOLUME USE ATTRIBUTE
        LA     R9,UXJFAIL            SET CARTRIDGE EJECT REQUEST DENIED
*                                     RETURN CODE
        B      EXIT                RETURN TO CALLER
        EJECT ,
*-----*
*
*      EJECT IS ALLOWED.
*
*      FOR A PRIVATE VOLUME, MAKE SURE THE VOLUME RECORD
*      IS KEPT.
*
*      THIS SAMPLE EXIT NO LONGER COMPARES THE VOLUME'S
*      EXPIRATION DATE TO TODAY'S DATE TO DETERMINE IF THE
*      RECORD SHOULD BE KEPT. INSTEAD, ALL PRIVATE VOLUME
*      RECORDS ARE ASSIGNED THE "KEEP" RECORD DISPOSITION.
*
*-----*
EJC3000 DS    0H
        CLI    UXJUSEA,UXJPRIV      PRIVATE USE ATTRIBUTE?
        BNE    EJC4000              NO. PURGE TAPE VOLUME RECORD
        CLI    UXJVDISP,UXJKEEP      RECORD DISPOSITION KEEP?
        BE     EJC5000              YES. CHECK SHELF LOCATION SUPPLIED
        LA     R9,UXJCHG             ALLOW CARTRIDGE EJECT WITH TAPE
*                                     VOLUME RECORD CHANGED
        MVI    UXJVDISP,UXJKEEP      MAKE SURE VOLUME RECORD IS KEPT
        B      EJC5000              CHECK SHELF LOCATION SUPPLIED
        SPACE 2
*-----*
*
*      A SCRATCH VOLUME IS TO BE EJECTED.
*
*      MAKE SURE THAT THE TAPE VOLUME RECORD IS PURGED AFTER THE
*      VOLUME HAS BEEN EJECTED. NOTE THAT THE "TAPE VOLUME
*      RECORD CHANGED" RETURN CODE MUST BE SET IF THE CURRENT
*      DISPOSITION IS KEEP.
*
*-----*
EJC4000 DS    0H
        CLI    UXJVDISP,UXJPURGE     RECORD DISPOSITION PURGE?
        BE     EJC5000              YES. CHECK SHELF LOCATION SUPPLIED
        LA     R9,UXJCHG             ALLOW CARTRIDGE EJECT WITH TAPE
*                                     VOLUME RECORD CHANGED
        MVI    UXJVDISP,UXJPURGE     MAKE SURE VOLUME RECORD IS PURGED
        EJECT ,

```

Figure 35. Sample Cartridge Eject Installation Exit—CBRSPUXJ (Part 6 of 7)

```

*-----*
*
*      IF THE SHELF LOCATION IS BLANK, THE OPERATOR DID NOT SUPPLY
*      ONE IN RESPONSE TO MESSAGE CBR2601A.  SET A STANDARD SHELF
*      LOCATION VALUE.
*
*-----*
EJC5000 DS    0H
        CLC    UXJSHLOC,=CL32'  '    SHELF LOCATION KNOWN?
        BNE    EXIT                    YES. RETURN TO CALLER
        LA     R9,UXJCHG                ALLOW CARTRIDGE EJECT WITH TAPE
*                                     VOLUME RECORD CHANGED
        CLI    UXJUSEA,UXJPRIV          PRIVATE VOLUME?
        BE     EJC5100                 YES. SET PRIVATE SHELF LOCATION
        MVC    UXJSHLOC,=CL32'SCRATCH STORAGE RACK' SET SCRATCH
*                                     SHELF LOCATION
        B      EXIT                    RETURN TO CALLER
EJC5100 DS    0H
        MVC    UXJSHLOC,=CL32'PRIVATE STORAGE ROOM' SET PRIVATE
*                                     SHELF LOCATION
        EJECT ,
*-----*
*
*      RETURN TO THE CALLER
*
*-----*
EXIT    DS    0H
        L      R13,SAVE+4              RESTORE CALLER'S SAVE AREA ADDRESS
        FREEMAIN RU,                   +
        LV=WORKLEN,                   +
        A=(R8),                       +
        SP=0
        LR     R15,R9                  SET RETURN CODE
        RETURN (14,12),                RESTORE CALLER'S REGISTERS, THEN +
        RC=(15)                        RETURN TO CALLER
*-----*
*
*      CBRUXEJC CONSTANTS
*
*-----*
        LTORG ,                        LITERAL CONSTANTS
        SPACE 2
PASSTHRU DC  CL16'SIMP'                PASSTHRU VALUE TO AUTHORIZE EJECT
        SPACE 2
        END    CBRUXEJC

```

Figure 35. Sample Cartridge Eject Installation Exit—CBRSPUXJ (Part 7 of 7)

SAMPLIB Member CBRSPUXV

This SAMPLIB member is a sample volume not in library installation exit.

```

UXVNL      TITLE 'CBRUXVNL - VOLUME NOT IN LIBRARY INSTALLATION EXIT'
CBRUXVNL START 0                      VOLUME NOT IN LIBRARY INST EXIT
        SPACE 2
**** START OF SPECIFICATIONS ****
*
*      MODULE NAME:          CBRUXVNL
*
*      DESCRIPTIVE NAME:    SAMPLE VOLUME NOT IN LIBRARY INSTALLATION
*                          EXIT
*
*
*****
*
*      THIS SAMPLE INSTALLATION EXIT MAY BE USED TO PROVIDE VOLUME
*      NOT IN LIBRARY RECOVERY WHILE THE CUSTOMER IS DEVELOPING AN
*      EXIT WHICH IS MORE CLOSELY TAILORED TO INSTALLATION NEEDS.
*
*
*      A DEFAULT VERSION OF CBRUXVNL IS DISTRIBUTED AS PART OF
*      DFSMSrmm.
*
*****
*

```

Figure 36. Sample Volume Not in Library Installation Exit—CBRSPUXV (Part 1 of 13)

```

* FUNCTION:
* MODULE CBRUXVNL IS INVOKED TO ALLOW THE INSTALLATION TO
* ENTER A TAPE VOLUME INTO A LIBRARY DURING PROCESSING FOR
* THE JOB STEP WHICH REQUIRES THE VOLUME.
*
* THE EXIT IS ENTERED AT THE FOLLOWING TIMES:
*
* 1. JOB STEP SETUP PROCESSING
*
* THE DEVICE AND VOLUME REQUIREMENTS FOR THE JOB STEP ARE
* BEING DETERMINED.
*
* THE VOLUME MAY HAVE ONE OF THREE STATES:
* A. THE VOLUME IS KNOWN TO BE SHELF-RESIDENT. THERE IS
* A TAPE VOLUME RECORD FOR THE VOLUME IN THE TAPE
* CONFIGURATION DATA BASE.
* B. THE VOLUME IS KNOWN TO BE AN EXPORTED LOGICAL
* VOLUME. THERE IS A TAPE VOLUME RECORD IN THE
* TAPE CONFIGURATION DATABASE WITH STACKED=VOLSER
* IN THE SHELF LOCATION FIELD.
* C. THE VOLUME IS UNKNOWN TO THE SYSTEM. THERE IS NO
* TAPE VOLUME RECORD FOR THE VOLUME IN THE TCDB, THE
* VOLUME IS NOT A CURRENTLY MOUNTED DASD VOLUME, AND
* THE VOLUME IS NOT AN SMS-MANAGED DASD VOLUME.
*
* IF THE EXIT CAUSES THE VOLUME TO BE ENTERED INTO A TAPE
* LIBRARY:
* A. FOR AN EXISTING DATASET, THE REQUEST WILL BE
* SMS-MANAGED MOUNTABLE, AND A LIBRARY-RESIDENT TAPE
* DRIVE WILL BE ALLOCATED.
* B. FOR A NEW DATASET, THE LIBRARY NAME IS PASSED TO
* THE ACS FILTER ROUTINES:
* 1. IF THE FILTER ROUTINES DO NOT MAKE THE REQUEST
* SMS-MANAGED MOUNTABLE, A NON-LIBRARY-RESIDENT
* TAPE DRIVE IS ALLOCATED. WHEN A MOUNT REQUEST
* IS LATER ISSUED, THE VOLUME WILL HAVE TO BE
* EJECTED FROM THE LIBRARY BEFORE IT CAN BE
* MOUNTED ON THE DRIVE.
* 2. IF THE FILTER ROUTINES MAKE THE REQUEST
* SMS-MANAGED MOUNTABLE, AND THE LIBRARY INTO
* WHICH THE VOLUME WAS ENTERED IS NOT INCLUDED IN
* ANY OF THE SELECTED TAPE STORAGE GROUPS, SMS
* FAILS THE JOB.
* 3. IF THE FILTER ROUTINES MAKE THE REQUEST
* SMS-MANAGED MOUNTABLE, AND THE LIBRARY INTO
* WHICH THE VOLUME WAS ENTERED IS INCLUDED IN ONE
* OF THE SELECTED TAPE STORAGE GROUPS, A LIBRARY-
* RESIDENT TAPE DRIVE WILL BE ALLOCATED.

```

Figure 36. Sample Volume Not in Library Installation Exit—CBRSPUXV (Part 2 of 13)

```

*
* IF THE EXIT TAKES NO ACTION:
*
*   A. FOR AN EXISTING DATASET, THE REQUEST WILL BE
*   NON-SMS-MANAGED, AND A NON-LIBRARY-RESIDENT TAPE
*   DRIVE WILL ULTIMATELY BE ALLOCATED.
*
*   B. FOR A NEW DATASET, A NULL LIBRARY NAME IS PASSED TO
*   THE ACS FILTER ROUTINES:
*
*     1. IF THE FILTER ROUTINES MAKE THE REQUEST SMS-
*     MANAGED MOUNTABLE, SMS FAILS THE JOB.
*
*     2. IF THE FILTER ROUTINES DO NOT MAKE THE REQUEST
*     SMS-MANAGED MOUNTABLE, A NON-LIBRARY-RESIDENT
*     TAPE DRIVE IS ALLOCATED.
*
*
* 2. DEVICE ALLOCATION PROCESSING
*
*   JOB STEP SETUP PROCESSING HAS DESIGNATED THE REQUEST AS
*   SMS-MANAGED MOUNTABLE, BUT THE VOLUME HAS BEEN EJECTED
*   FROM ITS LIBRARY.
*
*   THE VOLUME STATES ARE THE SAME AS FOR JOB STEP SETUP
*   PROCESSING.
*
*   IN A JES2 ENVIRONMENT, IF THE EXIT CAUSES THE VOLUME TO
*   BE ENTERED INTO ANY TAPE LIBRARY, THEN A LIBRARY-
*   RESIDENT TAPE DRIVE WILL BE ALLOCATED.
*
*   IN A JES3 ENVIRONMENT, THE EXIT MUST CAUSE THE VOLUME TO
*   BE ENTERED INTO THE SAME LIBRARY IN WHICH IT RESIDED
*   DURING JOB STEP SETUP PROCESSING. IN THIS CASE, A
*   LIBRARY-RESIDENT TAPE DRIVE WILL BE SUCCESSFULLY
*   ALLOCATED. IF THE EXIT CAUSES THE VOLUME TO BE ENTERED
*   INTO A DIFFERENT LIBRARY, THEN THE JOB STEP WILL FAIL.
*
*   IF THE EXIT TAKES NO ACTION, THEN THE JOB STEP WILL
*   FAIL.
*
* 3. LIBRARY MOUNT PROCESSING
*
*   THE SYSTEM IS ATTEMPTING TO MOUNT THE VOLUME ON A
*   LIBRARY-RESIDENT TAPE DRIVE.
*
*   THE VOLUME MAY HAVE ONE OF FIVE STATES:
*
*     A. THE VOLUME IS KNOWN TO BE SHELF-RESIDENT. THERE IS
*     A TAPE VOLUME RECORD FOR THE VOLUME IN THE TCDB.
*
*     B. THE VOLUME IS KNOWN TO RESIDE IN A DIFFERENT
*     LIBRARY. THERE IS A TAPE VOLUME RECORD FOR THE
*     VOLUME IN THE TCDB.

```

Figure 36. Sample Volume Not in Library Installation Exit—CBRSPUXV (Part 3 of 13)


```

*
* C. THE VOLUME IS KNOWN TO RESIDE IN THE CORRECT
*   LIBRARY, BUT VOLUME EJECTION IS ALREADY IN PROGRESS
*   AND CANNOT BE CANCELED. THERE IS CURRENTLY A TAPE
*   VOLUME RECORD IN THE TCDB, BUT THIS MAY BE PURGED
*   WHEN VOLUME EJECTION COMPLETES.
*
* D. THE VOLUME IS UNKNOWN TO THE SYSTEM. THERE IS NO
*   TAPE VOLUME RECORD FOR THE VOLUME IN THE TCDB.
*
* E. THE VOLUME IS KNOWN TO BE AN EXPORTED LOGICAL
*   VOLUME. THERE IS A TAPE VOLUME RECORD IN THE
*   TAPE CONFIGURATION DATABASE WITH STACKED=VOLSER
*   IN THE SHELF LOCATION FIELD.
*
*
* NOTE: IF A LOGICAL VOLUME IS EXPORT PENDING OR IN
*   PROCESS OF BEING EXPORTED, THE VOLUME NOT IN LIBRARY
*   INSTALLATION EXIT WILL NOT BE INVOKED. FOR THE EXIT
*   TO BE INVOKED FOR A LOGICAL VOLUME, IT MUST HAVE
*   COMPLETED THE EXPORT PROCESS.
*
*
* IF THE EXIT CAUSES THE VOLUME TO BE ENTERED INTO THE
*   TAPE LIBRARY WHERE THE DRIVE RESIDES, THE VOLUME MOUNT
*   WILL BE RETRIED.
*
*
* IF THE EXIT TAKES NO ACTION, THEN THE JOB STEP WILL
*   FAIL.
*
*
* NOTES:
*
*   CHARACTER CODE:          EBCDIC
*
*   RESTRICTIONS:            NONE
*
*   REGISTER CONVENTIONS:
*   R0  - WORK REGISTER
*   R1  - STANDARD LINKAGE REGISTER
*         - PARAMETER LIST ADDRESS
*         - WORK REGISTER
*   R2  - NOT USED
*   R3  - NOT USED
*   R4  - NOT USED
*   R5  - NOT USED
*   R6  - NOT USED
*   R7  - NOT USED
*   R8  - SHFLOC FD BASE REGISTER
*   R9  - RETURN CODE WORK REGISTER
*   R10 - CBRUXVNL WORKING STORAGE BASE REGISTER
*   R11 - UXNPL BASE REGISTER
*   R12 - CBRUXVNL BASE REGISTER
*   R13 - STANDARD LINKAGE REGISTER
*         - SAVE AREA ADDRESS

```

Figure 36. Sample Volume Not in Library Installation Exit—CBRSPUXV (Part 4 of 13)

```

*      R14 - STANDARD LINKAGE REGISTER      *
*      - RETURN POINT ADDRESS              *
*      - WORK REGISTER                     *
*      R15 - STANDARD LINKAGE REGISTER      *
*      - ENTRY POINT ADDRESS               *
*      - RETURN CODE                       *
*      - WORK REGISTER                     *
*
*  MODULE TYPE:          CONTROL SECTION    *
*
*  PROCESSOR:            ASSEMBLER H        *
*
*  ATTRIBUTES:           *
*
*      LOCATION:         JOB PACK AREA SUBPOOL 252 *
*      STATE:             CALLER'S          *
*      AMODE:             31                 *
*      RMODE:             ANY                *
*      KEY:               CALLER'S          *
*                       MAY BE DIFFERENT FROM JOB KEY *
*      MODE:              TASK               *
*      SERIALIZATION:     UNLOCKED           *
*      TYPE:              REUSABLE           *
*                       REENTRANT            *
*                       REFRESHABLE          *
*      AUTHORIZATION:     APF AUTHORIZED     *
*
*  LINKAGE:              STANDARD LINKAGE CONVENTIONS *
*
*  CALLING SEQUENCE:     *
*      CBRUXVNL IS INVOKED USING THE MVS LINK MACRO. *
*
*  INPUT:                *
*      AT ENTRY TO CBRUXVNL, REGISTER 1 CONTAINS THE ADDRESS OF *
*      THE VOLUME NOT IN LIBRARY INSTALLATION EXIT PARAMETER LIST. *
*      THE PARAMETER LIST FORMAT IS GIVEN BY MAPPING MACRO *
*      CBRUXNPL. *
*
*  OUTPUT:               *
*      A RETURN CODE IS PLACED IN REGISTER 15: *
*      CODE  MEANING *
*      0     CONTINUE NORMAL PROCESSING OF THIS REQUEST. NO *
*            CHANGE HAS BEEN MADE TO TAPE VOLUME RESIDENCE. *
*      4     RETRY THE CURRENT OPERATION. THE TAPE VOLUME HAS *
*            BEEN ENTERED INTO THE APPROPRIATE LIBRARY. *
*      8     CANCEL THE JOB IMMEDIATELY. *
*      12    NOT USED. *
*      16    DO NOT INVOKE THE VOLUME NOT IN LIBRARY *
*            INSTALLATION EXIT AGAIN. CONTINUE NORMAL *
*            PROCESSING OF THE CURRENT REQUEST. NO CHANGE HAS *
*            BEEN MADE TO TAPE VOLUME RESIDENCE. *
*
*

```

Figure 36. Sample Volume Not in Library Installation Exit—CBRSPUXV (Part 5 of 13)

```

*      EXIT NORMAL:                                     *
*      RETURN TO THE CALLER WITH ONE OF THE RETURN CODES DESCRIBED *
*      ABOVE.                                           *
*
*      EXIT ERROR:  NONE                                *
*
*      EXTERNAL REFERENCES:                             *
*
*      ROUTINES:  NONE                                 *
*
*      CONTROL BLOCKS:                                 *
*      CBRUXNPL - VOLUME NOT IN LIBRARY INSTALLATION *
*      EXIT PARAMETER LIST                             - R/O *
*
*      EXECUTABLE MACROS:                              *
*      FREEMAIN                                       *
*      GETMAIN                                       *
*      RETURN                                       *
*      SAVE                                       *
*      WAIT                                       *
*      WTO                                       *
*      WTOR                                       *
*
*      MESSAGES:  VNL001 VOLUME NOT IN LIBRARY EXIT *
*                  VOLUME (VOLSER) UNKNOWN TO SYSTEM *
*                  ON STACKED (VOLSER) *
*                  SHELF-RESIDENT *
*                  EJECT IN PROGRESS *
*                  IN LIBRARY (LIBNAME) *
*                  DURING JOB STEP SETUP *
*                  DEVICE ALLOCATION *
*                  LIBRARY MOUNT *
*                  ENTER INTO ANY LIBRARY *
*                  LIBRARY (LIBNAME) *
*
*                  VNL002 REPLY 'CONT', 'RETRY', 'CANCEL', OR 'DISABLE' *
*
*      ABEND CODES:  NONE                                *
***** END OF SPECIFICATIONS *****
      TITLE 'CBRUXNPL - VOLUME NOT IN LIBRARY EXIT PARAMETER LIST'
      CBRUXNPL , VOLUME NOT IN LIBRARY PARAMETERS
      TITLE 'STANDARD REGISTER DEFINITIONS'

```

Figure 36. Sample Volume Not in Library Installation Exit—CBRSPUXV (Part 6 of 13)

```

*-----*
*
*          STANDARD REGISTER DEFINITIONS
*
*-----*
R0      EQU    0          GENERAL REGISTER 0
R1      EQU    1          GENERAL REGISTER 1
R2      EQU    2          GENERAL REGISTER 2
R3      EQU    3          GENERAL REGISTER 3
R4      EQU    4          GENERAL REGISTER 4
R5      EQU    5          GENERAL REGISTER 5
R6      EQU    6          GENERAL REGISTER 6
R7      EQU    7          GENERAL REGISTER 7
R8      EQU    8          GENERAL REGISTER 8
R9      EQU    9          GENERAL REGISTER 9
R10     EQU   10          GENERAL REGISTER 10
R11     EQU   11          GENERAL REGISTER 11
R12     EQU   12          GENERAL REGISTER 12
R13     EQU   13          GENERAL REGISTER 13
R14     EQU   14          GENERAL REGISTER 14
R15     EQU   15          GENERAL REGISTER 15

          TITLE 'SHELF LOCATION FIELD FORMAT'
*-----*
*
*          SHELF LOCATION FIELD FORMAT. THE FOLLOWING DSECT
*          MAPS TO THE DEFAULT SHELF LOCATION FIELD.
*
*-----*
SHFLOCFD DSECT ,          MAPS THE TCDB SHELF LOC FIELD
STKVOLTX DS    CL8          STACKED= VOLUME TEXT
STKVOLSR DS    CL6          VOLSER FOR THE STACKED VOLUME
          DS    CL18         AVAILABLE
          SPACE 2
          TITLE 'CBRUXVNL WORKING STORAGE'
*-----*
*
*          CBRUXVNL WORKING STORAGE
*
*-----*
VNLWORK  DSECT ,          CBRUXVNL WORKING STORAGE
          SPACE 2
SAVE     DS    18F          CBRUXVNL SAVE AREA
          SPACE 2
*-----*
*
*          MULTI-LINE WTO PARAMETER LIST
*
*-----*

```

Figure 36. Sample Volume Not in Library Installation Exit—CBRSPUXV (Part 7 of 13)

```

WTOLIST WTO TEXT=((,C),(,D),(,D),(,DE)),
ROUTCDE=(3,5),
CONSNAME=,
MF=L
WTOLISTL EQU *-WTOLIST
SPACE 2
*-----*
*
* MULTI-LINE WTO TEXT LINES
*
*-----*
CTRLLINE DS 0F MLWTO CONTROL LINE
DS AL2 LENGTH OF MESSAGE TEXT
DS C'VNL001 VOLUME NOT IN LIBRARY EXIT'
CTRLLEN EQU *-CTRLLINE LENGTH OF CONTROL LINE
SPACE 2
VOLLINE DS 0F VOLUME INFORMATION LINE
DS AL2 LENGTH OF MESSAGE TEXT
DS C'VOLUME '
VOLSER DS CL6 MISSING VOLUME SERIAL NUMBER
DS C' '
VOLSTATE DS CL19'UNKNOWN TO SYSTEM ' ERROR ASSOCIATED WITH VOLUME
VOLLEN EQU *-VOLLINE LENGTH OF VOLUME INFORMATION LINE
SPACE 2
VOLLOGCL DS 0CL19 WHERE THE LOGICAL VOLUME LIVES
DS C'ON STACKED '
VOLSTKVS DS CL6 VOLSER FOR THE STACKED VOLUME
DS CL2' '
SPACE 2
VOLLIBER DS 0CL19 VOLUME IN WRONG LIBRARY ERROR
DS C'IN LIBRARY '
VOLCLIB DS CL8 LIBRARY WHERE VOLUME RESIDES
SPACE 2
STAGLINE DS 0F PROCESSING STAGE LINE
DS AL2 LENGTH OF MESSAGE TEXT
DS C'DURING '
STAGE DS CL17'JOB STEP SETUP ' PROCESSING STAGE
STAGLEN EQU *-STAGLINE LENGTH OF PROCESSING STAGE LINE
SPACE 2
ACTLINE DS 0F ACTION REQUIRED LINE
DS AL2 LENGTH OF MESSAGE TEXT
DS C'ENTER INTO '
ACTLIB DS CL16'ANY LIBRARY ' TARGET LIBRARY IDENTIFICATION
ACTLEN EQU *-ACTLINE LENGTH OF ACTION REQUIRED LINE
SPACE 2
ACTSPLIB DS 0CL16 SPECIFIC TARGET LIBRARY TEXT
DS C'LIBRARY '
ACTTLIB DS CL8 TARGET LIBRARY NAME
SPACE 2

```

Figure 36. Sample Volume Not in Library Installation Exit—CBRSPUXV (Part 8 of 13)

```

*-----*
*
*          WTOR PARAMETER LIST AND RELATED FIELDS
*
*-----*
WTORLIST  WTOR  TEXT=(,,),
             ROUTCDE=(3,5),
             CONSNAME=,
             MF=L
WTORLSTL  EQU   *-WTORLIST
             SPACE 2
WTORECB   DS    F              WTOR EVENT CONTROL BLOCK
WTORREP   DS    CL7           WTOR REPLY AREA
             SPACE 2
WORKEND   DS    0D           END OF CBRUXVNL WORKING STORAGE
WORKLEN   EQU   *-VNLWORK     CBRUXVNL WORKING STORAGE LENGTH
             TITLE 'CBRUXVNL - VOLUME NOT IN LIBRARY INSTALLATION EXIT'
*-----*
*
*          CBRUXVNL ENTRY POINT
*
*-----*
CBRUXVNL  CSECT ,              VOLUME NOT IN LIBRARY INST EXIT
CBRUXVNL  AMODE 31
CBRUXVNL  RMODE ANY
             SAVE (14,12),,    SAVE CALLER'S REGISTERS AND
             'CBRUXVNL&SYSDATE' MARK ENTRY POINT
             LR   R12,R15      COPY ENTRY POINT ADDRESS
             USING CBRUXVNL,R12 CBRUXVNL BASE REGISTER
             LR   R11,R1      COPY PARAMETER ADDRESS
             USING UXNPL,R11    VOLUME NOT IN LIBRARY PARAMETERS
             LA   R8,UXNSHLOC   ADDRESS OF THE TCDB SHELF LOC
             USING SHFLOCDF,R8  SHELF LOCATION FIELD
             GETMAIN RU,        GETMAIN WORKING STORAGE FROM
             LV=WORKLEN,        SUBPOOL 230 TO GET PSW KEY
             SP=230             STORAGE
             LR   R10,R1       SAVE WORKING STORAGE ADDRESS
             USING VNLWORK,R10 CBRUXVNL WORKING STORAGE
             LR   R14,R1       START ADDRESS OF TARGET AREA
             LA   R15,WORKLEN  TARGET LENGTH
             LR   R0,R1        START ADDRESS OF SOURCE AREA
             SR   R1,R1        ZERO SOURCE LENGTH AND PAD BYTE
             MVCL R14,R0       CLEAR WORKING STORAGE
             ST   R13,SAVE+4    BACKWARD CHAIN SAVE AREAS
             LA   R0,SAVE       CBRUXVNL SAVE AREA ADDRESS
             ST   R0,8(R13)     FORWARD CHAIN SAVE AREAS
             LR   R13,R0        SET CBRUXVNL SAVE AREA ADDRESS
             EJECT ,
*****

```

Figure 36. Sample Volume Not in Library Installation Exit—CBRSPUXV (Part 9 of 13)

```

*****
*
*       AT THIS POINT, A CALL TO THE INSTALLATION TAPE MANAGEMENT
*       SYSTEM SHOULD BE MADE TO GATHER INFORMATION ABOUT THE
*       VOLUME.
*
*****
*****
EJECT ,
*****
*-----*
*
*       COPY THE MODEL WTO PARAMETER LIST TO DYNAMIC STORAGE
*
*-----*
MVC    WTOLIST(WTOLISTL),WTOMODEL  WTO PARAMETER LIST
MVC    CTRLLINE(CTRLLEN),CTRLMODL  MLWTO CONTROL LINE
MVC    VOLLINE(VOLLEN),VOLMODL     VOLUME INFORMATION LINE
MVC    STAGLINE(STAGLEN),STAGMODL  PROCESSING STAGE LINE
MVC    ACTLINE(ACTLEN),ACTMODL     ACTION REQUIRED LINE
SPACE 2
*-----*
*
*       COMPLETE THE TEXT INSERTS FOR THE MULTI-LINE WTO
*
*-----*
MVC    VOLSER,UXNVOLSR      SET VOLUME SERIAL NUMBER
CLI    UXNERROR,UXNNTCDB   VOLUME UNKNOWN TO SYSTEM?
BE     VNL1600              YES. GO CHECK PROCESSING STAGE
CLI    UXNERROR,UXNSHELF   VOLUME SHELF-RESIDENT?
BE     VNL1200              YES. GO SET INSERT
CLI    UXNERROR,UXNEJECT   VOLUME EJECT IN PROGRESS?
BE     VNL1400              YES. GO SET INSERT
MVC    VOLLIBER,=CL19'IN LIBRARY LIB-NAME'  WRONG LIBRARY
MVC    VOLCLIB,UXNLIBRS     LIBRARY WHERE VOLUME NOW RESIDES
MVC    VOLSTATE,VOLLIBER    SET DIFFERENT LIBRARY INSERT
B      VNL1600              GO CHECK PROCESSING STAGE
VNL1200 DS    0H
CLC    STKVOLT,=CL8'STACKED=' COMPARE SHELF LOC FIELD
BE     VNL1300              YES. GO SET SHELF LOCATION
MVC    VOLSTATE,=CL19'SHELF-RESIDENT'
B      VNL1600              GO CHECK PROCESSING STAGE
VNL1300 DS    0H
MVC    VOLLOGCL,=CL19'ON STACKED VOLSER '  STACKED VOLUME
MVC    VOLSTKVS,STKVOLSR
MVC    VOLSTATE,VOLLOGCL
B      VNL1600              GO CHECK PROCESSING STAGE
VNL1400 DS    0H
MVC    VOLSTATE,=CL19'EJECT IN PROGRESS'

```

Figure 36. Sample Volume Not in Library Installation Exit—CBRSPUXV (Part 10 of 13)

```

VNL1600 DS    0H
        CLI   UXNWHERE,UXNSETUP      JOB STEP SETUP PROCESSING?
        BE    VNL2000                YES. GO SET ACTION
        CLI   UXNWHERE,UXNALLOC      DEVICE ALLOCATION PROCESSING?
        BE    VNL1800                YES. GO SET INSERT
        MVC   STAGE,=CL17'LIBRARY MOUNT' SET LIBRARY MOUNT INSERT
        B     VNL2000                GO SET ACTION
VNL1800 DS    0H
        MVC   STAGE,=CL17'DEVICE ALLOCATION' SET ALLOCATION INSERT
VNL2000 DS    0H
        CLC   UXNLIB,=CL8' '         TARGET LIBRARY UNKNOWN?
        BE    VNL3000                YES. GO ISSUE MLWTO
        MVC   ACTSPLIB,=CL16'LIBRARY LIB-NAME' TARGET LIBRARY TEXT
        MVC   ACTTLIB,UXNLIB         LIBRARY WHERE VOLUME NEEDED
        MVC   ACTLIB,ACTSPLIB        SET TARGET LIBRARY INSERT
        EJECT ,
*-----*
*
*      ISSUE THE MULTI-LINE WTO
*
*-----*
VNL3000 DS    0H
        SR     R0,R0                 CLEAR R0 BEFORE MULTI-LINE WTO
        WTO    TEXT=(CTRLLINE,VOLLINE,STAGLINE,ACTLINE),
        CONSNAME=UXNLCON,
        MF=(E,WTOLIST)
        EJECT ,
*-----*
*
*      ISSUE THE WTOR
*
*-----*
        MVC   WTORLIST(WTORLSTL),WTORMODL COPY WTOR PARAMETER LIST
        SR     R15,R15               GET CONSTANT ZERO
        ST     R15,WTORECB           CLEAR WTOR ECB
        MVC   WTORREP,=CL7' '       SET WTOR REPLY AREA TO BLANKS
        SR     R0,R0                 CLEAR R0 BEFORE WTOR
        WTO    TEXT=(WTORLINE,WTORREP,L'WTORREP,WTORECB),
        CONSNAME=UXNLCON,
        MF=(E,WTORLIST,EXTENDED)
        WAIT   1,                    WAIT FOR OPERATOR REPLY
        ECB=WTORECB
        SPACE  2
*-----*
*
*      CHECK THE OPERATOR REPLY
*
*-----*

```

Figure 36. Sample Volume Not in Library Installation Exit—CBRSPUXV (Part 11 of 13)


```

*-----*
      OC   WTORREP,=CL7' '      CONVERT RESPONSE TO UPPER CASE
      LA   R9,UXNNORML          SET CONTINUE RETURN CODE
      CLC  WTORREP,=CL7'CONT'    CONTINUE (VOLUME NOT ENTERED)?
      BE   VNLEXIT              YES. EXIT WITH PRESET RETURN CODE
      LA   R9,UXNRETRY          SET RETRY RETURN CODE
      CLC  WTORREP,=CL7'RETRY'   RETRY (VOLUME ENTERED)?
      BE   VNLEXIT              YES. EXIT WITH PRESET RETURN CODE
      LA   R9,UXNFAIL          SET CANCEL RETURN CODE
      CLC  WTORREP,=CL7'CANCEL'  CANCEL JOB STEP?
      BE   VNLEXIT              YES. EXIT WITH PRESET RETURN CODE
      LA   R9,UXNDONT          SET DISABLE EXIT RETURN CODE
      CLC  WTORREP,=CL7'DISABLE' DISABLE EXIT?
      BNE  VNL3000             NO. REISSUE MLWTO AND WTOR
      EJECT ,

*-----*
*
*      RETURN TO THE CALLER
*
*-----*
VNLEXIT DS   0H
        L    R13,SAVE+4        RESTORE CALLER'S SAVE AREA ADDRESS
        FREEMAIN RU,          RELEASE WORKING STORAGE
        LV=WORKLEN,
        A=(R10),
        SP=230
        LR   R15,R9            SET RETURN CODE
        RETURN (14,12),        RESTORE CALLER'S REGISTERS, THEN
        RC=(15)                RETURN TO CALLER
        TITLE 'CBRUXVNL CONSTANTS'

*-----*
*
*      CBRUXVNL CONSTANTS
*
*-----*
        SPACE 2
        LTORG ,                LITERAL CONSTANTS
        SPACE 2

*-----*
*
*      MODEL MULTI-LINE WTO PARAMETER LIST
*
*-----*
WTOMODEL WTO  TEXT=((,C),(,D),(,D),(,DE)),
               ROUTCDE=(3,5),
               CONSNAME=,
               MF=L
        SPACE 2

```

Figure 36. Sample Volume Not in Library Installation Exit—CBRSPUXV (Part 12 of 13)

```

*-----*
*
*          MODEL MULTI-LINE WTO TEXT LINES
*
*-----*
CTRLMODL DC    0F'0'          MLWTO CONTROL LINE MODEL
          DC    AL2(CTRLMLN-2)
          DC    C'VNL001 VOLUME NOT IN LIBRARY EXIT'
CTRLMLN  EQU   *-CTRLMODL
          SPACE 2
VOLMODL  DC    0F'0'          VOLUME INFORMATION LINE MODEL
          DC    AL2(VOLMLN-2)
          DC    C'VOLUME '
          DC    C'VOLSER'
          DC    C' '
          DC    CL19'UNKNOWN TO SYSTEM '
VOLMLN   EQU   *-VOLMODL
          SPACE 2
STAGMODL DC    0F'0'          PROCESSING STAGE LINE MODEL
          DC    AL2(STAGMLN-2)
          DC    C'DURING '
          DC    CL17'JOB STEP SETUP '
STAGMLN  EQU   *-STAGMODL
          SPACE 2
ACTMODL  DC    0F'0'          ACTION REQUIRED LINE MODEL
          DC    AL2(ACTMLN-2)
          DC    C'ENTER INTO '
          DC    CL16'ANY LIBRARY '
ACTMLN   EQU   *-ACTMODL
          SPACE 2
*-----*
*
*          MODEL WTOR PARAMETER LIST
*
*-----*
WTORMODL WTOR  TEXT=(,,),
               ROUTCDE=(3,5),
               CONSNAME=,
               MF=L
               SPACE 2
*-----*
*
*          MODEL WTOR TEXT LINE
*
*-----*
WTORLINE DC    0F'0'          WTOR MESSAGE TEXT
          DC    AL2(WTORLEN-2)
          DC    C'VNL002 REPLY ''CONT'', ''RETRY'', ''CANCEL'', OR ''DIS+
               ABLE''
WTORLEN  EQU   *-WTORLINE
          SPACE 2
          END    CBRUXVNL

```

Figure 36. Sample Volume Not in Library Installation Exit—CBRSPUXV (Part 13 of 13)

SAMPLIB Member CBRAPROC

This SAMPLIB member is an example of a program that allows you to create the OAM member in the PROCLIB.

```
//CBRAPROC JOB MSGLEVEL=(1,1),MSGCLASS=A
//*****
//*
//* $SEG(CBRAPROC) COMP(OSMC) PROD(OAM):
//*
//* OAM Update PROCLIB Job (for OAM procedure).
//*
//* This job creates a procedure in PROCLIB that can be used
//* to start OAM.
//*
//* NOTE: If the DB2* load module library containing DSNALI is
//* not in the LNKST concatenation, either include
//* the DB2 load module library in the SYS1.LINKLIB
//* concatenation (LNKSTxx) or add a STEPLIB DD to
//* this PROCEDURE.
//*****
// EXEC PGM=IEBUPDTE,PARM=NEW
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SYSUT2 DD DSN=SYS1.PROCLIB,DISP=SHR
//SYSIN DD DATA
./ ADD NAME=OAM,LEVEL=01,SOURCE=0,LIST=ALL
./ NUMBER NEW1=10,INCR=10
//OAM PROC OSMC=YES,MAXS=2,UNLOAD=9999,EJECT=LRW,RESTART=YES
//IEFPROC EXEC PGM=CBROAM,REGION=0M,
// PARM=('OSMC=&OSMC,APLAN=CBROAM,MAXS=&MAXS,UNLOAD=&UNLOAD,'
// 'EJECT=&EJECT,RESTART=&RESTART')
//SYSABEND DD SYSOUT=A
./ ENDUP
/*
```

Figure 37. Sample CBRAPROC Program That Creates the OAM Member in PROCLIB

SAMPLIB Member CBRSPSIM

This SAMPLIB JCL writes the two required files on the import list volume using a scratch volume.

```
//CBRSPSIM JOB 1,'IMPORT',MSGLEVEL=(1,1)
//*****
//*
//* $SEG(CBRSPSIM) COMP(SAM) PROD(OAM):
//*
//* SAMPLE JOB THAT USES A SCRATCH VOLUME TO WRITE THE
//* IMPORT LIST VOLUME.
//*
//* BEFORE RUNNING THIS JOB, YOU MUST ALTER THE JCL.
//* THIS JCL IS AN EXAMPLE. THE VOLUME SERIAL NUMBERS AND
//* DATASET NAMES ARE FICTIONAL.
//*
//*****
//*****
//* DO NOT USE COMPACTION WHEN WRITING THE IMPORT LIST VOLUME FILES.
//*****
//* USING A LOGICAL SCRATCH VOLUME, CREATE THE IMPORT LIST VOLUME WITH
//* THE 2 REQUIRED FILES. IN ORDER TO ENSURE THAT A SCRATCH VOLUME
//* IS ALLOCATED IN THE TARGET LIBRARY FOR THE IMPORT OPERATION,
//* THE ACS ROUTINES NEED TO HAVE LOGIC TO ALLOCATE A TAPE
//* DRIVE IN THE TARGET LIBRARY. ONE WAY TO ACCOMPLISH THIS IS TO
//* HAVE A STORAGE GROUP UNIQUE TO EACH VTS LIBRARY PROVIDING A
//* 1 TO 1 RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN STORAGE GROUP AND LIBRARY.
//* THE ACS ROUTINES WOULD THEN NEED TO KEY OFF OF SOMETHING
//* UNIQUE IN THE DD STATEMENT (DATASET NAME, DATACLASS SPECIFICATION,
//* UNIT SPECIFICATION, ETC ...) TO GET THE CORRECT STORAGE GROUP
//* AND THE RIGHT TARGET LIBRARY SELECTED.
//*****
//* FILE SEQUENCE 1: LIST OF VOLUMES TO IMPORT
//*-----
//* THE FILE IDENTIFIER AND VERSION NUMBER IS DEFINED IN THE FIRST
//* RECORD AND MUST BE SPECIFIED AS ILLUSTRATED BELOW, STARTING IN
//* THE FIRST COLUMN:
//* IMPORT LIST 01
//*-----
//* AN OPTIONAL 16 CHARACTER USER FIELD CAN FOLLOW THE VERSION NUMBER
//* WITH A BLANK SPACE SEPARATING THE FIELDS.
//*-----
//* FOLLOWING THE IMPORT LIST FILE IDENTIFYING RECORD, THE LIST OF
//* FILE RECORDS CONTAIN A MAXIMUM OF THREE FIELDS SEPARATED BY
//* DELIMITERS. THE THREE FIELDS CONSIST OF THE STACKED VOLSER, THE
//* LOGICAL VOLSER AND THE IMPORT OPTION. THEY MUST APPEAR IN THAT
//* ORDER SEPARATED BY FIELD DELIMITERS. BOTH THE LOGICAL VOLSER
//* AND THE IMPORT OPTION ARE OPTIONAL.
//*-----
//* THE STACKED VOLSER FIELD IS 1-6 CHARACTERS LONG.
//* THIS IS THE STACKED VOLUME CONTAINING THE LOGICAL VOLUMES TO
//* IMPORT.
```

Figure 38. Sample JCL for an Import List Volume Using a Scratch Volume (Part 1 of 3)

```

/*-----
/* THE FIELD DELIMITER MUST BE A COMMA.
/*-----
/* THE LOGICAL VOLSER FIELD IS 6 CHARACTERS LONG. IF THE
/* FIELD IS ALL BLANKS, ALL LOGICAL VOLUMES ON THE SPECIFIED
/* STACKED VOLUME WILL BE IMPORTED.
/*-----
/* THE FIELD DELIMITER MUST BE A COMMA.
/*-----
/* THE IMPORT OPTION CAN BE OMITTED (BLANK) WHICH INDICATES THAT
/* THE DATA CONTENTS OF THE LOGICAL VOLUME IS COPIED INTO THE VTS
/* SUBSYSTEM AND A DATA FRAGMENT FILE ENTRY AND LIBRARY MANAGER
/* RECORD ARE ALSO CREATED. THE OPTION SPECIFIED CAN BE "SCRATCH"
/* WHICH INDICATES THAT ONLY A DATA FRAGMENT FILE ENTRY AND LIBRARY
/* MANAGER RECORD ARE CREATED (DATA CONTENTS NOT COPIED), OR THE
/* OPTION SPECIFIED CAN BE "INITIALIZE" WHICH INDICATES THAT ONLY
/* THE LIBRARY MANAGER RECORD FOR THE VOLUME IS CREATED. IF A
/* LOGICAL VOLSER IS NOT INCLUDED WITH THE STACKED VOLSER, THE
/* IMPORT OPTION SPECIFIED APPLIES TO ALL LOGICAL VOLUMES ON THE
/* STACKED VOLUME.
/*-----
/* FOR MORE DETAILED INFORMATION ON THE REQUIRED FORMAT
/* REFER TO THE IBM TOTALSTORAGE ENTERPRISE AUTOMATED TAPE
/* LIBRARY (3494) OPERATOR GUIDE.
/*-----
/******
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=IEBGENER
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUT2 DD DSN=HILEVELQ.IMPLIST,
// UNIT=3490,LABEL=(,SL),
// DISP=(NEW,KEEP),VOL=(,RETAIN),
// DCB=(RECFM=FB,BLKSIZE=80,LRECL=80,TRTCH=NOCOMP)
//SYSUT1 DD *
IMPORT LIST 01
STKD01,LOGCL1
STKD02,LOGCL2
STKD03
/*
//SYSIN DD DUMMY
/*
/******
/* FILE SEQUENCE 2: IMPORT STATUS FILE
/*-----
/* THE FILE IDENTIFIER AND VERSION NUMBER IS DEFINED IN THE FIRST
/* RECORD AND MUST BE SPECIFIED AS ILLUSTRATED BELOW, STARTING IN
/* THE FIRST COLUMN:
/* IMPORT STATUS 01
/*-----
/* AN OPTIONAL 16 CHARACTER USER FIELD CAN FOLLOW THE VERSION NUMBER
/* WITH A BLANK SPACE SEPARATING THE FIELDS.

```

Figure 38. Sample JCL for an Import List Volume Using a Scratch Volume (Part 2 of 3)

```

/*-----
/* CHECK THIS FILE AFTER THE IMPORT OPERATION IS COMPLETED FOR
/* INDIVIDUAL VOLUME IMPORT RESULTS.
/*-----
/* FOR DETAILED INFORMATION ON THE STATUS FILE
/* REFER TO THE IBM TOTALSTORAGE ENTERPRISE AUTOMATED TAPE
/* LIBRARY (3494) OPERATOR GUIDE.
/******
//STEP2   EXEC PGM=IEBGENER,COND=(4,LT)
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUT1   DD *
IMPORT STATUS 01
/*
//SYSUT2   DD DSN=HILEVELQ.IMPSTATS,
//          VOL=(,REF=*.STEP1.SYSUT2),
//          UNIT=3490,LABEL=(2,SL),
//          DISP=(NEW,CATLG),
//          DCB=*.STEP1.SYSUT2
//SYSIN    DD DUMMY
//*
//

```

Figure 38. Sample JCL for an Import List Volume Using a Scratch Volume (Part 3 of 3)

SAMPLIB Member CBRSPPIIM

This SAMPLIB JCL writes the two required files on the import list volume using a private volume.

```

//CBRSPPIIM JOB 1,'IMPORT',MSGLEVEL=(1,1)
//*****
/*
/* $SEG(CBRSPPIIM) COMP(SAM) PROD(OAM):
/*
/* SAMPLE JOB THAT USES A PRIVATE VOLUME TO WRITE THE
/* IMPORT LIST VOLUME AND INITIATE THE IMPORT OPERATION.
/*
/* BEFORE RUNNING THIS JOB, YOU MUST ALTER THE JCL.
/* THIS JCL IS AN EXAMPLE. THE VOLUME SERIAL NUMBERS AND
/* DATA SET NAMES ARE FICTIONAL.
/*
//*****
//*****
/* DO NOT USE COMPACTION WHEN WRITING THE IMPORT LIST VOLUME FILES.
//*****
/* USING A LOGICAL PRIVATE VOLUME (IMP001), CREATE THE IMPORT LIST
/* VOLUME WITH THE 2 REQUIRED FILES.
//*****

```

Figure 39. Sample JCL for an Import List Volume Using a Private Volume (Part 1 of 4)

```

/** FILE SEQUENCE 1:  LIST OF VOLUMES TO IMPORT
/**-----
/** THE FILE IDENTIFIER AND VERSION NUMBER IS DEFINED IN THE FIRST
/** RECORD AND MUST BE EXACTLY AS ILLUSTRATED BELOW, STARTING IN
/** THE FIRST COLUMN:
/** IMPORT LIST 01
/**-----
/** AN OPTIONAL 16 CHARACTER USER FIELD CAN FOLLOW THE VERSION NUMBER
/** WITH A BLANK SPACE SEPARATING THE FIELDS.
/**-----
/** FOLLOWING THE IMPORT LIST FILE IDENTIFYING RECORD, THE LIST OF
/** FILE RECORDS CONTAIN A MAXIMUM OF THREE FIELDS SEPARATED BY
/** DELIMITERS.  THE THREE FIELDS CONSIST OF THE STACKED VOLSER, THE
/** LOGICAL VOLSER AND THE IMPORT OPTION.  THEY MUST APPEAR IN THAT
/** ORDER SEPARATED BY FIELD DELIMITERS.  BOTH THE LOGICAL VOLSER
/** AND THE IMPORT OPTION ARE OPTIONAL.
/**-----
/** THE STACKED VOLSER FIELD IS 1-6 CHARACTERS LONG.
/** THIS IS THE STACKED VOLUME CONTAINING LOGICAL VOLUMES
/** TO BE IMPORTED.
/**-----
/** THE FIELD DELIMITER MUST BE A COMMA.
/**-----
/** THE LOGICAL VOLSER FIELD IS 6 CHARACTERS LONG.  IF THE
/** FIELD IS ALL BLANKS, ALL LOGICAL VOLUMES ON THE SPECIFIED
/** STACKED VOLUME WILL BE IMPORTED.
/**-----
/** THE FIELD DELIMITER MUST BE A COMMA.
/**-----
/** THE IMPORT OPTION CAN BE OMITTED (BLANK) WHICH INDICATES THAT
/** THE DATA CONTENTS OF THE LOGICAL VOLUME IS COPIED INTO THE VTS
/** SUBSYSTEM AND A DATA FRAGMENT FILE ENTRY AND LIBRARY MANAGER
/** RECORD ARE ALSO CREATED.  THE OPTION SPECIFIED CAN BE "SCRATCH"
/** WHICH INDICATES THAT ONLY A DATA FRAGMENT FILE ENTRY AND LIBRARY
/** MANAGER RECORD ARE CREATED (DATA CONTENTS NOT COPIED), OR THE
/** OPTION SPECIFIED CAN BE "INITIALIZE" WHICH INDICATES THAT ONLY
/** THE LIBRARY MANAGER RECORD FOR THE VOLUME IS CREATED.  IF A
/** LOGICAL VOLSER IS NOT INCLUDED WITH THE STACKED VOLSER, THE
/** IMPORT OPTION SPECIFIED APPLIES TO ALL LOGICAL VOLUMES ON THE
/** THE STACKED VOLUME.
/**-----
/** FOR MORE DETAILED INFORMATION ON THE REQUIRED FORMAT
/** REFER TO THE IBM TOTALSTORAGE ENTERPRISE AUTOMATED TAPE
/** LIBRARY (3494) OPERATOR GUIDE.
/*******
/**STEP1   EXEC PGM=IEBGENER
/**SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
/**SYSUT1   DD *
IMPORT LIST 01
STKD01,LOGCL1
STKD02,LOGCL2
STKD03
/*

```

Figure 39. Sample JCL for an Import List Volume Using a Private Volume (Part 2 of 4)

```

//SYSUT2 DD DSN=HILEVELQ.IMPLIST,
//          UNIT=3490,LABEL=(,SL),
//          DISP=(NEW,KEEP),VOL=(,RETAIN,,,SER=IMP001),
//          DCB=(RECFM=FB,BLKSIZE=80,LRECL=80,TRTCH=NOCOMP)
//SYSIN DD DUMMY
//*
/*****
/* FILE SEQUENCE 2:  IMPORT STATUS FILE
/*-----
/* THE FILE IDENTIFIER AND VERSION NUMBER IS DEFINED IN THE FIRST
/* RECORD AND MUST BE EXACTLY AS ILLUSTRATED BELOW, STARTING IN
/* THE FIRST COLUMN:
/* IMPORT STATUS 01
/*-----
/* AN OPTIONAL 16 CHARACTER USER FIELD CAN FOLLOW THE VERSION NUMBER
/* WITH A BLANK SPACE SEPARATING THE FIELDS.
/*-----
/* CHECK THIS FILE AFTER THE IMPORT OPERATION IS COMPLETED FOR
/* INDIVIDUAL VOLUME IMPORT RESULTS.
/*-----
/* FOR DETAILED INFORMATION ON THE STATUS FILE
/* REFER TO THE IBM TOTALSTORAGE ENTERPRISE AUTOMATED TAPE
/* LIBRARY (3494) OPERATOR GUIDE.
/*****
//STEP2 EXEC PGM=IEBGENER,COND=(4,LT)
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUT1 DD *
IMPORT STATUS 01
/*
//SYSUT2 DD DSN=HILEVELQ.IMPSTATS,
//          VOL=(,REF=*.STEP1.SYSUT2),
//          UNIT=3490,LABEL=(2,SL),
//          DISP=(NEW,KEEP),
//          DCB=*.STEP1.SYSUT2
//SYSIN DD DUMMY
/*
/*****
/* THE FOLLOWING STEP CAN BE USED TO INITIATE THE IMPORT
/* OPERATION AT THE LIBRARY.  USING THE CBRSPCLS SAMPLE PROGRAM
/* FROM SAMPLIB, CODE THE VOLSER NAME THAT WAS USED TO CREATE THE
/* IMPORT LIST VOLUME IN THE INPUT TRANSACTION RECORD.  REFER TO
/* THE CBRSPCLS SAMPLE PROGRAM FOR THE CORRECT SYNTAX FOR
/* INITIATING AN IMPORT OPERATION.  ONCE THE TRANSACTION RECORD
/* HAS BEEN CREATED, THE FOLLOWING STEP CAN BE UNCOMMENTED TO
/* INITIATE THE IMPORT OPERATION.
/*
/* NOTE:  THE FOLLOWING STEP COULD ALSO BE MODIFIED TO EXECUTE
/* AN INSTALLATION'S UTILITY CAPABLE OF ISSUING THE
/* LIBRARY IMPORT,VOLSER OPERATOR COMMAND.
/*
/*****

```

Figure 39. Sample JCL for an Import List Volume Using a Private Volume (Part 3 of 4)


```

//*STEP3    EXEC PGM=CBRSPLCS,COND=(4,LT)
//*SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//*INDD     DD DSN=HILEVELQ.TRANSIN.IMPORT,DISP=OLD
//*OUTDD    DD DSN=HILEVELQ.TRANSOUT.IMPORT,UNIT=SYSDA,
//*         SPACE=(TRK,(1,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG)
//*SYSIN    DD DUMMY
//*
//

```

Figure 39. Sample JCL for an Import List Volume Using a Private Volume (Part 4 of 4)

SAMPLIB Member CBRSPSXP

This SAMPLIB JCL writes the three required files on the export list volume using a scratch volume.

```

//CBRSPSXP  JOB 1,'EXPORT',MSGLEVEL=(1,1)
//*****
//*
//* $SEG(CBRSPSXP) COMP(SAM) PROD(OAM):
//*
//* SAMPLE JOB THAT USES A SCRATCH VOLUME TO WRITE THE
//* EXPORT LIST VOLUME.
//*
//* BEFORE RUNNING THIS JOB, YOU MUST ALTER THE JCL.
//* THIS JCL IS AN EXAMPLE. THE VOLUME SERIAL NUMBERS AND
//* DATASET NAMES ARE FICTIONAL.
//*
//*****
//*****
//* DO NOT USE COMPACTION WHEN WRITING THE EXPORT LIST VOLUME FILES.
//*****
//* USING A LOGICAL SCRATCH VOLUME, CREATE THE EXPORT LIST VOLUME WITH
//* THE 3 REQUIRED FILES. IN ORDER TO ENSURE THAT A SCRATCH VOLUME
//* IS ALLOCATED IN THE TARGET LIBRARY FOR THE EXPORT OPERATION,
//* THE ACS ROUTINES NEED TO HAVE LOGIC TO ALLOCATE A TAPE
//* DRIVE IN THE TARGET LIBRARY. ONE WAY TO ACCOMPLISH THIS IS TO
//* HAVE A STORAGE GROUP UNIQUE TO EACH VTS LIBRARY PROVIDING A
//* 1 TO 1 RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN STORAGE GROUP AND LIBRARY.
//* THE ACS ROUTINES WOULD THEN NEED TO KEY OFF OF SOMETHING
//* UNIQUE IN THE DD STATEMENT (DATASET NAME, DATACLASS SPECIFICATION,
//* UNIT SPECIFICATION, ETC ...) TO GET THE CORRECT STORAGE GROUP
//* AND THE RIGHT TARGET LIBRARY SELECTED.
//*****
//* FILE SEQUENCE 1: EXPORT LIST VOLUME FILE WITH LIST OF VOLUMES
//* TO BE EXPORTED ALONG WITH THEIR DESTINATIONS. ALL VOLUMES
//* WITH THE SAME DESTINATION WILL BE GROUPED TOGETHER ON
//* THE SAME SET OF STACKED VOLUMES.
//*-----

```

Figure 40. Sample JCL for an Export List Volume Using a Scratch Volume (Part 1 of 3)

```

/** THE FILE IDENTIFIER AND VERSION NUMBER IS DEFINED IN THE FIRST
/** RECORD AND MUST BE SPECIFIED AS ILLUSTRATED BELOW, STARTING IN
/** THE FIRST COLUMN:
/** EXPORT LIST 01
/**-----
/** AN OPTIONAL 16 CHARACTER USER FIELD CAN FOLLOW THE VERSION NUMBER
/** WITH A BLANK SPACE SEPARATING THE FIELDS.
/**-----
/** FOLLOWING THE EXPORT LIST FILE IDENTIFYING RECORD, THE LIST OF
/** FILE RECORDS CONTAIN TWO FIELDS SEPARATED BY A DELIMITER. THE
/** FIELDS, VOLSER AND DESTINATION, MUST APPEAR IN THAT ORDER
/** SEPARATED BY A FIELD DELIMITER.
/**-----
/** THE VOLSER FIELD IS 6 CHARACTERS LONG.
/**-----
/** THE FIELD DELIMITER MUST BE A COMMA.
/**-----
/** THE DESTINATION FIELD FOR THE LOGICAL VOLUME IS 1-16 CHARACTERS
/** LONG. A BLANK DESTINATION IS ALSO VALID.
/**-----
/** FOR MORE DETAILED INFORMATION ON THE REQUIRED FORMAT
/** REFER TO THE IBM TOTALSTORAGE ENTERPRISE AUTOMATED TAPE
/** LIBRARY (3494) OPERATOR GUIDE.
/**-----
/*******
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=IEBGENER
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUT2 DD DSN=HILEVELQ.EXPLIST,
// UNIT=3490,LABEL=(,SL),
// DISP=(NEW,KEEP),VOL=(,RETAIN),
// DCB=(RECFM=FB,BLKSIZE=80,LRECL=80,TRTCH=NOCOMP)
//SYSUT1 DD *
EXPORT LIST 01
VOLSR1,DISASTER
VOLSR2,DISASTER
VOLSR3,BACKUP
VOLSR4,BACKUP
VOLSR5
/*
//SYSIN DD DUMMY
/*
/*******
/** FILE SEQUENCE 2: RESERVED FILE (FOR FUTURE USE).
/**-----
/** THE RESERVED FILE MUST BE PRESENT, HOWEVER ITS LENGTH OR
/** CONTENTS IS NOT CHECKED OR USED.
/**-----
/*******
//STEP2 EXEC PGM=IEBGENER,COND=(4,LT)
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUT1 DD *
RESERVED FILE
/*

```

Figure 40. Sample JCL for an Export List Volume Using a Scratch Volume (Part 2 of 3)

```

//SYSUT2 DD DSN=HILEVELQ.RESERVED,
//          VOL=(,RETAIN,REF=*.STEP1.SYSUT2),
//          UNIT=3490,LABEL=(2,SL),
//          DISP=(NEW,KEEP),
//          DCB=*.STEP1.SYSUT2
//SYSIN DD DUMMY
//*
//*****
//* FILE SEQUENCE 3:  EXPORT STATUS FILE
//*-----
//* THE FILE IDENTIFIER AND VERSION NUMBER IS DEFINED IN THE FIRST
//* RECORD AND MUST BE EXACTLY AS ILLUSTRATED BELOW, STARTING IN
//* THE FIRST COLUMN:
//* EXPORT STATUS 01
//*-----
//* AN OPTIONAL 16 CHARACTER USER FIELD CAN FOLLOW THE VERSION NUMBER
//* WITH A BLANK SPACE SEPARATING THE FIELDS.
//*-----
//* CHECK THIS FILE AFTER THE EXPORT OPERATION IS COMPLETED FOR
//* INDIVIDUAL VOLUME EXPORT RESULTS.
//*-----
//* FOR DETAILED INFORMATION ON THE STATUS FILE
//* REFER TO THE IBM TOTALSTORAGE ENTERPRISE AUTOMATED TAPE
//* LIBRARY (3494) OPERATOR GUIDE.
//*****
//STEP3 EXEC PGM=IEBGENER,COND=(4,LT)
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUT1 DD *
EXPORT STATUS 01
/*
//SYSUT2 DD DSN=HILEVELQ.EXPSTATS,
//          VOLUME=(,REF=*.STEP1.SYSUT2),
//          UNIT=3490,LABEL=(3,SL),
//          DISP=(NEW,CATLG),
//          DCB=*.STEP1.SYSUT2
//SYSIN DD DUMMY
//*
//

```

Figure 40. Sample JCL for an Export List Volume Using a Scratch Volume (Part 3 of 3)

SAMPLIB Member CBRSPXP

This SAMPLIB JCL writes the three required files on the export list volume using a private volume.

```
//CBRSPXP JOB 1,'EXPORT',MSGLEVEL=(1,1)
//*****
//*
//* $SEG(CBRSPXP) COMP(SAM) PROD(OAM):
//*
//* SAMPLE JOB THAT USES A PRIVATE VOLUME TO WRITE THE
//* EXPORT LIST VOLUME AND INITIATE THE EXPORT OPERATION.
//*
//* BEFORE RUNNING THIS JOB, YOU MUST ALTER THE JCL.
//* THIS JCL IS AN EXAMPLE. THE VOLUME SERIAL NUMBERS AND
//* DATASET NAMES ARE FICTIONAL.
//*
//*****
//*****
//* DO NOT USE COMPACTION WHEN WRITING THE EXPORT LIST VOLUME FILES.
//*****
//* USING A LOGICAL PRIVATE VOLUME (EXP001), CREATE THE EXPORT LIST
//* VOLUME WITH THE 3 REQUIRED FILES.
//*****
//* FILE SEQUENCE 1: EXPORT LIST VOLUME FILE WITH LIST OF VOLUMES
//* TO BE EXPORTED ALONG WITH THEIR DESTINATIONS. ALL VOLUMES
//* WITH THE SAME DESTINATION WILL BE GROUPED TOGETHER ON
//* THE SAME SET OF STACKED VOLUMES.
//*-----
//* THE FILE IDENTIFIER AND VERSION NUMBER IS DEFINED IN THE FIRST
//* RECORD AND MUST BE EXACTLY AS ILLUSTRATED BELOW, STARTING IN
//* THE FIRST COLUMN:
//* EXPORT LIST 01
//*-----
//* AN OPTIONAL 16 CHARACTER USER FIELD CAN FOLLOW THE VERSION NUMBER
//* WITH A BLANK SPACE SEPARATING THE FIELDS.
//*-----
//* FOLLOWING THE EXPORT LIST FILE IDENTIFYING RECORD, THE LIST OF
//* FILE RECORDS CONTAIN TWO FIELDS SEPARATED BY A DELIMITER. THE
//* FIELDS, VOLSER AND DESTINATION, MUST APPEAR IN THAT ORDER
//* SEPARATED BY A FIELD DELIMITER.
//*-----
//* THE VOLSER FIELD IS 6 CHARACTERS LONG.
//*-----
//* THE FIELD DELIMITER MUST BE A COMMA.
```

Figure 41. Sample JCL for an Export List Volume Using a Private Volume (Part 1 of 3)

```

/*-----
/* THE DESTINATION FIELD FOR THE LOGICAL VOLUME IS 1-16 CHARACTERS
/* LONG. A BLANK DESTINATION IS ALSO VALID.
/*-----
/* FOR MORE DETAILED INFORMATION ON THE REQUIRED FORMAT
/* REFER TO THE IBM TOTALSTORAGE ENTERPRISE AUTOMATED TAPE
/* LIBRARY (3494) OPERATOR GUIDE.
/******
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=IEBGENER
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUT1 DD *
EXPORT LIST 01
VOLSR1,DISASTER
VOLSR2,DISASTER
VOLSR3,BACKUP
VOLSR4,BACKUP
VOLSR5
/*
//SYSUT2 DD DSN=HILEVELQ.EXPLIST,
// UNIT=3490,LABEL=(,SL),
// DISP=(NEW,KEEP),VOL=(,RETAIN,,,SER=EXP001),
// DCB=(RECFM=FB,BLKSIZE=80,LRECL=80,TRTCH=NOCOMP)
//SYSIN DD DUMMY
/*
/******
/* FILE SEQUENCE 2: RESERVED FILE (FOR FUTURE USE).
/*-----
/* THE RESERVED FILE MUST BE PRESENT, HOWEVER ITS LENGTH OR
/* CONTENTS IS NOT CHECKED OR USED.
/******
//STEP2 EXEC PGM=IEBGENER,COND=(4,LT)
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUT1 DD *
RESERVED FILE
/*
//SYSUT2 DD DSN=HILEVELQ.RESERVED,
// VOL=(,RETAIN,REF=*.STEP1.SYSUT2),
// UNIT=3490,LABEL=(2,SL),
// DISP=(NEW,KEEP),
// DCB=*.STEP1.SYSUT2
//SYSIN DD DUMMY
/*
/******
/* FILE SEQUENCE 3: EXPORT STATUS FILE
/*-----
/* THE FILE IDENTIFIER AND VERSION NUMBER IS DEFINED IN THE FIRST
/* RECORD AND MUST BE EXACTLY AS ILLUSTRATED BELOW, STARTING IN
/* THE FIRST COLUMN:
/* EXPORT STATUS 01

```

Figure 41. Sample JCL for an Export List Volume Using a Private Volume (Part 2 of 3)

```

/*-----
/* AN OPTIONAL 16 CHARACTER USER FIELD CAN FOLLOW THE VERSION NUMBER
/* WITH A BLANK SPACE SEPARATING THE FIELDS.
/*-----
/* CHECK THIS FILE AFTER THE EXPORT OPERATION IS COMPLETED FOR
/* INDIVIDUAL VOLUME EXPORT RESULTS.
/*-----
/* FOR DETAILED INFORMATION ON THE STATUS FILE
/* REFER TO THE IBM TOTALSTORAGE ENTERPRISE AUTOMATED TAPE
/* LIBRARY (3494) OPERATOR GUIDE.
/******
//STEP3 EXEC PGM=IEBGENER,COND=(4,LT)
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSUT1 DD *
EXPORT STATUS 01
/*
//SYSUT2 DD DSN=HILEVELQ.EXPSTATS,
//          VOLUME=(,REF=*.STEP1.SYSUT2),
//          UNIT=3490,LABEL=(3,SL),
//          DISP=(NEW,KEEP),
//          DCB=*.STEP1.SYSUT2
//SYSIN DD DUMMY
/*
/******
/* THE FOLLOWING STEP CAN BE USED TO INITIATE THE EXPORT
/* OPERATION AT THE LIBRARY. USING THE CBRSPCLS SAMPLE PROGRAM
/* FROM SAMPLIB, CODE THE VOLSER NAME THAT WAS USED TO CREATE THE
/* EXPORT LIST VOLUME IN THE INPUT TRANSACTION RECORD. REFER TO
/* THE CBRSPCLS SAMPLE PROGRAM FOR THE CORRECT SYNTAX FOR
/* INITIATING AN EXPORT OPERATION. ONCE THE TRANSACTION RECORD
/* HAS BEEN CREATED, THE FOLLOWING STEP CAN BE UNCOMMENTED TO
/* INITIATE THE EXPORT OPERATION.
/*
/* NOTE: THE FOLLOWING STEP COULD ALSO BE MODIFIED TO EXECUTE
/* AN INSTALLATION'S UTILITY CAPABLE OF ISSUING THE
/* LIBRARY EXPORT,VOLSER OPERATOR COMMAND.
/*
/******
/*STEP4 EXEC PGM=CBRSPLCS,COND=(4,LT)
/*SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
/*INDD DD DSN=HILEVELQ.TRANSIN.EXPORT,DISP=OLD
/*OUTDD DD DSN=HILEVELQ.TRANSOUT.EXPORT,UNIT=SYSDA,
/*          SPACE=(TRK,(1,1)),DISP=(NEW,CATLG)
/*SYSIN DD DUMMY
/*
//

```

Figure 41. Sample JCL for an Export List Volume Using a Private Volume (Part 3 of 3)

Appendix B. Using ISMF Panels to Define and Monitor Your Configuration

This chapter discusses typical ISMF functions for defining and monitoring the SMS configuration and tape volumes associated with your tape library:

- “Defining a Tape Library” on page 257.
- “Displaying Tape Library Attributes” on page 264.
- “Redefining a Tape Library” on page 267.
- “Altering a Tape Library” on page 270.
- “Copying Tape Library Definitions” on page 273.
- “Deleting a Tape Library Definition” on page 274.
- “Creating a List of Tape Libraries” on page 283.
- “Auditing Volumes in an Automated Tape Library” on page 286.
- “Altering the Volume Record” on page 289.
- “Ejecting a Volume from a Tape Library” on page 295.

ISMF for the Storage Administrator

The Interactive Storage Management Facility (ISMF) supports the system administrator in managing tape libraries and tape volumes through the use of panels and line operator commands. These panels and commands are used to list, define, display, and alter the tape library and tape volume attributes that make up the installation's SMS configuration.

The following series of panels illustrate examples of using ISMF to list, define, display, and alter information concerning the automated and manual tape library through the use of ISMF panels and line operators.

Defining a Tape Library

ISMF provides a library management function to allow the storage administrator to use a series of panels to easily define the tape libraries needed for their installation.

To define a tape library, select option 10, LIBRARY MANAGEMENT, from the ISMF Primary Option Menu (as shown in Figure 42 on page 258) to start the library management dialog.

Note: When defining the libraries associated with the Peer-to-Peer VTS Subsystem, remember to define the composite library along with the associated distributed libraries. From an ISMF define perspective, each library is defined as a separate tape library. Their association is established once communication is made to the library.

Panel

Help

ISMF PRIMARY OPTION MENU - DFSMS/MVS 1.4

Enter Selection or Command ==>

Select one of the following options and press Enter:

0

ISMF Profile

- Specify ISMF user profile

1

Data Set

- Perform Functions Against Data Sets

2

Volume

- Perform Functions Against Volumes

3

Management Class

- Specify Data Set Backup and Migration Criteria

4

Data Class

- Specify Data Set Allocation Parameters

5

Storage Class

- Specify Data Set Performance and Availability

6

Storage Group

- Specify Volume Names and Free Space Thresholds

7

Automatic Class Selection

- Specify ACS Routines and Test Criteria

8

Control Data Set

- Specify System Names and Default Criteria

9

Aggregate Group

- Specify Data Set Recovery Parameters

10

Library Management

- Specify Library and Drive Configurations

11

Enhanced ACS Management

- Perform Enhanced Test/Configuration Management

C

Data Collection

- Process Data Collection Function

L

List

- Perform Functions Against Saved ISMF Lists

R

Removable Media manager

- Perform Functions Against Removable Media

X

Exit

- Terminate ISMF

Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command or X to Exit.

Figure 42. ISMF Primary Option Menu Panel

When you select option 10, Library Management, the Library Management Selection Menu is displayed, as shown in Figure 43.

Note: Since this manual deals with OAM's relationship with tape libraries, only the tape option is discussed. For more information on OAM's role with optical libraries, refer to *z/OS DFSMS OAM Planning, Installation, and Storage Administration Guide for Object Support*.

Panel

Help

LIBRARY MANAGEMENT SELECTION MENU

Enter Selection or Command ==>

1

Optical Library

- Optical Library Configuration

2

Optical Drive

- Optical Drive Configuration

3

Tape Library

- Tape Library Configuration

Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Exit.

Figure 43. Library Management Selection Menu Panel

Selecting option 3, Tape Library, and hitting ENTER displays the Tape Library Application Selection panel (see Figure 44).

Note: For example purposes, a CDS name of SCDS.TEMP.PRIMARY, and library names of LIB1 and LIB2 are used in the panels in this appendix.

Panel Utilities Help

TAPE LIBRARY APPLICATION SELECTION

Command ==>_

To Perform Library Operations, Specify:

CDS Name 'SCDS.TEMP.PRIMARY'

(1 to 44 character data set name or 'ACTIVE')

Library Name LIB1

(For Tape Library List, fully or Partially Specified or * for all)

Select one of the following options:

3 1. LIST - Generate a list of Libraries

2. DISPLAY - Display a Library

3. DEFINE - Define a Library

4. ALTER - Alter a Library

If List option is chosen,

Enter "/" to selection option _ Respecify View Criteria

_ Respecify Sort Criteria

Use ENTER Command to Perform Selection;

Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Exit.

Figure 44. Tape Library Application Selection Panel

To begin the library definition process:

1. Enter a CDS NAME.
2. Enter a LIBRARY NAME.
3. Select option 3, DEFINE.

Notes:

1. The letter "V" is reserved exclusively as the first character in a VOLCAT volume serial number. It readily identifies the volume serial number as belonging to a VOLCAT. To avoid confusion with the VOLCAT naming conventions, you may not use the letter "V" as the first character of a tape library name. Additionally, tape library names may not begin with numeric characters. You may use alphabetic and the special characters "\$", "@", and "#" for the first character of a tape library name. You may use alphabetic, numeric, and the aforementioned special characters for the remainder of a tape library name.
2. After the first library definition, ISMF primes CDS NAME and LIBRARY NAME with the last used reference values on the Tape Library Application Selection panel. The default CDS NAME is the single-quoted word 'ACTIVE', which represents the currently active configuration.

Choosing option 3, DEFINE, displays the TAPE LIBRARY DEFINE panel with all the input fields set to blank. You can enter a definition for LIB1, as shown in the sample Figure 45 on page 260.

Panel Utilities Scroll Help			
		TAPE LIBRARY DEFINE	Page 1 of 2
Command ==> _			
SCDS Name . : SCDS.TEMP.PRIMARY			
Library Name : LIB1			
To Define Library, Specify:			
Description ==> Automated tape library 0001C in			
==> building 031			
Library ID	0001C	(00001 to FFFFF)	
Console Name	LIB1CON		
Entry Default Data Class	DCATLDS		
Entry Default Use Attribute	P	(P=PRIVATE or S=SCRATCH)	
Eject Default	K	(P=PURGE or K=KEEP)	
Media Type: Scratch Threshold			
Media1	100	Media3	100 (0 to 999999)
Media2	150	Media4	0 (0 to 999999)
Use ENTER to Perform Verification; Use DOWN Command to View Next Panel;			
Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Save and Exit; CANCEL to Exit.			

Figure 45. Tape Library Define Panel (Page 1 of 2)

SCDS NAME and **LIBRARY NAME** are output fields that contain the SCDS and library name you specified in the Tape Library Management Application Selection panel.

Specify the following information for the tape library definition in the tape configuration database and in the current source control data set.

DESCRIPTION

A 120-byte field used for entering a description of the library definition. There are no restrictions on its content.

LIBRARY ID Establishes the connection between the software-assigned library name and the tape drives that belong to the library. A valid value is entered as five hexadecimal digits. For an ATLDS, it is defined at the library by the customer engineer and must also match what is optionally specified in the HCD LIBRARY-ID parameter. This value is returned by the control unit in response to a read device characteristics command. For an MTL, it must match what was specified in the HCD LIBRARY-ID parameter. Valid values are 00001 – FFFFF; a default value of 00000 is not allowed.

CONSOLE NAME

Specifies the name of the MVS console associated with the tape library being defined. The console name provides precise routing of console messages pertaining to a specific library. When the console name is not specified on the Tape Library Define panel, console name routing support is not provided. The console name is passed to the installation exits for their use. To use console name message routing, the console name defined on this panel must also be defined in the CONSOLxx member of the PARMLIB (see the discussion on page 50 for more information on this PARMLIB member). A valid value is entered as two to eight characters. Valid characters are alphanumeric, #, @, or \$; the first character must be nonnumeric.

ENTRY DEFAULT DATA CLASS

Specifies the data class to be used to determine the interchange attributes for private volumes entered into the tape library. No other attributes of the data class are used. You can use the cartridge entry installation exit (CBRUXENT) to assign appropriate interchange values that override the default data class specifications.

ENTRY DEFAULT USE ATTRIBUTE

Specifies the default volume use attribute for the cartridges entered into the library being defined.

- P** Indicates PRIVATE for the entry default use attribute. These tape cartridges can be used to satisfy specific volume requests.
- S** Indicates SCRATCH for the entry default use attribute. These tape cartridges can be used to satisfy nonspecific volume requests.

EJECT DEFAULT

Specifies the default action for the TCDB volume record when a tape cartridge is ejected from the library being defined.

- P** Indicates PURGE for the eject default parameter. The volume record is deleted from the TCDB.
- K** Indicates KEEP for the eject default parameter. The volume record is kept in the TCDB.

Note: No matter which disposition is specified, the volume record in the AT LDS library manager inventory is deleted upon cartridge ejection.

SCRATCH THRESHOLD

Specify the minimum acceptable number of scratch volumes for *each* media type in the library being defined. The following are recognized media types:

- MEDIA1** IBM Cartridge System Tape. The number must be in the range of 0 to 999999. The default value of this parameter is 0.
- MEDIA2** IBM Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape. The number must be in the range of 0 to 999999. The default value of this parameter is 0.
- MEDIA3** IBM High Performance Cartridge Tape. The number must be in the range of 0 to 999999. The default value of this parameter is 0.
- MEDIA4** Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape. The number must be in the range of 0 to 999999. The default value of this parameter is 0.

When the number of scratch volumes in the library falls below the scratch volume threshold for that media type, operator action message **CBR3660A** is issued requesting that scratch volumes of the required media type be entered into the library. When the number of scratch volumes exceeds twice the scratch volume threshold for that media type, the message is deleted.

Attention: It is recommended that a scratch threshold be set for *all* media types used within a tape library. If a media type is not being used, the default threshold value of zero (threshold=0) should be used.

When the first define panel is complete, use the DOWN command to display the second part of the Tape Library Define panel (Figure 46). Continue with the definition for library LIB1 by completing part two of the Tape Library Define panel.

Panel Utilities Scroll Help
TAPE LIBRARY DEFINE
Page 2 of 2

Command ==>

SCDS Name . : SCDS.TEMP.PRIMARY
Library Name : LIB1

Initial Online Status (Yes, No, or Blank):

*SYSPLX01 ==> YES	*SYSPLX02 ==>	*SYSPLX03 ==> NO	*SYSPLX04 ==>
SYSSTM01 ==> YES	SYSSTM08 ==> YES	SYSSTM15 ==>	SYSSTM22 ==>
SYSSTM02 ==>	SYSSTM09 ==>	SYSSTM16 ==>	SYSSTM23 ==>
SYSSTM03 ==>	SYSSTM10 ==>	SYSSTM17 ==>	SYSSTM24 ==>
SYSSTM04 ==>	SYSSTM11 ==>	SYSSTM18 ==>	SYSSTM25 ==>
SYSSTM05 ==>	SYSSTM12 ==>	SYSSTM19 ==>	SYSSTM26 ==>
SYSSTM06 ==>	SYSSTM13 ==>	SYSSTM20 ==>	SYSSTM27 ==>
SYSSTM07 ==>	SYSSTM14 ==>	SYSSTM21 ==>	SYSSTM28 ==>

WARNING:

When you connect a tape library to a system group rather than a system, you lose the ability to vary that library online or offline to the individual systems in the system group. It is strongly recommended that the tape library be connected to individual systems only.

Use ENTER to Perform Verification; Use UP Command to View Previous Panel; Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Save and Exit; CANCEL to Exit.

Figure 46. Tape Library Define Panel (Page 2 of 2)

Note: You can exit the Tape Library Define panel at any time without saving tape library attributes by issuing the CANCEL command.

Specify the following information on this panel:

INITIAL ONLINE STATUS

Specifies how the library being defined will be associated to each system or system group in the SMS complex each time this SCDS is activated. The following are valid values:

- Online (YES)
- Offline (NO)
- Not connected (blank)

A tape library can be connected to any combination of one or more of the systems or system groups defined in the CDS base, but it is strongly recommended that the tape libraries be connected to systems rather than system groups. When a tape library is connected to a system group, the user loses the ability to vary the tape library online or offline to the individual systems in the system group. The ISMF Tape Library panels support both system names and system group names.

The system administrator defining the libraries does not need to be logged on to one of the systems in the SMS complex to define the libraries in that complex—both the TCDB and the SCDS can be moved after being created.

However, both the SCDS and the TCDB for the SMS complex being defined must be available to the system administrator during the library definition process.

The definition for the tape library does not take affect until the SCDS to which it is defined is activated. Once the library is defined within the SCDS and the record for the library is updated in the TCDB, the attributes assigned to the last defined library for the SCDS are displayed on the Tape Library Application Selection menu and the Tape Library Define panel as defaults. These values can be modified to define other libraries as needed.

After you complete the definition of LIB1, the Tape Library Application Selection menu (Figure 44 on page 259) is displayed again, and you can define your second tape library as follows:

1. Enter a LIBRARY NAME (LIB2)
2. Press ENTER

Note: Since LIB1 was the last library defined, the SCDS to which it belongs is primed to display in the SCDS NAME field on this panel (assuming the SCDS was reactivated since the definition of LIB1). If you wish to change the SCDS NAME, you may do so here; otherwise, the library (LIB2) that is currently being defined will reside in the same SCDS as LIB1.

The Tape Library Define panel (Figure 47 and Figure 48 on page 264) are again displayed, and you enter the appropriate information for LIB2.

Panel Utilities Scroll Help
TAPE LIBRARY DEFINE
Page 1 of 2

Command ==>_

SCDS Name . : SCDS.TEMP.PRIMARY
Library Name : LIB2

To Define Library, Specify:
Description ==> Manual tape library 0002C in
 ==> building 021

Library ID	0002C	(00001 to FFFFF)
Console Name	LIB2CON	
Entry Default Data Class	DCMTLDS	
Entry Default Use Attribute	P	(P=PRIVATE or S=SCRATCH)
Eject Default	K	(P=PURGE or K=KEEP)

Media Type:	Scratch Threshold	
Media1	100	Media3 0 (0 to 999999)
Media2	150	Media4 0 (0 TO 999999)

Use ENTER to Perform Verification; Use DOWN Command to View Next Panel;
Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Save and Exit; Cancel To Exit.

Figure 47. Tape Library Define Panel (Page 1 of 2)

Panel Utilities Scroll Help				
-----			Page 1 of 2	
TAPE LIBRARY DISPLAY				
Command ==>_				
CDS Name . . . : SCDS.TEMP.PRIMARY				
Library Name . : LIB1				
Library Type . : AUTOMATED				
Device Type . : 3495-L50				
Library ID . . : 0001C				
Description . : Automated tape library 0001C in building 031				
Console Name : LIB1CON				
Entry Default Data Class . : DCATLDS				
Entry Default Use Attribute : PRIVATE				
Eject Default : KEEP				
Media Type:	Media1	Media2	Media3	Media4
Scratch Threshold:	100	150	100	0
Scratch Number:	1250	725	1100	0
Use DOWN Command to View Next Panel;				
Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Exit.				

Figure 49. Tape Library Display Panel (Page 1 of 2)

The following fields are displayed:

CDS NAME The name of the control data set to which this library is associated.

LIBRARY NAME

The name you specified in the library definition on the Tape Library Management Application Selection panel.

LIBRARY TYPE

The type of library. Valid types are: AUTOMATED and MANUAL.

DEVICE TYPE

The device type associated with the library. Valid device types are:

- 3494-L10, 3495-L20, 3495-L30, 3495-L40, 3495-L50 (ATLDSs)
- Manual (MTL)
- ----- the value is not available.
- ???????? the value cannot be displayed due to an error.

LIBRARY ID

Establishes the connection between the software-assigned library name and the tape drives that belong to the library. A valid value is entered as five-hexadecimal digits. For an ATLDS, it is defined at the library by the customer engineer and must also match what is optionally specified in the HCD LIBRARY-ID parameter. This value is returned by the control unit in response to a read device characteristics command. For an MTL, it must match what was specified in the HCD LIBRARY-ID parameter. Valid values are 00001 - FFFFF; a default value of 00000 is not allowed.

DESCRIPTION

This is a 120-byte field that the installation uses to describe the library. There are no restrictions on its content.

CONSOLE NAME

The name of the MVS console associated with the tape library being defined. The console name provides for precise routing of console messages pertaining to a specific library. When the console

name is not specified, console name routing support is not provided. The console name is passed to the installation exits for their use.

ENTRY DEFAULT DATA CLASS

Specifies the data class to be used to determine the interchange attributes for private volumes entered into the tape library. No other attributes of the data class are used. You can use the cartridge entry installation exit (CBRUXENT) to assign appropriate interchange values that override the default data class specifications.

ENTRY DEFAULT USE ATTRIBUTE

The default volume use attribute for the cartridges entered into the library.

PRIVATE These tape cartridges can be used to satisfy specific volume requests.

SCRATCH These tape cartridges can be used to satisfy nonspecific volume requests.

EJECT DEFAULT

The default action for the TCDB volume record when a tape cartridge is ejected from the library being defined.

PURGE The volume record is deleted from the TCDB.

KEEP The volume record is kept in the TCDB.

Note: No matter which disposition is specified, the volume record in the ATLDS library manager inventory is deleted upon cartridge ejection.

MEDIA TYPE The following are recognized media types:

MEDIA1 IBM Cartridge System Tape

MEDIA2 IBM Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape

MEDIA3 IBM High Performance Cartridge Tape

MEDIA4 IBM Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape

SCRATCH THRESHOLD

The minimum acceptable number of scratch volumes for each media type in the library.

SCRATCH NUMBER

The number of tape cartridges available to satisfy nonspecific volume requests.

Figure 50 on page 267 shows the second part of the Tape Library Display panel.


```

Panel  Utilities  Scroll  Help
-----
                                TAPE LIBRARY DISPLAY                                Page 2 of 2
Command ==>

CDS Name . . . :SCDS.TEMP.PRIMARY
Library Name . :LIB1
Library Type . :AUTOMATED
Device Type .  :3495-L50
Library ID . . :0001C

Number of Slots . :16260
Empty Slots . . . :2050
Initial Online Status :
  *SYSPLX01:      *SYSPLX02:      *SYSPLX03:      *SYSPLX04:
  SYSSTM01:YES    SYSSTM08:      SYSSTM15:      SYSSTM22:
  SYSSTM02:      SYSSTM09:      SYSSTM16:      SYSSTM23:
  SYSSTM03:      SYSSTM10:      SYSSTM17:      SYSSTM24:
  SYSSTM04:YES    SYSSTM11:      SYSSTM18:      SYSSTM25:
  SYSSTM05:      SYSSTM12:      SYSSTM19:      SYSSTM26:
  SYSSTM06:      SYSSTM13:      SYSSTM20:      SYSSTM27:
  SYSSTM07:      SYSSTM14:      SYSSTM21:      SYSSTM28:
Use UP Command to View Previous Panel;
Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Exit.

```

Figure 50. Tape Library Display Panel (Page 2 of 2)

The following fields are displayed:

NUMBER OF SLOTS

The number of tape cartridge slots within the tape library. This number is always zero for an MTL.

EMPTY SLOTS

The number of tape cartridge slots that are empty and available within the tape library. This number is always zero for an MTL.

INITIAL ONLINE STATUS

The status of whether this tape library should be:

- Online (YES)
- Offline (NO)
- Not connected (blank)

to each system or system group in the SMS complex when the SCDS is activated. As the online/offline status is changed with the SMS VARY, LIBRARY command, the current status is maintained in the ACDS but not in the base SCDS. Thus, the status values in the base SCDS may not be current.

The system and system group names shown are the actual names taken from the base configuration record of the CDS. The number of system and system group names shown can vary between one and thirty-two. The display shows the difference between system names and system group names by preceding each system group name by an asterisk.

Redefining a Tape Library

The storage administrator can redefine a tape library by specifying a tape library that has a record in the TCDB, but no corresponding library definition in this SCDS. The Tape Library Redefine panels (Figure 51 on page 268, Figure 52 on page 269, Figure 53 on page 269, and Figure 54 on page 270) are displayed when the storage administrator selects option 3, DEFINE, on the Tape Library Application Selection

panel, and there is already a tape library record for this library name in the TCDB. The library is redefined since most of the information describing the library already resides in the TCDB and does not have to be re-entered.

When the redefine panel is first shown, message DGTLM020—ATTRIBUTES PRIMED appears to emphasize that a redefine is taking place. When END is pressed, a record is added to the new SCDS. The TCDB is updated only if one of the relevant fields on a redefine panel is changed. The changes are not effective until the updated SCDS is activated.

Panel Utilities Scroll Help

TAPE LIBRARY REDEFINEATTRIBUTES PRIMED

Command ==>_

SCDS Name . :SCDS.TEMP2.PRIMARY

Library Name :LIB1

Library Type :AUTOMATED

Device Type :3495-L50

To Redefine Library, Specify:

Description ==> Automated tape library 0001C in

==> building 031

Library ID 0001C (00001 to FFFFF)

Console Name LIB1CON

Entry Default Data class

Entry Default Use Attribute . . P (P=PRIVATE or S=SCRATCH)

Eject Default K (P=PURGE or K=KEEP)

Use ENTER to Perform Verification; Use DOWN Command to View Next Panel;

Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Save and Exit; CANCEL to Exit.

Figure 51. Tape Library Redefine Panel (Page 1 of 4)

Panel Utilities Scroll Help			
TAPE LIBRARY REDEFINE		ATTRIBUTES PRIMED	
Command ==>_			
SCDS Name . :SCDS.TEMP2.PRIMARY			
Library Name :LIB1			
Library Type :AUTOMATED			
Device Type :3495-L50			
Media Type:	Scratch Threshold	Scratch Number	
Media1	100 (0 to 999999)	1250	
Media2	150 (0 to 999999)	725	
Media3	100 (0 to 999999)	1100	
Media4	0 (0 to 999999)	0	
Use ENTER to Perform Verification; Use DOWN Command to View Next Panel; Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Save and Exit; CANCEL to Exit.			

Figure 52. Tape Library Redefine Panel (Page 2 of 4)

Panel Utilities Scroll Help			
TAPE LIBRARY REDEFINE		ATTRIBUTES PRIMED	
Command ==>			
SCDS Name . . . :SCDS.TEMP2.PRIMARY			
Library Name . . :LIB1			
Library Type . . :AUTOMATED			
Device Type . . :3495-L50		* SYS GROUP= Sysplex minus systems in sysplex explicitly defined SCDS	
Library ID . . . :0001C			
Number of Slots :16260		Empty Slots . . :2050	
Initial Online Status (Yes, No, or Blank):			
*SYSPLX01 ==>	*SYSPLX02 ==>	*SYSPLX03 ==>	*SYSPLX04 ==>
SYSSTM01 ==> YES	SYSSTM04 ==> YES	SYSSTM07 ==>	SYSSTM10 ==>
SYSSTM02 ==>	SYSSTM05 ==>	SYSSTM08 ==>	SYSSTM11 ==>
SYSSTM03 ==>	SYSSTM06 ==>	SYSSTM09 ==>	SYSSTM12 ==>
WARNING: When you connect a tape library to a system group rather than a system, you lose the ability to vary that library online or offline to the individual systems in the system group. It is strongly recommended that the tape library be connected to individual systems only. Use ENTER to Perform Verification; Use UP/DOWN Command to View Other Panels; Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Save and Exit; CANCEL to Exit.			

Figure 53. Tape Library Redefine Panel (Page 3 of 4)

Panel Utilities Scroll Help			
TAPE LIBRARY REDEFINE		ATTRIBUTES PRIMED	
Command ==>			
SCDS Name . . :SCDS.TEMP2.PRIMARY			
Library Name :LIB1			
Library Type :AUTOMATED		* SYS GROUP = Sysplex minus systems in	
Device Type . :3495-L50		sysplex explicitly defined in SCDS.	
Library ID . :0001C			
Number of Slots :16260		Empty Slots . :2050	
Initial Online Status (Yes, No, or Blank):			
SYSSTM13 ==>	YES	SYSSTM17 ==>	YES
SYSSTM14 ==>		SYSSTM18 ==>	
SYSSTM15 ==>		SYSSTM19 ==>	
SYSSTM16 ==>		SYSSTM20 ==>	
SYSSTM21 ==>		SYSSTM22 ==>	
SYSSTM23 ==>		SYSSTM24 ==>	
SYSSTM25 ==>		SYSSTM26 ==>	
SYSSTM27 ==>		SYSSTM28 ==>	
WARNING:			
When you connect a tape library to a system group rather than a system, you lose the ability to vary that library online or offline to the individual systems in the system group. It is strongly recommended that the tape library be connected to individual systems only.			
Use ENTER to Perform Verification; Use UP Command to View Previous Panel; Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Save and Exit; CANCEL to Exit.			

Figure 54. Tape Library Redefine Panel (Page 4 of 4)

The following fields are primed from the TCDB when the Tape Library Redefine panels are displayed:

- DESCRIPTION
- LIBRARY ID
- CONSOLE NAME
- SCRATCH THRESHOLD

The following fields are maintained in the SCDS and not in the TCDB. Since there is no SCDS definition to supply these values for redefine, the redefine panel displays the following primed values:

- ENTRY DEFAULT DATA CLASS (blanks)
- ENTRY DEFAULT USE ATTRIBUTE (PRIVATE)
- EJECT DEFAULT (KEEP)
- INITIAL ONLINE STATUS
 - NO for the system the user is logged on to (if that system is included in this SCDS)
 - blanks for all other systems

Note: If identical values in different CDSs are needed, the COPY line operator on the TAPE LIBRARY LIST panel should be used.

Altering a Tape Library

The Tape Library Alter panels are displayed when a storage administrator selects option 4, ALTER, on the Tape Library Application Selection panel or enters the alter line operator on the Tape Library List panel (see Figure 68 on page 284 through Figure 71 on page 285).

You can use the Tape Library Alter option to alter the attributes of an existing tape library. Altering a library results in updating the library definition within the specified SCDS and the attributes stored in the TCDB.

You can alter the tape library, LIB1, to change its definition in the tape configuration database by using the Tape Library Alter panel. To alter the tape library, start from the Tape Library Application Selection panel, shown in Figure 44 on page 259:

1. Specify the name of the SCDS containing the tape library you want to change (SCDS.TEMP.PRIMARY).
2. Specify the tape library name (LIB1).
3. Select option 4, ALTER.

ISMF displays the Tape Library Alter panels shown in Figure 55, Figure 56 on page 272, Figure 57 on page 272, and Figure 58 on page 273.

Panel Utilities Scroll Help
TAPE LIBRARY ALTER
Page 1 of 4

Command ==> _

SCDS Name . :SCDS.TEMP.PRIMARY
Library Name :LIB1
Library Type :AUTOMATED
Device Type :3495-L50

To ALTER Library, Specify:
Description ==> Automated tape library 0001C in
==> building 031

Library ID	0001C	(00001 to FFFFF)
Console Name	LIB1CON	
Entry Default Data Class	DCATLDS	
Entry Default Use Attribute . .	P	(P=PRIVATE or S=SCRATCH)
Eject Default	K	(P=PURGE or K=KEEP)

Use ENTER to Perform Verification; Use DOWN Command to View Next Panel;
Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Save and Exit; CANCEL to Exit.

Figure 55. Tape Library Alter Panel (Page 1 of 4)

Panel Utilities Scroll Help			
-----		TAPE LIBRARY ALTER	Page 2 of 4
Command ==>_			
SCDS Name . :SCDS.TEMP.PRIMARY			
Library Name :LIB1			
Library Type :AUTOMATED			
Device Type :3495-L50			
Media Type:	Scratch Threshold	Scratch Number	
Media1	100 (0 to 999999)	1250	
Media2	150 (0 to 999999)	725	
Media3	100 (0 to 999999)	1100	
Media4	0 (0 to 999999)	0	
Use ENTER to Perform Verification; Use DOWN Command to View Next Panel;			
Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Save and Exit; CANCEL to Exit.			

Figure 56. Tape Library Alter Panel (Page 2 of 4)

Panel Utilities Scroll Help			
-----		TAPE LIBRARY ALTER	Page 3 of 4
Command ==>			
SCDS Name . . . :SCDS.TEMP.PRIMARY			
Library Name . . :LIB1			
Library Type . . :AUTOMATED			
Device Type . . :3495-L50		* SYS GROUP = Sysplex minus systems in sysplex explicitly defined SCDS	
Library ID . . . :0001C			
Number of Slots :16260		Empty Slots . . :2050	
Initial Online Status (Yes, No, or Blank):			
*SYSPLX01 ==>	*SYSPLX02 ==>	*SYSPLX03 ==>	*SYSPLX04 ==>
SYSSTM01 ==> YES	SYSSTM04 ==> YES	SYSSTM07 ==>	SYSSTM10 ==>
SYSSTM02 ==>	SYSSTM05 ==>	SYSSTM08 ==>	SYSSTM11 ==>
SYSSTM03 ==>	SYSSTM06 ==>	SYSSTM09 ==>	SYSSTM12 ==>
WARNING:			
When you connect a tape library to a system group rather than a system, you lose the ability to vary that library online or offline to the individual systems in the system group. It is strongly recommended that the tape library be connected to individual systems only.			
Use ENTER to Perform Verification; Use UP/DOWN Command to View Other Panels;			
Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Save and Exit; CANCEL to Exit.			

Figure 57. Tape Library Alter Panel (Page 3 of 4)

Panel Utilities Scroll Help			
-----		TAPE LIBRARY ALTER	Page 4 of 4
Command ==>			
SCDS Name . . :SCDS.TEMP.PRIMARY			
Library Name :LIB1			
Library Type :AUTOMATED		* SYS GROUP = Sysplex minus systems in	
Device Type . :3495-L50		sysplex explicitly defined in SCDS	
Library ID . : 0001C			
Number of Slots :16260		Empty Slots:	2050
Initial Online Status (Yes, No, or Blank):			
SYSSTM13 ==>	YES	SYSSTM17 ==>	YES
SYSSTM14 ==>		SYSSTM18 ==>	
SYSSTM15 ==>		SYSSTM19 ==>	
SYSSTM16 ==>		SYSSTM20 ==>	
SYSSTM21 ==>		SYSSTM22 ==>	
SYSSTM23 ==>		SYSSTM24 ==>	
SYSSTM25 ==>		SYSSTM26 ==>	
SYSSTM27 ==>		SYSSTM28 ==>	
WARNING:			
When you connect a tape library to a system group rather than a system, you lose the ability to vary that library online or offline to the individual systems in the system group. It is strongly recommended that the tape library be connected to individual systems only.			
Use ENTER to Perform Verification; Use UP Command to View Previous Panel; Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Save and Exit; CANCEL to Exit.			

Figure 58. Tape Library Alter Panel (Page 4 of 4)

The following fields can be altered:

- DESCRIPTION
- LIBRARY ID
- CONSOLE NAME
- ENTRY DEFAULT DATA CLASS
- ENTRY DEFAULT USE ATTRIBUTE
- EJECT DEFAULT
- INITIAL ONLINE STATUS

Copying Tape Library Definitions

You can copy existing tape library definitions and modify them to create new tape library definitions through the use of two methods.

One method is to use the attributes assigned to the last tape library defined. These fields are primed by ISMF from the last library definition. You can simply modify the attributes to define a new tape library and the new tape library is added to the SCDS and the tape configuration database.

Another method of copying existing tape library definitions to create new tape library definitions is to use the COPY line operator from the Tape Library List panel (see Figure 68 on page 284 through Figure 71 on page 285). You simply enter the COPY line operator in the LINE OPERATOR column next to the tape library you wish to copy. Press ENTER to copy the existing tape library attributes and the COPY ENTRY panel is displayed (see Figure 59 on page 274).

Panel
Utilities
Help

COPY ENTRY PANEL

Command ==>

Definition will be copied from:

Data Set Name . : 'SCDS.TEMP.PRIMARY'
Definition Name : LIB1
Definition Type : TAPE LIBRARY

Specify "Copy To" Definition:

Data Set Name . . 'SCDS.TEMP2.PRIMARY'
(1 to 46 characters)

Definition Name . . (1 to 8 characters, fully specified)

Enter "/" to select option _ Perform Alter

Use ENTER to Perform Copy;
Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Exit.

Figure 59. Copy Entry Panel

Identifying the From and To Sources for Copying

The *from* DATA SET NAME field identifies the source that you are copying. It is primed with the value you specified on the Tape Library Application Selection panel. The *from* DEFINITION NAME field identifies the name of the tape library that you are copying. This field is primed with the value from the LIBRARY NAME field of the Tape Library List panel.

The *to* DATA SET NAME field identifies the target SCDS of the copy. It must be a name of an SCDS. It is primed with the value of the *from* DATA SET NAME if the *from* DATA SET NAME contains an SCDS name. It is primed with blanks if the *from* DATA SET NAME is 'ACTIVE'. The *to* DEFINITION NAME field identifies the name of the tape library you wish to define. It is primed with blanks.

In the PERFORM ALTER field, you indicate if you want to change some of the attributes of the copy you are creating. If you specify **Y** for YES, you go to the pertinent Alter panel. If you specify **N** for NO, you remain on the COPY ENTRY PANEL, where you can perform another copy or return to the original library list panel.

When copying a tape library definition from one SCDS into another SCDS, you do not need to select the PERFORM ALTER option. In the case where a tape library definition is copied within the same SCDS, you must choose the PERFORM ALTER option because tape libraries in the same SCDS must differ from one definition to another.

When you have specified the values, press ENTER to perform the copy.

Deleting a Tape Library Definition

Deleting a tape library definition removes the definition for that tape library from the specified SCDS and, upon activation of that SCDS, the tape library data server is

unavailable to the system. Deleting a tape library dataset server has no effect on the TCDB because there may be other SCDSs that still contain the tape library data server. In order to delete a tape library from the TCDB, IDCAMS with the DELETE LIBENTRY parameters must be used.

As part of the tape library definition deletion, all storage group constructs in the SCDS that are defined as including the library undergoing deletion are updated to remove that library from the storage group definition. When the last library is deleted from a tape storage group, the invalid tape storage group definition remains in the SCDS. The SCDS will not validate until all invalid tape storage group definitions are either deleted or altered so that they contain at least one tape library.

From the Tape Library List panel (see Figure 68 on page 284 through Figure 71 on page 285):

1. Enter DELETE in the LINE OPERATOR column next to the tape library you wish to delete.
2. Press ENTER.

The Confirm Delete Request panel, Figure 60, is displayed.

Panel Utilities Help

CONFIRM DELETE REQUEST

Command ==>>

To Confirm Deletion on the following Tape Library:

Tape Library Name :LIB1
Residing in SCDS . : 'SCDS.TEMP.PRIMARY'

Specify the following:
Enter "/" to select option _ Perform Deletion

Use ENTER to Perform Operation;
Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Exit.

Figure 60. Confirm Delete Request Panel

3. Confirm that the displayed library is the one that you want to delete. If it is, enter **Y** for YES, or **N** for NO.
4. Press ENTER.

The Tape Library List appears with “DELETE” in the LINE OPERATOR column next to the deleted library.

Monitoring and Maintaining Tape Volumes

The ISMF Volume function assists in the maintenance and verification of the tape volumes within the automated and manual tape library through the use of the Mountable Tape Volume Application available from the Tape Library application Selection panel.

Using the Mountable Tape Volume Application, storage administrators can use line operators or ISMF commands to perform inventory tasks against tape libraries and the library-resident volumes residing in them. These functions can be performed using the Mountable Tape Volume Application:

- **AUDIT** a volume, a list of volumes, or a tape library.
- **ALTER** the use attribute, storage group, shelf location, or owner information of a volume or list of volumes.
- **EJECT** a single tape volume (for information on using the EJECT line operator, refer to “Ejecting a Volume from a Tape Library” on page 295).

ISMF Mountable Tape Volume Application

The ISMF Mountable Tape Volume Application allows you to create, save, and restore lists of tape cartridge volumes. A selection panel allows you to generate a list based on any combination of the following criteria (wildcards are supported):

- A fully or partially specified volume serial number
- A fully or partially specified storage group name
- A fully or partially specified tape library name

You can use the **View**, **Sort**, and **Hide** functions to further customize your volume lists.

Note: If the TCDB is being shared across multiple z/OS system levels, volume levels containing TDSI information that is not understood by the level of the software on the system will not be displayed when a volume list is requested from ISMF. This prevents the z/OS system from processing volume records containing TDSI information that is not understood by the system.

Generating a Mountable Tape Volume List

There are actually two options available from the ISMF Primary Option menu that can be used to assist you in generating a Mountable Tape Volume List. Both approaches are discussed in the following information.

Follow these steps to display the Mountable Tape Volume Selection Entry panel using the Library Management option of the ISMF Primary Option Menu.

1. Select option 10, Library Management, from the ISMF Primary Option Menu (see Figure 42 on page 258). ISMF displays the Library Management Selection menu (see Figure 43 on page 258).
2. Select option 3, TAPE LIBRARY. This in turn, displays the Tape Library Application Selection panel (Figure 44 on page 259).

Note: Depending on the information provided on this screen, selecting option 1, LIST, and pressing ENTER can either display a list that includes a single library, a fully or partially specified library, or a list of all the libraries associated with the SCDS primed on the Tape Library Application Selection panel.

3. When the library list is displayed, type the line operator command LISTVOL next to the library name or names for which you need a volume listing.

Follow these steps to bring up the Mountable Tape Volume Selection Entry panel from the VOLUME option of the ISMF Primary Option Menu.

1. Select option 2, VOLUME, from the ISMF Primary Option Menu (see Figure 42 on page 258). ISMF displays the Volume List Selection Menu (see Figure 61 on page 277).

```
Panel  Help
-----
                VOLUME LIST SELECTION MENU

Enter Selection or Command ==>

1 DASD                - Generate a list of DASD volumes
2 Mountable Optical   - Generate a list of Mountable Optical volumes
3 Mountable Tape       - Generate a list of Mountable Tape volumes

Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Exit.
```

Figure 61. Volume List Selection Menu Panel

2. Select option 3, MOUNTABLE TAPE, which prompts the display of Mountable Tape Volume Selection Entry Panel (Figure 62).

```

Panel  Utilities  Help
-----
                MOUNTABLE TAPE VOLUME SELECTION ENTRY PANEL

Command ==>

Select Source to Generate Volume List  . . 2    (1 - Saved list, 2 - New list)

    1  Generate from a Saved List
        List Name . .

    2  Generate a New List from Criteria Below
        Volume Serial Number . . . *           (fully or partially specified)
        Library Name . . . . . *             (fully or partially specified)
        Storage Group Name . . . . *         (fully or partially specified)

        Enter "/" to select option  _ Respecify View Criteria
                                      _ Respecify Sort Criteria

Use ENTER to Perform Selection;
Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Exit.

```

Figure 62. Mountable Tape Volume Selection Entry Panel

This panel allows you to generate a volume list.

When option 1, SAVED LIST, is selected, you enter the name of the saved list in the **LIST NAME** field under option 1 *GENERATE FROM A SAVED LIST*. A previously saved list is displayed.

When option 2, NEW LIST, is chosen, a new list is built using the selection criteria you described in the *GENERATE A NEW LIST FROM CRITERIA BELOW* data columns. *z/OS DFSMS: Using the Interactive Storage Management Facility* describes all the columns in the Mountable Tape Volume Selection Entry Panel. Complete the following fields for option 2 (default):

VOLUME SERIAL NUMBER

Enter a full or partial serial number of the volume or volumes to include in the list. The default value is an asterisk. The volume serial number must consist entirely of upper case alphabetics A–Z and numerics 0–9.

To include a single volume, enter a fully qualified volume serial number of 1 to 6 characters: VOLUME SERIAL NUMBER ==> **SYS001**

For a partially qualified volume serial number, use asterisks as global volume serial number characters or percent signs as place holders. For example, to include a range of volumes, enter a partially qualified volume serial number by using one or two asterisks as global volume serial number characters: VOLUME SERIAL NUMBER ==> **T*9***

Use a single asterisk to specify all mounted volumes that fit your other selection criteria: VOLUME SERIAL NUMBER ==> ***** This field is primed with the last value used. The default value is an asterisk.

LIBRARY NAME

Enter the 1 to 8 character name of a tape library, or a partially qualified name. This field is primed with the last value used. The default value is an asterisk.

STORAGE GROUP NAME

Enter the 1 to 8 character name of an SMS storage group, in the same way as you would for a volume serial number. This field is primed with the last value used. The default value is an asterisk.

RESPECIFY VIEW CRITERIA

This field is used to specify whether or not to invoke the Mountable Tape Volume View Entry panel before displaying the sort or list panel. Values are **Y** or **N**.

RESPECIFY SORT CRITERIA

This field is used to specify whether or not to invoke the Mountable Tape Volume View Sort panel before displaying the list. Values are **Y** or **N**.

Final Step: Generating the List

After entering the information you want on the Mountable Tape Volume Selection Entry panel, you are ready to generate the list. Press ENTER to display the volumes that meet your selection criteria. If you specified view or sort criteria, the VIEW or SORT panels are displayed before the volume list.

Panel List Utilities Scroll Help						

MOUNTABLE TAPE VOLUME LIST						
Command ==>			SCROLL ==> PAGE			
			Entries 1-11 of 11			
Enter Line Operators Below:			Data Columns 3-7 of 20			
LINE	VOLUME	USE	VOLUME	CHECKPT	LIBRARY	STORAGE
OPERATOR	SERIAL	ATTR	ERROR STATUS	VOLUME	NAME	GRP NAME
---(1)---	-(2)--	--(3)--	----- (4)-----	--(5)--	--(6)---	--(7)---
	VOL01	PRIVATE	I/O ERROR	NO	SHELF	TAPE1
	VOL02	SCRATCH	UNEXPIRED SCRATCH	---	SHELF	*SCRATCH*
	VOL101	SCRATCH	NO ERROR	NO	SHELF	*SCRATCH*
	VOL102	SCRATCH	PASSWORD CONFLICT	NO	LIB1	*SCRATCH*
	VOL103	SCRATCH	SECURITY CONFLICT	NO	LIB2	*SCRATCH*
	VOL104	PRIVATE	SCRATCH IN USE	---	LIB2	TAPE1
	VOL105	PRIVATE	VOLSER MISMATCH	NO	LIB1	TAPE1
	VOL106	SCRATCH	CHKPOINT CONFLICT	YES	LIB2	*SCRATCH*
	VOL107	SCRATCH	WRITE CONFLICT	YES	LIB1	*SCRATCH*
	VOL108	PRIVATE	NOT IN SLOT	NO	LIB1	TAPE1
	VOL109	PRIVATE	NO ERROR	NO	LIB1	TAPE1
-----	-----	-----	BOTTOM OF DATA	-----	-----	-----

Figure 63. Mountable Tape Volume List Panel (part 1 of 5).

LINE OPERATOR

This is the input column used to specify the line operator that is invoked against the volumes listed in column 2 of the same row.

VOLUME SERIAL NUMBER

Specifies the mountable tape volume serial number.

USE ATTR

Use characteristics of the volume:

PRIVATE A tape cartridge that can only be used by referencing its serial number and usually contains data.

SCRATCH A tape cartridge that can be used to satisfy a nonspecific mount request.

??????? The values cannot be displayed due to an error.

VOLUME ERROR STATUS

Shows the error status of individual tape volumes.

CHECKPT VOLUME

Checkpoint volume indicator. Values are YES, NO, or --- (when blank).

LIBRARY NAME

The name of the library in which the tape volume resides. SHELF is used for volumes outside the library.

STORAGE GRP NAME

The storage group to which the volume is assigned, *SCRATCH*, or ----- (when blank).

Panel List Utilities Scroll Help						

MOUNTABLE TAPE VOLUME LIST						
Command ==>			SCROLL ==> PAGE			
			Entries 1-12 of 12			
Enter Line Operators Below:			Data Columns 8-12 of 20			
LINE	VOLUME	MEDIA	RECORDING	COMPACTION	SPECIAL	LAST
OPERATOR	SERIAL	TYPE	TECHNOLOGY		ATTRIBUTE	WRITTEN DATE
---(1)---	-(2)--	--(8)--	---(9)---	---(10)---	--(11)---	----(12)----
	VOL01	MEDIA1	18TRACK	YES	RDCOMPAT	1994/12/17
	VOL02	MEDIA2	36TRACK	NO	-----	1995/03/22
	VOL101	MEDIA3	128TRACK	YES	-----	1996/08/30
	VOL102	MEDIA2	36TRACK	NO	-----	1994/09/21
	VOL103	MEDIA2	36TRACK	NO	-----	1995/11/03
	VOL104	MEDIA1	18TRACK	YES	RDCOMPAT	1995/03/07
	VOL105	MEDIA3	128TRACK	YES	-----	1997/04/26
	VOL106	MEDIA1	18TRACK	NO	-----	1995/01/11
	VOL107	MEDIA2	36TRACK	YES	-----	1994/05/09
	VOL108	MEDIA1	36TRACK	YES	-----	1994/02/24
	VOL109	MEDIA3	128TRACK	YES	-----	1996/10/31
-----	-----	-----	BOTTOM	OF	DATA	-----

Figure 64. Mountable Tape Volume List Panel (part 2 of 5).

MEDIA TYPE

This data column indicates the type of media of the volume. The valid values are:

MEDIA1	IBM Cartridge System Tape
MEDIA2	IBM Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape
MEDIA3	IBM High Performance Cartridge Tape
MEDIA4	IBM Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape

RECORDING TECHNOLOGY

This data column indicates the number of recording tracks on the tape. Valid values are:

18TRACK	18-track recording technology
36TRACK	36-track recording technology
128TRACK	128-track recording technology
256TRACK	256-track recording technology
-----	Recording technology not specified
????????	Recording technology unknown

COMPACTION

This field indicates whether or not the tape data sets are compacted on this volume. Valid values are:

YES	Data sets on the tape volume are compacted.
NO	Data sets on the tape volume are not compacted.
---	The value is not specified.
???	The values cannot be displayed due to an error.

SPECIAL ATTRIBUTE

This data column indicates special attributes defined for the volume. Valid values are:

RDCOMPAT Read compatible, which means on subsequent allocations the system should attempt to use read compatible devices.

----- The value is not specified.

LAST WRITTEN DATE

The date when a data set was last opened for output on the volume in the form of YYYY/MM/DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month of the year, and DD is the day of the month.

Panel List Utilities Scroll Help						

MOUNTABLE TAPE VOLUME LIST						
Command ==>			SCROLL ==> PAGE			
			Entries 1-11 of 11			
Enter Line Operators Below:			Data Columns 13-16 of 20			
LINE	VOLUME	LAST	LAST ENTER/	VOLUME	VOLUME	
OPERATOR	SERIAL	MOUNT DATE	EJECT DATE	EXPIRE DATE	CREATE DATE	
---(1)---	-(2)--	---(13)---	---(14)---	---(15)---	---(16)---	
	VOL01	1994/12/17	1995/02/05	2050/10/31	1994/01/14	
	VOL02	1995/03/22	1995/05/19	2050/10/31	1994/12/04	
	VOL101	1996/08/30	1996/10/08	2050/10/31	1996/04/30	
	VOL102	1994/09/21	1994/11/12	2050/10/31	1994/03/11	
	VOL103	1995/11/03	1996/04/15	2050/10/31	1995/08/21	
	VOL104	1995/03/07	1995/04/12	2050/10/31	1994/09/01	
	VOL105	1997/01/26	1997/02/17	2050/10/31	1996/11/17	
	VOL106	1995/01/11	1996/11/30	2050/10/31	1994/07/29	
	VOL107	1994/05/09	1994/10/28	2050/10/31	1994/01/11	
	VOL108	1994/02/24	1995/06/02	2050/10/31	1994/01/01	
	VOL109	1996/10/31	1997/01/31	2050/10/31	1996/07/15	
-----	-----	-----	BOTTOM OF	DATA -----	-----	

Figure 65. Mountable Tape Volume List Panel (part 3 of 5).

LAST MOUNT DATE

The date when the volume was last mounted and successfully opened in the form of YYYY/MM/DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month of the year, and DD is the day of the month.

LAST ENTER/EJECT DATE

The date when the tape volume was last entered into, or ejected from, a library. If the volume location is SHELF, then the date specified is the date the volume was ejected from the library. If the volume location is LIBRARY, then the date specified is the date the volume was entered into the library. The form for this date is YYYY/MM/DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month of the year, and DD is the day of the month.

VOLUME EXPIRE DATE

The latest expiration date among the data sets on the volume. The form for this date is YYYY/MM/DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month of the year, and DD is the day of the month.

VOLUME CREATE DATE

The date when the volume record was created. The form for this date is YYYY/MM/DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month of the year, and DD is the day of the month.

Panel List Utilities Scroll Help				

MOUNTABLE TAPE VOLUME LIST				
Command ==>		SCROLL ==> PAGE		
		Entries 1-11 of 11		
Enter Line Operators Below:		Data Columns 17-19 of 20		
LINE	VOLUME	WRITE	VOLUME	
OPERATOR	SERIAL	PROTECT	LOCATION	SHELF LOCATION
---(1)---	-(2)--	-(17)--	--(18)--	------(19)-----
	VOL01	NO	SHELF	FREE FORM LOCATION
	VOL02	---	SHELF	SHELF LOCATION #1
	VOL101	NO	SHELF	-----
	VOL102	NO	LIBRARY	CABINET 02 SHELF 04 NUMBER 11
	VOL103	NO	LIBRARY	OFFSITE
	VOL104	---	LIBRARY	SHELF 1
	VOL105	NO	LIBRARY	SHELF 2
	VOL106	YES	LIBRARY	-----
	VOL107	YES	LIBRARY	SHELF 3
	VOL108	NO	LIBRARY	SHELF 4
	VOL109	NO	LIBRARY	SHELF 5
-----	-----	-----	BOTTOM OF DATA -----	

Figure 66. Mountable Tape Volume List Panel (part 4 of 5).

WRITE PROTECT

The tape volume write protection status. Valid values are YES, NO, or --- (when blank).

VOLUME LOCATION

Information concerning whether the tape volume is library- or shelf-resident.

SHELF LOCATION

Information about tape cartridge residence outside a library.


```

Panel List Utilities Scroll Help
-----
MOUNTABLE TAPE VOLUME LIST
Command ==>
Enter Line Operators Below:
                                SCROLL ==> PAGE
                                Entries 1-11 of 11
                                Data Columns 20-20 of 20

LINE      VOLUME
OPERATOR  SERIAL      OWNER INFORMATION
---(1)---  -(2)---  -----(20)-----
VOL01     THIS IS FREEFORM INFORMATION ABOUT THE OWNER OF THIS CAR
VOL02     THE FORMAT OF THIS COLUMN IS DETERMINED BY INSTALLATION
VOL101
VOL102
VOL103     COLUMN1.....COLUMN2.....COLUM
VOL104     OWNER INFORMATION #1
VOL105     OWNER INFORMATION #2
VOL106     OWNER INFORMATION #3
VOL107     OWNER INFORMATION #4
VOL108     OWNER INFORMATION #5
VOL109     OWNER INFORMATION #6
-----  -----  ----- BOTTOM OF DATA -----

```

Figure 67. Mountable Tape Volume List Panel (part 5 of 5).

OWNER INFORMATION

Identifies the volume owner. This field only displays a maximum of 56 out of 64 characters per line on the panel.

Creating a List of Tape Libraries

Generating a tape library list allows you to audit all the volumes within the selected tape library. You may generate a library list in much the same way that the volume list is created. Follow the same directions as in “Final Step: Generating the List” on page 278 to generate the library list.

Once you have generated the library list, the tape library list panels are displayed (Figure 68 on page 284 through Figure 71 on page 285). See “Displaying Tape Library Attributes” on page 264 for descriptions of the attributes on these panels.

PanelListUtilitiesScrollHelp

TAPE LIBRARY LIST

Command ==>

SCROLL ==> PAGE

Entries 1-11 of 24

Data Columns 3-7 of 22

CDS Name . :SCDS.TEMP.PRIMARY

Enter Line Operators Below:

LINE OPERATOR	LIBRARY NAME	DEVICE TYPE	LIBRARY TYPE	LIBRARY ID	CONSOLE NAME	ENTRY DEF DATA CLASS
---(1)---	--(2)---	---(3)---	---(4)---	--(5)--	--(6)---	---(7)---
	LIB1	3495-L50	AUTOMATED	0001C	LIB1CON	DCATLDS
	LIB2	MANUAL	MANUAL	0002C	LIB2CON	DCMTLDS
----- BOTTOM OF DATA -----						

Figure 68. Tape Library List Panel (part 1 of 4).

PanelListUtilitiesScrollHelp

TAPE LIBRARY LIST

Command ==>

SCROLL ==> PAGE

Entries 1-11 of 24

Data Columns 8-13 of 22

CDS Name . :SCDS.TEMP.PRIMARY

Enter Line Operators Below:

LINE OPERATOR	LIBRARY NAME	ENTRY DEF USE ATTR	EJECT DEFAULT	NUM SLOTS	EMPTY SLOTS	MEDIA1 SCR NUM	MEDIA1 SCR THR
---(1)---	--(2)---	---(8)---	--(9)--	-(10)-	-(11)-	-(12)--	-(13)--
	LIB1	PRIVATE	KEEP	16260	2050	1250	100
	LIB2	PRIVATE	KEEP	0	0	2100	100
----- BOTTOM OF DATA -----							

Figure 69. Tape Library List Panel (part 2 of 4).

Figure 70. Tape Library List Panel (part 3 of 4).

Figure 71. Tape Library List Panel (part 4 of 4).

You can sort and tailor a list with the View, Sort, and Hide options on the Mountable Tape Volume List or the Tape Library List panels. *z/OS DFSMS: Using the Interactive Storage Management Facility* discusses the View, Sort, and Hide options in more detail.

Auditing Volumes in an Automated Tape Library

From the ISMF panels, you can use the AUDIT line operator or the ISMF AUDIT command to verify the location of the tape volumes in your tape libraries.

AUDIT provides three auditing scopes:

- Single volume audit (invoked by the AUDIT line operator)
- Volume list audit (invoked by the AUDIT command)
- Library audit (invoked by the AUDIT line operator)

Note: The audit functions are not supported in an MTL.

AUDIT can be invoked as an ISMF line operator on the Mountable Tape Volume List panel (single volume audit) or from the Tape Library List panel (library audit).

AUDIT can also be invoked as an ISMF command to audit all eligible volumes on the Mountable Tape Volume List (volume list audit). ISMF is an important part of the audit scheme because it allows you to start with an entire tape volume list, and then by using sorting and filtering capabilities, you can reduce that list to a subset of volumes; for example, all the volumes in a single storage group. You can then use the AUDIT command to request an audit of all volumes in that subset list.

Note: In an environment with multiple systems at different z/OS software levels but sharing a common TCDB, library audits should be performed on the system with the highest software level of z/OS. A library audit on a lower level z/OS software level does not include higher release level volumes if they are media types unknown to the lower level software.

You may want to use the following criteria when filtering a volume list:

- Fully or partially qualified volume serial number
- Fully or partially qualified storage group name
- Fully or partially qualified library name
- Other criteria using ISMF VIEW, SORT, and HIDE

Prior to scheduling an audit request for an automated tape library, ensure that the following criteria is met:

- The library must be defined in the SMS configuration.
- The library must be online, operational, and not pending offline.
- For an automated tape library dataserver, the library must *not* be in manual mode and the vision system must be operative.

Verifying External Volume Labels Using the ATLDS Vision System

The library vision system on an ATLDS verifies the external label on the volume at the physical location specified in the library manager data base. The cartridge is not mounted and read, only the external label is verified. The following actions are performed when an audit is requested against volumes in an automated tape library dataserver:

- The system verifies that the tape volume has an entry in the library manager.
- The visual system verifies that the tape volume is in its assigned location in the automated tape library dataserver.
- The vision system verifies that the external cartridge label of the tape volume is present and readable.
- The system verifies that the tape is accessible in the automated tape library dataserver.

Verifying VTS Logical Volume Entries in the Library Manager

Because a logical volume may or may not yet exist on a physical piece of media (a stacked volume), the following actions are performed when an audit is requested against logical volumes in the virtual tape server.

- The system verifies that the logical volume has an entry in the library manager.
- If the logical volume resides on a physical piece of media, the vision system verifies that the physical volume is in its assigned location in the automated tape library dataserver.
- The vision system verifies that the external cartridge label of the physical volume is present and readable.

Invoking the Audit Command/Line Operator

To perform a volume list audit from the MOUNTABLE TAPE VOLUME LIST panel, use the AUDIT command on the command line of the ISMF panel.

To perform a library audit from the TAPE LIBRARY LIST panel use the AUDIT line operator next to the tape library name. When you specify a library audit, all volume serial numbers known to that library by the host are audited.

Because a library audit and a volume list audit might take a long time to complete, a confirmation panel is displayed whenever these audits are requested. This panel gives you the opportunity to confirm or cancel the audit request. To confirm, type in **Y**, then press ENTER. See Figure 72 for the Confirm Audit Request panel.

Panel Utilities Help

CONFIRM AUDIT REQUEST

Command ==>

Number of Volumes to be Audited: 5

Specify the Following:

Enter "/" to select option _ Perform Audit

Note: If audit is performed, audit requests will be interspersed with other requests, with the audit request having low priority.

Use ENTER to Perform Operation;
Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Exit.

Figure 72. Confirm Audit Request Panel

Note: The audit operation can be a lengthy process. During AUDIT execution, other activity in the library is *not* quiesced and AUDIT requests are prioritized lower than other requested functions. It may take *several* hours for you to receive notification that a full library audit or an extensive volume list audit has completed. Therefore, when scheduling an audit, take work load and time factors into consideration.

Receiving Audit Completion Messages

When you invoke the AUDIT line operator or AUDIT command successfully, AUDIT SCHEDULED is displayed on the Mountable Tape Volume List. A completion message indicating success or failure of the audit is sent to the storage administrator. In the case of using the AUDIT line operator, if the volume is successfully scheduled for an audit, the volume has ***AUDIT** displayed in the line operator column. Audits that are not successfully scheduled have **-AUDIT** or **?AUDIT** in the line operator column.

When you receive an audit completion message, you can use the **REFRESH** command to update the MOUNTABLE TAPE VOLUME LIST or the TAPE LIBRARY LIST with the same selection criteria. The results of the audit are shown in the VOLUME ERROR STATUS column and you also receive a message with the error results.

Identifying Audit Discrepancies

If discrepancies are found when performing an audit, they are related to you by the following means:

- Scheduling error messages for full library audits are issued to your TSO logon session, unless the scheduling error occurred prior to any volumes from the library being successfully scheduled and that error was severe enough to prevent any other volumes in the library from also being scheduled. This early detected severe error is reported on the ISMF panel through the help facilities offered by ISMF. Messages contain the volume serial number (if known) of the volume for which the error was found and text that indicates the type of error found in attempting to validate an audit request.

If the scope of the audit is volume list or single volume, scheduling errors are not reported to your TSO logon session. These errors are indicated on return to the ISMF panel from which the AUDIT request was initiated and can be interrogated by using the message and help facilities offered through the ISMF panels. Refer to *z/OS DFSMSdfp Storage Administration Reference* for more information about the ISMF message and help facilities.

- Errors incurred while attempting to perform the physical audit for any of the three audit scopes, (single volume, volume list, or full library) are reported to your TSO logon session.
- After auditing a volume, the error status field (ERRSTAT) of the tape configuration database (TCDB) volume record is updated.
- As notification that the audit has been completed and that the error status fields can be reviewed, a completion message is sent to you.

Note: The volume error status field contains only the last error found; no history is kept.

Detecting Software Errors

If a software error (such as an internal label error) exists prior to an AUDIT and the AUDIT detects no errors, the software error is retained and *not* updated. Only one value is retained in the volume error status field. No history of errors is maintained for this field. If no software error exists prior to the AUDIT, the volume error status field is updated with the new volume error status.

No attempts are made to fix the problems at the time of detection because, based on the error found, the software is unable to determine exactly what the corrective action should be.

If you end the TSO session before the audit completes, messages are stored in the broadcast data set and are displayed the next time you initiate your TSO session.

Altering the Volume Record

ISMF allows you to alter the use attribute, storage group, shelf location, and owner information of a single tape volume or a volume list through the use of the ALTER line operator or the ISMF ALTER command. These commands are used from the Mountable Tape Volume List panel (see Figure 63 on page 279).

ISMF is an important part of the alter scheme when used in conjunction with the ALTER command because it allows you to start with an entire tape volume list, and then by using sorting and filtering capabilities, you can reduce that list to a subset of volumes; for example, all the volumes in a single storage group. You can then use the ALTER command against the subset list to change information for *all* the volumes on the list at once. In an ATLDS, you can also use the ALTER command to take the volume out of the error category in the library manager inventory.

Invoking the Alter Command/Line Operator

When you invoke the ALTER command on the MOUNTABLE TAPE VOLUME LIST panel, the same values for use attribute, storage group, shelf location, and owner information are assigned to ALL the volumes in the list.

The Mountable Tape Volume Alter Entry Panel (Figure 73) is displayed.

Panel Utilities Help

MOUNTABLE TAPE VOLUME ALTER ENTRY PANEL

Command ==>

Number of Volumes to be Altered: 10

Specify New Values for the Following Fields (Blank means no change):

Use Attribute . . . (P - Private, S - Scratch, or blank)

Storage Group . . .

Shelf Location . . .

Owner Information

==>

Use ENTER to Perform ALTER;

Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Exit.

Figure 73. Alter from the Mountable Tape Volume Alter Entry Panel

When the ALTER line operator is entered from the Mountable Tape Volume List panel, the Mountable Tape Volume Alter Entry Panel (see Figure 74 on page 290) is displayed to allow the storage administrator to enter the new values for the specific volume requested. The following four screen examples provide more information regarding the ALTER function for a specific tape volume.

Panel	Utilities	Help

MOUNTABLE TAPE VOLUME ALTER ENTRY PANEL		
Command ==>		
Tape Volume :EMB001		
Specify New Values for the Following Fields: (leave as-is if no change)		
Use Attribute:	Old Value :PRIVATE	
	New Value . . P	(P - Private or S - Scratch)
Storage Group:	Old Value :	
	New Value . .	
Shelf Location:	Old Value :	
	New Value . .	
Owner Information:		
	Old Value:	
	New Value . .	
Use ENTER to Perform ALTER;		
Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Exit.		

Figure 74. Mountable Tape Volume Alter Entry Panel Displayed (ALTER Request)

Adding Values to the Tape Volume Information

If, when the volume was entered into the library, no values were specified for storage group name, shelf-location, or owner information, the OLD VALUE fields on this panel are blank and the tape volume record reflects blanks in these fields in the TCDB. The storage administrator then adds the values for owner information, storage group, and shelf location into the NEW VALUE field and hits ENTER. The fields are updated in the TCDB, and the next time the volume is displayed, the new information appears in the OLD VALUE fields. The NEW VALUE field is primed with the same information as well (see Figure 75 on page 291).


```

Panel  Utilities  Help
-----
MOUNTABLE TAPE VOLUME ALTER ENTRY PANEL

Command ==>

Tape Volume: EMB001

Specify New Values for the Following fields:      (leave as-is if no change)

Use Attribute: Old Value  :PRIVATE
                New Value  . . P          (P - Private or S - Scratch)

Storage Group: Old Value  :MTLGRP1
                New Value  . . MTLGRP1

Shelf Location: Old Value  :EILEENS DESK
                New Value  . . EILEENS DESK

Owner Information:
  Old Value: EILEEN
  New Value  . . EILEEN

Use ENTER to Perform ALTER;
Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Exit.

```

Figure 75. Both OLD VALUE and NEW VALUE Reflect the Values Assigned to the Volume

Changing Values Associated with a Tape Volume

If the storage administrator types blanks over the NEW VALUE for storage group, shelf location, or owner information, the corresponding field in the tape volume record is set to blank and the NEW VALUE field shows as blank the next time the record is displayed. See Figure 76.

```

Panel  Utilities  Help
-----
MOUNTABLE TAPE VOLUME ALTER ENTRY PANEL

Command ==>

Tape Volume: EMB001

Specify New Values for the Following Fields:      (leave as-is if no change)

Use Attribute: Old Value  :PRIVATE
                New Value  . . P          (P - Private or S - Scratch)

Storage Group: Old Value  :
                New Value  . .

Shelf Location: Old Value  :EILEENS DESK
                New Value  . . EILEENS DESK

Owner Information:
  Old Value: EILEEN
  New Value  . . EILEEN

Use ENTER to Perform ALTER;
Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Exit.

```

Figure 76. NEW VALUE Blanked Out for Storage Group

Note that both the OLD VALUE and the NEW VALUE for storage group are now blank. To add a storage group again, the storage administrator indicates the new value for storage group in the NEW VALUE field and hits ENTER (see Figure 77).

```

Panel  Utilities  Help
-----
                                MOUNTABLE TAPE VOLUME ALTER ENTRY PANEL
Command ==>

Tape Volume:EMB001

Specify New Values for the Following Fields:      (leave as-is if no change)

Use Attribute: Old Value   :PRIVATE
                New Value   . .                (P - Private or S - Scratch)

Storage Group: Old Value   :
                New Value   . . MTLGRP2

Shelf Location:Old Value   :EILEENS DESK
                New Value   . . EILEENS DESK

Owner Information:
  Old Value:EILEEN
  New Value  . . EILEEN

Use ENTER to Perform ALTER;
Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Exit.

```

Figure 77. New Storage Group Assigned After Storage Group was Altered to Blank

Validating New Values through ISMF

ISMF validates the NEW VALUE input for the use attribute to allow only 'P' or 'S'. The NEW VALUE input for storage group is validated on the same selection entry panel; however, blanks are acceptable in this field.

ISMF does not validate the existence of the storage group in the active configuration; however, if the tape volume is library-resident, OAM provides the validation to ensure the following:

- The volume's storage group is defined in the current ACDS as a tape storage group.
- The volume's library is defined in the specified storage group.
- The volume's library is defined in the current ACDS as a valid tape library.

Note: If the tape volume is shelf-resident, only the first check is made.

Detecting Errors with New Values

If OAM detects an error in any of the above conditions, neither the use attribute nor the storage group is changed. Shelf location and owner information are not prevented from being altered even though an error is detected.

When an error occurs during the ALTER function, a message is stored in the message history for the entry. The storage administrator can issue the message line operator to obtain the error information.

Confirming an Alter Request

When the storage administrator presses ENTER to perform the alter, the Confirm Alter Request panel (Figure 78 on page 293) is immediately displayed. The number

of volumes that will be altered is displayed. The storage administrator must confirm the alter request by changing **N** to **Y** and pressing ENTER.

Panel Utilities Help

CONFIRM ALTER REQUEST

Command ==>

Number of Volumes to be Altered:10

Enter "/" to select option _ Perform Alter

Use ENTER to Perform Operation;
Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Exit.

Figure 78. Confirm Alter Request Confirmation Panel

Changing the Use Attribute from Private to Scratch

If the storage administrator uses the ALTER command to specify a NEW VALUE of scratch for the use attribute and any of the volumes on the list are private with an expiration date that has not yet passed, the Private to Scratch Confirmation Panel (Figure 79 on page 294) is displayed for *each* volume whose expiration date has not yet passed.

Note: When DFSMSrmm is installed, any attempt to alter the use attribute from private to scratch will be rejected.

```
Panel  Utilities  Help
-----
PRIVATE TO SCRATCH CONFIRMATION PANEL

Command ==>

Confirm Alter of Volume: EMB001

Currently this Volume is Private and
Its Expiration Date has not yet Passed.

Enter "/" to select option  _ Do you still want to change it to scratch?

You may specify that all private volumes on
the list should be changed to scratch whether
or not their expiration dates have passed.
If you do, the volumes will be changed without
redisplaying this confirmation panel.

Enter "/" to select option  _ Allow All Private Volumes to be
Changed to Scratch?

Use ENTER to Perform Operation;
Use HELP Command for Help; Use END Command to Exit.
```

Figure 79. Private to Scratch Confirmation Panel

If the response is “/” on either confirmation panel, OAM changes the following items:

- The use attribute is changed to **S** in the TCDB.
- The storage group name is set to ***SCRATCH*** in the TCDB.
- The expiration date in the TCDB is blanked out.
- The volume error status is reset to NO ERROR in the TCDB.
- The library manager category of the cartridge is changed from private to scratch (ATLDS only).

Note: The change use attribute installation exit (CBRUXCUA) is invoked whenever there is an attempt to change the use attribute for a tape volume. It may override the request or change the values. Refer to “Change Use Attribute Installation Exit (CBRUXCUA)” on page 159 for more information on this installation exit.

Changing the Use Attribute from Scratch to Private

When the ALTER line operator or the ALTER command changes the use attribute for a single tape volume or a list of tape volumes to private, the following items are performed:

- The use attribute is changed to **P** in the TCDB.
- The volume error status is reset to NO ERROR in the TCDB.
- The category of the cartridge or cartridges is changed from scratch to private (ATLDS only).

The changes to the TCDB volume record are performed immediately. When the line operator or command is complete, the user is returned to the Mountable Tape Volume List panel with the appropriate success or failure message. If the volume or volumes were successfully changed, the ISMF REFRESH command may be used to display the new values in the tape volume record.

Ejecting a Volume from a Tape Library

A single library-resident tape volume can be ejected from a tape library dataserver through the use of the ISMF EJECT line operator. The EJECT line operator is used from the MOUNTABLE TAPE VOLUME LIST application (Figure 63 on page 279). The line operator is typed next to a specific volume, causing the volume to be ejected from the tape library.

Note: For logical volumes in the fast ready category at the VTS, ejecting the volume deletes the logical volume from the VTS. If a logical volume is not in the fast category, the volume must be exported from the library.

Specifying Optional EJECT Line Operator Parameters

There are two optional parameters associated with the EJECT line operator. The first optional parameter specifies **K** for KEEP or **P** for PURGE. This parameter determines whether the tape volume record should be kept or deleted in the TCDB once the tape volume is ejected. No matter which disposition is specified, the volume record in the library manager inventory is deleted. If the parameter is not specified, the EJECT DEFAULT for the tape library is used. This parameter can be overridden by the cartridge eject installation exit (CBRUXEJC), which is invoked to approve or deny the EJECT request. See “Cartridge Eject Installation Exit (CBRUXEJC)” on page 174 for more information regarding this installation exit.

The second optional parameter **B** specifies that the tape cartridge is to be placed in the high-capacity output station instead of the convenience output station. If this parameter is not specified or the high-capacity output station is not configured, the cartridge is placed in the convenience output station.

This keyword is only valid for automated tape library dataservers. The keyword is ignored for tape volumes ejected from a manual tape library.

Note: The EJECT line operator is only valid for tape volumes that are library-resident.

Appendix C. Accessibility

Accessibility features help a user who has a physical disability, such as restricted mobility or limited vision, to use software products successfully. The major accessibility features in z/OS enable users to:

- Use assistive technologies such as screen-readers and screen magnifier software
- Operate specific or equivalent features using only the keyboard
- Customize display attributes such as color, contrast, and font size

Using assistive technologies

Assistive technology products, such as screen-readers, function with the user interfaces found in z/OS. Consult the assistive technology documentation for specific information when using it to access z/OS interfaces.

Keyboard navigation of the user interface

Users can access z/OS user interfaces using TSO/E or ISPF. Refer to *z/OS TSO/E Primer*, *z/OS TSO/E User's Guide*, and *z/OS ISPF User's Guide Volume I* for information about accessing TSO/E and ISPF interfaces. These guides describe how to use TSO/E and ISPF, including the use of keyboard shortcuts or function keys (PF keys). Each guide includes the default settings for the PF keys and explains how to modify their functions.

Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A. IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
U.S.A.

For license inquiries regarding double-byte (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country or send inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM World Trade Asia Corporation Licensing
2-31 Roppongi 3-chome, Minato-ku
Tokyo 106, Japan

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact:

IBM Corporation
Information Enabling Requests
Dept. DZWA
5600 Cottle Road
San Jose, CA 95193 U.S.A.

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

The licensed program described in this information and all licensed material available for it are provided by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement, or any equivalent agreement between us.

Programming Interface Information

This publication documents information that is NOT intended to be used as Programming Interfaces of DFSMSOAM.

Trademarks

The following terms are trademarks of the IBM Corporation in the United States, or other countries, or both:

DFSMSHsm	Parallel Sysplex
DFSMSrmm	RACF
Geographically Dispersed Parallel Sysplex	SecureWay
IBM	TotalStorage
MVS	z/OS
OS/390	

Other company, product, and service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

Glossary

The terms in this glossary are defined as they pertain to the Object Access Method.

This glossary may include terms and definitions from:

- The *American National Standard Dictionary for Information Systems*, ANSI X3.172-1990, copyright 1990 by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI). Copies may be purchased from the American National Standards Institute, 11 West 42nd Street, New York 10036.
- The *Information Technology Vocabulary*, developed by Subcommittee 1, Joint Technical Committee 1, of the International Electrotechnical Commission (ISO/IEC JTC2/SC1).
- IBM Dictionary of Computing, New York: McGraw-Hill, 1994.

A

ACS. Automatic class selection.

access method services. The facility used to define and reproduce VSAM key-sequenced data sets (KSDS), and to manage ICF and VSAM catalogs.

ACDS. Active control data set.

active control data set (ACDS). A VSAM linear data set that contains a copy of an active configuration and subsequent updates. All systems in an SMS complex use the ACDS identified in the IGDSMSxx member of the PARMLIB to manage storage.

ATLDS. Automated tape library dataserwer.

attribute. A named property of an entity.

automated mode. The mode of operation of an ATLDS in which host requests for mounts and demounts are performed with no operator action.

automated tape library dataserwer. A hardware device that automates the retrieval, storage, and control of tape cartridges.

automatic class selection (ACS). Routines that determine the data class, management class, storage class, and storage group for a JCL DD statement. The storage administrator is responsible for establishing ACS routines appropriate to an installation's storage requirements.

B

base configuration information. Part of an SMS configuration, it contains the default management class, default unit, and default device geometry. It also identifies the systems, system groups, or both that an SMS configuration is to manage.

bulk input. The process of adding a large number of tape cartridges to the ATLDS.

bulk output. The process of removing a large number of tape cartridges from the ATLDS.

C

CAF. Call attachment facility.

cartridge. See *tape cartridge*.

cartridge eject. For an IBM 3494 Tape Library Dataserver, IBM 3495 Tape Library Dataserver, or a manual tape library, the act of physically removing a tape cartridge usually under robot control, by placing it in an output station. The software logically removes the cartridge by deleting or updating the tape volume record in the tape configuration database. For a manual tape library, the act of logically removing a tape cartridge from the manual tape library by deleting or updating the tape volume record in the tape configuration database.

cartridge entry. For either an IBM 3494 Tape Library Dataserver, IBM 3495 Tape Library Dataserver, or a manual tape library, the process of logically adding a tape cartridge to the library by creating or updating the tape volume record in the tape configuration database. The cartridge entry process includes the assignment of the cartridge to scratch or private category in the library.

cartridge loader. An optional feature for the 3480 tape drive. It allows the automatic loading of tape cartridges which have been placed into a loading rack. Manual loading of single tape cartridges is also possible.

category. A logical subset of volumes in a tape library. A category may be assigned by the library manager (for example, the insert category), or by the software (for example, the private or scratch categories).

CDS. Control data set.

COMMDS. Communication data set.

communication data set (COMMDS). The primary mean of communication among systems in an SMS complex. Shared among the systems in the SMS complex, the COMMDS is a VSAM linear data set that contains the name of the ACDS and current utilization statistics for each system-managed volume.

compatibility mode. Mode of running DFSMS/MVS 1.3.0 or subsequent releases in which no more than eight unique system or system group names are supported in the SMS configuration. When running in this mode, the system may share configurations and communication data sets with systems running down level releases of DFSMS/MVS or DFP. Otherwise, configurations and communication data sets may not be shared.

composite library. The virtual view of the Peer-to-Peer VTS subsystem to the host. In general, host communications with the library will be at the composite level with the virtual volumes and drives being defined to the composite library.

console name. Specifies the name of the MVS console associated with the library being defined. The console name provides precise routing of console messages pertaining to a specific library.

container. A receptacle in which one or more exported logical volumes can be stored. A stacked volume containing one or more logical volumes and residing outside a virtual tape server library is considered to be the container for those volumes.

control data set (CDS). With respect to SMS, a VSAM linear data set containing configurational, operational, or communication information. SMS uses three types of control data sets: the source control data set (SCDS), the active control data set (ACDS), and the communication data set (COMMDS).

convenience input. The process of adding a small number of cartridges to the ATLDs without interrupting automated operations.

convenience output. The process of removing a small number of cartridges from the ATLDs without interrupting automated operation.

D

DFSMS. Data Facility Storage Management Subsystem. An operating environment that helps automate and centralize the management of storage. To manage storage, DFSMS provides the storage administrator with control over data class, management class, storage class, storage group, and automatic class selection routine definitions.

DFSMSdfp. A DFSMS functional component or base element of z/OS, that provides functions for storage management, data management, program management, device management, and distributed data access.

DFSMSdss. Data Facility Storage Management Subsystem data set services. A component of DFSMS that provides data movement, copy, backup and space management functions.

DFSMShsm. Data Facility Storage Management Subsystem hierarchical storage management. A component of DFSMS that provides backup, recovery, migration and space management functions.

DFSMSrmm. Data Facility Storage Management Subsystem removable media manager. A component of DFSMS that manages removable media, both inside and outside libraries.

distributed library. An underlying physical library in a Peer-to-Peer VTS subsystem.

DOM. Delete operator message. When a situation indicated by a message changes or is satisfied, the message to the operator is deleted from the console.

E

eject. The process used to remove a volume from a system-managed library. For an automated tape library dataser, the volume is removed from its cell location and moved to the output station. For a manual tape library, the volume is not moved, but the tape configuration database is updated to show the volume no longer resides in the manual tape library.

ESTAE. Extended specify task abnormal exit.

export. The operation to remove one or more logical volumes from a virtual tape server library. First, the list of logical volumes to export must be written on an export list volume and then, the export operation itself must be initiated.

exported logical volume. A logical volume that has gone through the export process and now resides on a stacked volume outside a virtual tape server library.

export list volume. A virtual tape server logical volume containing the list of logical volumes to export.

external label. The machine and human-readable label attached to the outside of a tape cartridge. The label contains the volume serial number of the tape volume.

G

GB. Gigabyte.

GDPS. Geographically Dispersed Parallel Sysplex.

Geographically Dispersed Parallel Sysplex (GDPS). An application that integrates Parallel Sysplex technology and remote copy technology to enhance application availability and improve disaster recovery. GDPS topology is a Parallel Sysplex cluster spread across two sites, with all critical data mirrored between the sites. GDPS manages the remote copy configuration

and storage subsystem(s), automates Parallel Sysplex operational tasks, and automates failure recovery from a single point of control.

gigabyte (GB). A unit of measure for storage capacity. One gigabyte equals 1 073 741 824 bytes.

global resource serialization (GRS). A component of MVS/ESA which provides an access control mechanism used to ensure the integrity of resources in a multisystem environment.

GRS. Global resource serialization.

H

Hardware configuration dialog (HCD). A user-friendly dialog for interacting with MVS for device configuration.

HCD. Hardware configuration dialog.

I

image copy. An exact reproduction of all or part of an image.

installation exit. The means specifically described in an IBM software product's documentation by which an IBM software product may be modified by a customer's system programmers to change or extend the functions of the IBM software product. Such modifications consist of exit routines written to replace one or more existing modules of an IBM software product, or to add one or more modules or subroutines to an IBM software product, for the purpose of modifying (including extending) the functions of the IBM software product.

ICF. Integrated catalog facility.

ID. Identification, identifier.

IDRC. Improved data recording capability.

import. The operation to enter previously exported logical volumes residing on a stacked volume into a virtual tape server library. First, the list of logical volumes to import must be written on an import list volume and the stacked volumes must be entered, then, the import operation itself must be initiated.

import list volume. A virtual tape server logical volume containing the list of logical volumes to import. This list can contain individual logical volumes to import or it can contain a list of stacked volumes in which all logical volumes on the stacked volume are imported.

imported logical volume. An exported logical volume that has gone through the import process and can be referenced as a tape volume within a virtual tape server library. An imported logical volume originates from a stacked volume that went through the export process.

integrated catalog facility (ICF). In the Data Facility Product (DFP), a facility that provides for integrated catalog facility catalogs.

integrated catalog facility catalog. In the Data Facility Product (DFP), a catalog that consists of a basic catalog structure, which contains information about VSAM and non-VSAM data sets, and at least one VSAM volume data set, which contains information about VSAM data sets only.

Interactive Storage Management Facility (ISMF). An ISPF application that provides an interactive set of space management functions.

Interactive System Productivity Facility (ISPF). An IBM licensed program that serves as a full-screen editor and dialogue manager. Used for writing application programs, it provides a means of generating standard screen panels and interactive dialogues between the application programmer and terminal user.

IODF. An input/output definition file (IODF) is a VSAM linear data set that contains I/O definition information. This information includes processor I/O definitions and operating system I/O definitions. A single IODF can contain several processor and several operating system I/O definitions.

ISPF. Interactive System Productivity Facility.

ISMF. Interactive Storage Management Facility.

ISO. International Organization for Standardization.

K

KB. Kilobyte.

kilobyte (KB). A unit of measure for storage capacity. One kilobyte equals 1 024 bytes.

L

LCS. Library Control System.

LCSP. LCS External Services parameter list.

Library Control System (LCS). The component of OAM that is used in the support of tape libraries.

library manager. The software application that controls all operations in an ATLD.

library manager database. A database which contains entries for all cartridges in an ATLD. Each entry contains volume serial number, category, physical location, and volume status information.

library record. The library record contains information related to the library such as library name and logical type. The library record resides within the tape configuration database.

linkage editor. A computer program for creating load modules from one or more object modules or load modules by resolving cross references among the modules and, if necessary, adjusting addresses.

link-edit. To create a loadable computer program by means of a linkage editor.

logical volume. Logical volumes have a many-to-one association with physical tape media and are used indirectly by MVS applications. They reside in a virtual tape server or on exported stacked volumes. Applications can access the data on these volumes only when they reside in a virtual tape server which makes the data available via its tape volume cache or after the data has been copied to a physical volume through the use of special utilities.

M

manual cartridge entry processing. The process by which a volume is added to the tape configuration database when it is added to a manual tape library. DFSMSrmm can initiate this process.

manual mode. The mode of operation of an ATLDS that allows the operator to locate and move the cartridges to and from drives and cells under the direction of the library manager. The robot is not operating.

manual tape library. An installation-defined set of stand-alone tape drives and the set of tape volumes that can be mounted on those drives.

MB. Megabyte.

MEDIA1. Cartridge System Tape.

MEDIA2. Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape.

MEDIA3. High Performance Cartridge Tape.

MEDIA4. Extended High Performance Cartridge Tape.

Megabyte (MB). A unit of measure for storage capacity. One megabyte equals 1 048 576 bytes.

mount. A host-linked operation which results in a tape cartridge being physically inserted into a tape drive.

MTL. Manual Tape Library.

O

OAM. Object Access Method.

Object Access Method (OAM). A DFSMSdfp component used in the support of tape libraries.

offline. To make a tape library or a tape drive logically unavailable to a system.

online. To make a tape library or a tape drive logically available to a system.

OAM Storage Management Component (OSMC). Where objects should be stored, manages object movement within the object storage hierarchy and manages expiration attributes based on the installation storage management policy.

Object Storage and Retrieval (OSR). Component of OAM that stores, retrieves, and deletes objects. OSR stores objects in the storage hierarchy and maintains the information about these objects in DB2 databases.

OSMC. OAM Storage Management Component.

OSR. Object Storage and Retrieval.

P

partitioning. Dividing the resources in a tape library (tape drives and tape volumes) among multiple systems or sysplexes, or both for their exclusive use. Each partition may be viewed as a logical library with each logical library (TCDBplex) represented by one TCDB.

paused mode. The mode of operation of an ATLDS where all host commands that require movement of cartridges are queued until the library is returned to automated mode. The robot is not operating. This mode allows the operator to enter the enclosure area briefly to correct a problem, add cartridges to the bulk input station, or remove cartridges from the bulk output station.

Peer-to-Peer VTS data. The Peer-to-Peer VTS data (PTPDATA) function allows an installation or application to obtain operational mode settings and device-related information from the PTP VTS library.

Peer-to-Peer VTS library. Multiple VTS subsystems and their associated tape libraries coupled together to form one subsystem and library image to the host.

Peer-to-Peer VTS mode control. The Peer-to-Peer VTS mode control (PTPMC) function allows an installation or application to change current operating modes of the library.

physical library. In relationship to a virtual tape server, a physical library is a hardware enclosure consisting of one or more virtual tape server libraries with each virtual tape server being identified to the host as a separate library. Restrictions by the library manager may be set on an individual library basis or on a physical library basis as is the case with import.

physical volume. A volume that has a one-to-one association with physical tape media and which is used directly by MVS applications. It may reside in an automated tape library dataserer or be kept on shelf storage either at vault sites or within the data center where it can be mounted on stand-alone tape drives.

private tape volume. A volume assigned to specific individuals or functions.

PTPDATA. Peer-to-Peer VTS data.

PTPMC. Peer-to-Peer VTS mode control.

R

reentrant. The attribute of a program or routine that allows the same copy of a program or routine to be used concurrently by two or more tasks.

removable media. Volumes that can be removed from the hardware devices where they are read and written, for example, tape cartridges and optical disks.

S

SCDS. Source control data set.

scratch pool. The collection of tape cartridges from which requests for scratch tapes can be satisfied.

scratch tape volume. An unassigned tape volume.

shelf-resident tape volume. A tape volume that resides outside of a tape library.

stacked volume. A volume that has a one-to-one association with physical tape media and which is used in a virtual tape server to store logical volumes. A stacked volume is not used by MVS applications but by the virtual tape server and its associated utilities. It may be removed from a virtual tape server to allow transportation of logical volumes to a vault or to another virtual tape server.

Storage Management Subsystem. See *DFSMS*.

System Modification Program/Extended. Basic tool for installing software changes in programming systems. It controls these changes at the element (module or macro) level, which helps protect system integrity.

SMSplex. A group of one or more systems that share a common set of SMS control data sets: the active control data set (ACDS) and the communications data set (COMMDS).

T

tape cartridge. A case containing a reel of magnetic tape that can be put into a tape unit without stringing the tape between reels.

tape configuration database (TCDB). An ICF user catalog marked as a volume catalog (VOLCAT) containing tape volume and tape library records.

tape library dataserer. A set of related tape drives and the set of tape volumes which may be mounted on those drives.

tape storage group. A tape storage group is a collection of tape volumes which contain private user data. Each volume normally resides in one of up to eight tape libraries which are associated with the tape storage group. A volume becomes part of the tape storage group when it is mounted to satisfy a scratch volume request for the storage group, or when it is entered into one of the tape libraries and assigned to the storage group by the cartridge entry process. The volume is removed from the storage group when it is returned to scratch after the data sets on it have expired.

tape volume. A reel of magnetic tape.

TCDB. Tape configuration database.

TCDBplex. A group of one or more systems or sysplexes, or both which share the same tape configuration database. The individual systems in the TCDBplex share access to one or more tape library dataservers, and to a common pool of scratch volumes in each tape library. They may also share access to the set of private volumes in each tape library.

TDSI. Tape device selection information.

V

vary offline. To change the status of a tape library or a tape drive from online to offline. When a library or drive is offline, no data may be accessed on tape volumes through the offline drive or the drives in the offline library.

vary online. To change the status of a tape library or a tape drive from offline to online.

virtual tape server (VTS). This subsystem, integrated into the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Automated Tape Library (3494), combines the random access and high performance characteristics of DASD with outboard hierarchical storage management and virtual tape devices and tape volumes.

virtual volume. A tape volume that resides in a tape volume cache of a virtual tape server. Whether the

volume resides in the tape volume cache as a virtual volume or on a stacked volume as a logical volume is transparent to the host.

vision system. An intelligent pattern recognition system that consists of a camera and lamps mounted on the gripper assemblies, the vision system controller, and the vision monitor. The vision system scans the external labels on cartridges to provide positive cartridge identification.

volume catalog. An ICF user catalog containing the volume and library entries associated with tape libraries.

volume record. A record containing information related to a volume, such as volume serial number, library name, and storage group. The volume record resides within the tape configuration database.

volume type. Uniquely identifies the type of volume. Tape volumes types include: physical, stacked, logical, imported logical, and exported logical volumes.

VTs. Virtual tape server.

Index

A

- accessibility 297
- address space identifier (ASID)
 - description 103
- aggregate group
 - description 4
- alter
 - altering volume records 64, 289
 - mountable tape volume alter entry panel 289
 - private to scratch confirmation panel 293
 - the use attribute of scratch volumes 68
 - updating the library record in the SCDS/TCDB 63
- audit
 - full library 64, 286, 289
 - identifying audit discrepancies 288
 - single volume 64, 286
 - tape libraries 286
 - verifying volume location 64, 286
 - verifying VTS logical volume entries 287
 - volume 77
 - volume list 64, 286
- Automated Tape Library Dataserver
 - 3495 description 13
 - convenience input and output facility 10
 - external high-capacity input and output facility 9
 - high-capacity input and output facility 9
 - library manager 10
 - manual mode terminal 10
 - automated tape storage description 1
 - coexistence support 45
 - description 2
 - ejecting a tape cartridge 25, 120
 - entering a tape cartridge into a TLDS 19
 - ISMF's role 3
 - library sharing among multiple systems 39
 - mount and demount messages 2
 - retrieving data from a disabled ATLDS 67
 - sharing with DFSMSrmm 44
 - storage configurations 31
 - subsystem attachment, 3494
 - 3490E magnetic tape subsystem 11
 - cartridge storage cells 11
 - convenience input output station 12
 - description 10
 - high-capacity output facility 12
 - IBM TotalStorage Enterprise High Performance Tape System 11
 - library manager 12
 - virtual tape server
 - description 11
 - logical library partitioning 16
 - stacked volumes 14, 16
 - tape volume cache 16
 - utilization of the 3590 storage capacity 16
 - virtual device characteristics 13
 - virtual volume characteristics 13
 - volume requirements 24

- Automated Tape Library Dataserver (*continued*)
 - volume restrictions 25
- automatic class selection (ACS)
 - changing routines 65
 - overview 6
 - writing and testing the routines 56

C

- cartridge eject installation exit
 - blank storage group 5
 - CBRXLCS Assembler H macro syntax 120
 - creating the exit 57
 - description 174
 - exit parameter list 177, 181
 - return codes 181
 - TCE parameter description 121, 122, 124
 - usage requirements 182
 - used with EJECT function 109
- cartridge entry installation exit
 - creating the exit 57
 - description 166
 - entering a cartridge (automated tape library dataserver) 19
 - parameter list 169
 - return and reason codes 173, 174
 - usage requirements 174
 - used with MCE function 109
- cartridge loader
 - displaying the scratch media type 81
 - setting the scratch media type 81
- catalog
 - general catalog description 6
 - recovering volume catalogs 66
 - recreating library entries 66
 - recreating volume entries 66
 - specific catalog description 6
 - volume catalog description 6
- CBRSPPIM
 - JCL sample 248
- CBRSPPXP
 - JCL sample 254
- CBRSPPSIM
 - JCL sample 246
- CBRSPPSXP
 - JCL sample 251
- CBRTDI macro 151
- CBRTVI macro 154
- CBRUXCUA
 - creating the exit 57
 - description 159
 - parameter list (CBRUXCPL) 161, 165
 - return and reason codes 165
 - usage requirements 165, 166
- CBRUXEJC
 - creating the exit 57
 - description 174
 - parameter list (CBRUXJPL) 177, 181

CBRUXEJC (*continued*)
 return codes 181
 usage requirements 182

CBRUXENT
 creating the exit 57
 description 166
 parameter list (CBRUXEPL) 169
 return codes 173, 174
 usage requirements 174

CBRUXVNL
 creating the exit 57
 description 182
 parameter list (CBRUXNPL) 188, 192
 return codes
 device allocation 193
 job step processing 192, 193
 library mount 193, 194
 usage requirements 194
 using to retrieve data from a disabled ATLDS 69

CBRXLCS macro
 CBRSPCLS SAMPLIB member 196
 changing VTS library operating modes (PTPMC) 133
 CUA function 109
 EJECT function 109
 execution environment 140
 EXPORT function 110
 IMPORT function 110
 interface 111
 macro syntax
 change use attribute 111
 ejecting a cartridge 120
 export 130
 import 132
 manual cartridge entry 115
 query volume residence 124, 128
 MCE function 109
 obtaining VTS library operational mode settings (PTPDATA) 137
 overview 109
 parameter list (LCSPL) 141, 151
 QVR function 110, 124
 return and reason codes
 Cartridge Eject Installation Exit (CBRUXEJC) 181
 Cartridge Entry Installation Exit (CBRUXENT) 173, 174
 CBRXLCS 139
 change use attribute (CUA) 114, 115
 Change Use Attribute Installation Exit (CBRUXCUA) 165
 manual cartridge entry (MCE) 119, 120
 Peer-to-Peer Mode Control (PTPMC) 136
 Peer-to-Peer VTS Data (PTPDATA) 138
 query volume residence (QVR) 125, 128
 tape cartridge eject (EJECT) 122, 124
 test volume eligibility (TVE) 129, 130
 Volume not in Library Installation Exit (CBRUXVNL) 69, 192, 193
 tape data information (CBRTDI macro) 151
 tape volume information (CBRTVI macro) 154

CBRXLCS macro (*continued*)
 TVE function 110, 128
 change use attribute installation exit
 CBRXLCS Assembler H macro syntax 111
 changing from private to scratch 113
 changing from scratch to private 68, 113
 changing to the same use attribute 114
 creating the exit 57
 CUA function 109
 CUA macro parameter description 111
 description 159
 exit parameter list 161, 165
 return and reason codes for CBRXLCS (CUA) 114, 115
 usage requirements 165, 166
 changing VTS library operating modes 133
 checklist
 installation 47
 class
 description
 aggregate group 4
 data class 4
 management class 4
 storage class 4
 storage group 4
 using ACS routines to change 65
 coexistence support
 for down-level systems 45
 command
 ALTER 64, 289
 AUDIT 64, 286
 DISPLAY SMS,LIBRARY 85, 86, 87
 DISPLAY SMS,OAM 82
 DISPLAY SMS,STORGRP 95
 DISPLAY SMS,VOLUME 97
 EJECT 26, 65, 295
 LIBRARY DISABLE 78, 79
 LIBRARY DISPCL 81
 LIBRARY DISPDRV 91
 LIBRARY EJECT 75
 LIBRARY ENTER 78
 LIBRARY IMPORT 79
 LIBRARY RESET 80
 LIBRARY SETCL 81
 MODIFY OAM 102
 OAM DUMP 102
 OAM RESTART 74
 START OAM 72
 STOP OAM 102
 VARY SMS (tape drive) 75
 VARY SMS (tape library) 73
 composite library
 defining libraries 56
 defining tape storage groups 56
 library ID 55
 online/offline 73
 peer-to-peer VTS subsystem 17
 stacked volume 89
 VCL 88
 VDL 88

- configuration
 - base, description 4
 - creating the TCDB 52
 - defining and monitoring overview 63
 - defining with ISMF 257
 - ICF support for the TCDB 6
 - using HCD for drive definition 7
 - validating 57
- constructs
 - adding 63
 - altering the library definitions 63
 - changing SMS constructs definitions 65
 - SMS overview 4

D

- data, Peer-to-Peer VTS (PTPDATA)
 - definition 137
 - obtaining VTS library operational mode settings 137
 - parameters 137
 - return codes 138
 - syntax 137
- data class
 - description 4
- data retrieval from ATLDs
 - altering private TCDB records 67
 - changing from SMSmanaged to nonSMSmanaged 68
 - changing the use attribute 68
 - library manager database volume list 69
 - overview 67
 - return ATLDs operational status 69
 - sample JCL 67
 - volume not in library exit 69
- databases
 - defining and monitoring configurations 63
 - defining tape drives with HCD 54
 - ISMF functions 257
 - library manager database volume list 69
 - TCDB description 6
- deleting expired VTS volume data 16
- disability 297
- DISABLE
 - MVS LIBRARY DISABLE command 79
- disabled ATLDs, retrieving data
 - altering private TCDB records 67
 - changing from SMSmanaged to nonSMSmanaged 68
 - changing the use attribute 68
 - library manager database volume list 69
 - overview 67
 - return ATLDs operational status 69
 - sample JCL 67
 - volume not in library exit 69
- disaster recovery site considerations 66
- display
 - cartridge loader scratch media type 81
 - drive status 91
 - library connectivity 86
 - library detail 87
 - library status 69, 85

- display (*continued*)
 - OAM status 82
 - storage group status 95
 - tape volume status 97
- distributed library
 - attention message 46
 - defining libraries 56
 - defining tape storage groups 56
 - online/offline 73
 - peer-to-peer VTS subsystem 17
 - stacked volume 89
- drive
 - displaying status 91
 - varying online/offline 75

E

- eject
 - cartridge eject function (EJECT) 109
 - Cartridge Eject Installation Exit description 174
 - CBRXLCS EJECT macro syntax 120
 - line operator command 65
 - MVS LIBRARY EJECT command 75
 - specifying shelf location 76
 - volume from a tape library 65, 295
- entry default use attribute
 - defining 261
- exits (installation)
 - CBRUXCUA 159
 - CBRUXEJC 27, 174
 - CBRUXENT 166
 - CBRUXVNL 182
- exporting
 - canceling an operation 28
 - CBRSPPXP JCL sample 254
 - CBRSPPXP JCL sample 251
 - completion processing 176
 - FUNC=EXPORT 28, 110, 130
 - global resource serialization 29, 51
 - LIBRARY EXPORT command 79
 - logical volumes from a VTS 27
 - overview 14
 - return and reason codes 131
 - status messages 29

G

- Geographically Dispersed Parallel Sysplex
 - considerations for running PTP VTS 18
 - description 18
 - topology 18
 - use with disaster recovery 18
- global resource serialization (GRS)
 - creating the ring 51
 - using with cartridge entry processing 23
 - using with export processing 29, 51

H

hardware

- 3494 ATLDs
 - 3490E magnetic tape subsystem 11
 - cartridge storage cells 11
 - IBM TotalStorage Enterprise High Performance Tape System 11
 - library manager 12
 - subsystem attachment 10
- 3495 ATLDs
 - convenience input and output facility 10
 - external high-capacity input and output facility 9
 - high-capacity input and output facility 9
 - library manager (ATLDs) 10
 - manual mode terminal 10
 - subsystem attachment 8
- configuration database
 - defining the tape drives 54
- recommendations 31
- virtual tape server
 - description 11
 - logical library partitioning 16
 - stacked volumes 14, 16
 - tape volume cache 16
 - utilization of the 3590 storage capacity 16
 - virtual device characteristics 13
 - virtual volume characteristics 13
- hardware configuration definition (HCD)
 - description 7

I

IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Tape System 3590

- coexistence support 45
 - description 11
 - high performance cartridge tape 11
 - storage configurations 31
- ### Importing
- canceling an operation 21
 - CBRSPPIM JCL sample 248
 - CBRSPSIM JCL sample 246
 - FUNC=IMPORT 21, 110, 131
 - LIBRARY IMPORT command 78
 - multiple logical volumes at the host 19
 - overview 14
 - Pre-ACS routine 6
 - return/reason codes 132
 - single logical volume at the library manager 22
 - status messages 22
- ### initial online status
- description 262
- ### installation
- activating the configuration 58
 - building the library inventory 48
 - changing system libraries 49
 - checklist 47
 - creating the exit routines 57
 - creating the GRS 51
 - creating the hardware configuration 54
 - creating the SMS definitions 55

installation (continued)

- creating the TCDB 52
 - defining tape storage groups 56
 - display and set the cartridge loader media type 58, 81
 - IPLing the system 55
 - OAM instructions overview 45
 - planning 31
 - running the job stream 59
 - starting the OAM address space 58
 - validating the configuration 57
 - varying the library online 58, 73
- ### installation exit
- creating the exit
 - cartridge eject 57, 174
 - cartridge entry 57, 166
 - change use attribute 57, 159
 - sample library members 195
 - volume not in library 57, 182
 - description
 - CBRUXCUA 159
 - CBRUXEJC 174
 - CBRUXENT 166
 - CBRUXVNL 182
 - disabling processing (DISABLE) 79
 - reenabling processing (RESET) 80
 - return and reason codes
 - CBRUXCUA 165
 - CBRUXEJC 181
 - CBRUXENT 173
 - CBRUXVNL 192, 194
 - sample program
 - CBRAPROC, creates OAM member in PROCLIB 245
 - CBRSPLCS, installation management package 196
 - CBRSPUXC, Change Use Attribute Exit 209
 - CBRSPUXE, Tape Cartridge Entry Exit 217
 - CBRSPUXJ, Tape Cartridge Eject Exit 224
 - CBRSPUXV, Volume Not in Library Exit 69, 231
- ### installation storage policy management
- overview 4
 - planning for 31
 - scratch tape management 8
 - tape library management overview 1
 - terminology 1
 - types of tape volumes 7
- ### integrated catalog facility (ICF)
- tape configuration database 6
 - volume catalogs
 - general 6
 - specific 6
 - volume record 7
- ### ISMF (Interactive Storage Management Facility)
- checklist, tape library define 56
 - description 3
 - panels
 - application selection 259
 - confirm audit request 287
 - defining a manual library 263
 - management selection menu 258

ISMF (Interactive Storage Management Facility)

(continued)

panels (continued)

- mountable tape volume alter entry panel 289
- mountable tape volume application 276, 283
- mountable tape volume list 278, 283
- mountable tape volume selection entry panel 277
- primary option menu 257
- private to scratch confirmation panel 293
- tape library define 259
- tape library list 283
- volume list selection menu 276

role with tape library dataservers 3

typical procedures

- altering a tape library definition 63
- altering the volume record 64, 289
- auditing a full library 289
- auditing volumes in a library 64, 286
- confirming audit request 287
- creating tape library lists 283, 285
- defining a tape library 56, 63, 257, 264
- defining SMS constructs 55
- ejecting a volume 65, 295
- generating a volume list 276
- management functions 63
- monitoring and maintaining SMS library definitions 65
- verifying volumes in a library 286
- viewing and sorting lists 285

K

keyboard 297

L

LCS (Library Control System)

description 3

external services

- cartridge eject (EJECT) 109, 120
- CBRXLCS description 109
- CBRXLCS return and reason codes 139
- change use attribute (CUA) 109, 111
- execution environment 140
- LC SPL parameter list 141, 151
- macro interface 111
- manual cartridge entry (MCE) 109, 115
- query volume residence (QVR) 110, 124
- testing volume eligibility (TVE) 110, 128

tape volume information

- CBRTVI mapping macro 154, 157
- description 153
- exporting logical volumes (EXPORT) 110, 130
- importing logical volumes (IMPORT) 110, 131

library

- auditing a full library 286
- auditing volumes in a library 286
- changing system libraries 49
- defining the tape library with ISMF 56
- display library status 85

library (continued)

- displaying OAM status 82
- displaying the cartridge loader scratch media type 81
- drive status 91
- ejecting a specific tape volume 75
- ejecting a volume from a library 295
- identifying audit discrepancies 288
- ISMF screens
 - application selection panel 259
 - confirm audit request 287
 - defining a manual library 263
 - management selection menu 258
 - mountable tape volume alter entry panel 289
 - tape library define panel 259
 - tape library list 283
- partitioning 40
- recreating library entries 66
- SCDS definition 63
- setting the cartridge loader scratch media type 81
- tape management overview 1
- TCDBplex 40
- using ISMF to define 63, 257
- vary drive online/offline 75
- vary library online/offline 73
- verifying volumes in a library 275

logical volume

- building library inventory 49
- considerations 184
- ejecting 26
- export 110, 130, 183
- exported category 99
- exporting 27
 - cancel 28
- expend category 99
- import 110, 131
- import/export 14
- importing 19
 - single volume 22
- initiate/cancel export 79
- initiate/cancel import 78
- inventory 17
- remove 176
- stacked volume 20

logical volumes

- exported 8

M

macros

- CBRTDI 151
- CBRTVI 154

management

- introduction to tape library 1
- ISMF functions 3, 63
- scratch tape 8
- storage policy 4

management class

- description 4
- maintaining 63

- manual cartridge entry (MCE)
 - CBRXLCS Assembler H macro 115
 - overview 109
 - parameter description 116
 - return and reason codes 119, 120
- Manual Tape Library Dataserver
 - ejecting a tape cartridge 25
 - ISMF's role 3
 - library sharing among multiple systems 39
 - manual tape storage 2
 - partitioned
 - handling tape drives 43
 - sharing with DFSMSrmm 44
 - stand-alone 43
 - storage configurations 31
 - volume requirements 24
 - volume restrictions 25
- media
 - displaying cartridge loader scratch media type 81
 - IBM Cartridge System Tape (MEDIA1) 31, 35, 93, 167, 261
 - IBM Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape (MEDIA2) 31, 35, 93, 167, 261
 - IBM Enhanced High Performance Cartridge Tape (MEDIA4) 11, 24, 31, 35, 93, 167, 261
 - IBM High Performance Cartridge Tape (MEDIA3) 11, 24, 31, 35, 93, 167, 261
 - scratch volume threshold 261
 - setting cartridge loader scratch media type 81
- messages
 - format conventions 71
 - routing to console 38
- mode control, Peer-to-Peer VTS (PTPMC)
 - changing VTS library operating modes 133
 - definition 133
 - parameters 134
 - return codes 136
 - syntax 133
- mountable tape volume application
 - generating a volume list 276
 - list panel, ALTER 64, 289
 - list panel, AUDIT 286
 - list panel, EJECT 295
 - selection entry panel 276
- MVS
 - commands
 - DISPLAY SMS,LIBRARY 85
 - DISPLAY SMS,OAM 82
 - DISPLAY SMS,STORGRP 95
 - DISPLAY SMS,VOLUME 97
 - LIBRARY DISABLE 79
 - LIBRARY DISPDRV 91
 - LIBRARY EJECT 26, 75
 - LIBRARY EXPORT 79
 - LIBRARY IMPORT 78
 - LIBRARY RESET 80
 - MODIFY OAM 102
 - MVS LIBRARY DISPCL 81
 - MVS LIBRARY SETCL 81
 - OAM DUMP 102
 - OAM QUERY 104

- MVS (*continued*)
 - commands (*continued*)
 - OAM RESTART 74
 - START OAM 72
 - STOP OAM 102
 - hardware configuration definition 7
 - partitioning 40

N

- name restrictions, tape library 257, 259

O

- OAM (Object Access Method) 78
 - defining elements 55
 - initialization, CBROAM module 49
 - installation checklist 48
 - installation procedures
 - activating the configuration 58
 - building the library inventory 48
 - changing system libraries 49
 - creating the exit routines 57
 - creating the GRS 51
 - creating the hardware configuration 54
 - creating the SMS definitions 55
 - creating the TCDB 52
 - defining tape storage groups 56
 - display and set the cartridge loader media type 58, 81
 - IPLing the system 55
 - running the job stream 59
 - starting the OAM address space 58
 - validating the configuration 57
 - varying the library online 58, 73
 - ISMF's role 3
 - keywords, OAMPROC, OAMTASK 49
 - operating the OAM Address Space 71
 - operator tasks
 - DISPLAY SMS,LIBRARY 85
 - DISPLAY SMS,OAM 82
 - DISPLAY SMS,STORGRP 95
 - DISPLAY SMS,VOLUME 97
 - LIBRARY DISABLE 79
 - LIBRARY DISPCL 81
 - LIBRARY DISPDRV 91
 - LIBRARY EJECT 75
 - LIBRARY EXPORT 79
 - LIBRARY RESET 80
 - LIBRARY SETCL 81
 - MODIFY OAM 102
 - OAM DUMP 102
 - OAM QUERY 78, 104
 - OAM RESTART 74
 - overview 71
 - START OAM 72
 - STOP OAM 102
 - VARY SMS (tape drive) 75
 - VARY SMS (tape library) 73
 - planning for 31
 - storage management policy 4, 31

- OAM (Object Access Method) *(continued)*
 - support for tape libraries overview 3
 - using ISMF to define the configuration 257
- OAM DUMP command
 - description and syntax 102
- OAM RESTART command
 - description and syntax 74
- obtaining VTS library operational mode settings 137
- online/offline
 - displaying library status 85
 - library connectivity 86
 - varying a tape drive 75
 - varying a tape library 73
- operator tasks
 - DISPLAY SMS,LIBRARY 85
 - DISPLAY SMS,OAM 82
 - DISPLAY SMS,STORGRP 95
 - DISPLAY SMS,VOLUME 97
 - LIBRARY DISABLE 79
 - LIBRARY DISPCL 81
 - LIBRARY DISPDRV 91
 - LIBRARY EJECT 75
 - LIBRARY EXPORT 79
 - LIBRARY IMPORT 78
 - LIBRARY RESET 80
 - LIBRARY SETCL 81
 - MODIFY OAM 102
 - OAM DUMP 102
 - OAM QUERY 104
 - OAM RESTART 74
 - START OAM 72
 - STOP OAM 102
 - VARY SMS (tape drive) 75
 - VARY SMS (tape library) 73

P

- parameter
 - CBRUXCUA parameter list (CBRUXCPL) 161, 165
 - CBRUXEJC parameter list (CBRUXJPL) 177, 181
 - CBRUXENT parameter list (CBRUXEPL) 169
 - CBRUXVNL parameter list (CBRUXNPL) 188, 192
 - changing the use attribute 111
 - LCS external services (LCSPL) 141, 151
 - manual cartridge entry 116
 - query volume residence 124
 - tape cartridge eject 121
 - test volume eligibility 128, 130, 132
- partitioning
 - tape libraries among multiple sysplexes 40
- Peer-to-Peer VTS data (PTPDATA)
 - definition 137
 - obtaining VTS library operational mode settings 137
 - parameters 137
 - return codes 138
 - syntax 137
- Peer-to-Peer VTS mode control (PTPMC)
 - changing VTS library operating modes 133
 - definition 133
 - parameters 134
 - return codes 136

- Peer-to-Peer VTS mode control (PTPMC) *(continued)*
 - syntax 133
- Peer-to-Peer VTS Subsystem
 - defining 56
 - description 17
 - directing allocation 56
 - library ID 55
 - using with GDPS 18
- physical volume
 - eject 177
 - vision system 287
- planning
 - analyzing the processing environment 31
 - hardware recommendations 31
 - managing multiple media formats 33
 - OAM installation 31
 - tape cartridge capacities 34
 - TDSI considerations 33
- Pre-ACS routine 6
- private volume
 - altering in the TCDB 67
 - CBRSPLCS 196
 - Change Use Attribute Installation Exit (CBRUXCUA)
 - description 159
 - changing from private to scratch 113
 - changing from scratch to private 68, 113
 - changing to the same use attribute 114
 - changing use attribute with CBRSPUXC 209
 - CUA function 109
 - defining eject default attribute 261
 - defining entry default attribute 261
 - description 7
 - private to scratch confirmation panel 293
 - restrictions 24
- PROCLIB
 - CBRAPROC, creates OAM member 245

Q

- query volume residence (QVR)
 - CBRXLCS macro syntax 124
 - description 104, 110
 - macro parameter description 124
 - OAM QUERY command
 - command description 103
 - keyword descriptions 104
 - syntax 104
 - return and reason codes 125, 128

R

- RACF
 - facility class profile 54
- recovery
 - disaster recovery site considerations 66
 - library entries 66
 - volume catalogs 66
 - volume entries 66
- requirements
 - media 33
 - tape volume 24

- requirements *(continued)*
 - volser uniqueness 22, 24
- RESET
 - MVS LIBRARY RESET command 80
- RESTART command
 - description and syntax 74
- restrictions
 - tape library name 259
 - volume serial number 25
- retrieving data from a disabled ATLDS
 - altering private TCDB records 67
 - changing from SMSmanaged to nonSMSmanaged 68
 - changing the use attribute 68
 - library manager database volume list 69
 - overview 67
 - return ATLDS operational status 69
 - sample JCL 67
 - volume not in library exit 69
- return and reason codes
 - CBRUXCUA 165
 - CBRUXEJC 181, 182
 - CBRUXENT 173
 - CBRUXVNL
 - device allocation 193
 - export return and reason codes 131
 - import return and reason codes 132, 133
 - job step processing 192, 193
 - library mount 193, 194
- CBRXLCS
 - CBRXLCS 139
 - Change Use Attribute 114, 115
 - Manual Cartridge Entry 119, 120
 - PTPDATA 138
 - PTPMC 136
 - Query Volume Residence 125, 128
 - Tape Cartridge Eject 122, 124
 - Test Volume Eligibility 129, 130
- routing
 - console message 38

S

- sample programs
 - CBRAPROC, creates OAM member in PROCLIB 245
 - CBRSPLCS, installation management package 196
 - CBRSPUXC, Change Use attribute Exit 209
 - CBRSPUXE, Tape Cartridge Entry Exit 217
 - CBRSPUXJ, Tape Cartridge Eject Exit 224
 - CBRSPUXV, Volume Not in Library Exit 231
- SAMPLIB
 - CBRAPROC 245
 - CBRSPLCS 196
 - CBRSPPIM 248
 - CBRSPPXP 254
 - CBRSPSIM 246
 - CBRSPSXP 251
 - CBRSPUXC 209
 - CBRSPUXE 217
 - CBRSPUXJ 224

- SAMPLIB *(continued)*
 - CBRSPUXV 231
- SCDS (source control data set)
 - defining a tape library 63
 - updating the library record 63
- scratch volume
 - CBRSPLCS 196
 - Change Use Attribute Installation Exit (CBRUXCUA)
 - description 159
 - changing to private from scratch 68, 113
 - changing to scratch from private 113
 - changing to the same use attribute 114
 - changing use attribute with CBRSPUXC 68, 209
 - CUA function 109
 - defining the default entry use attribute 261
 - description 7
 - displaying the cartridge loader scratch media type 81
 - private to scratch confirmation panel 293
 - restrictions 24
 - setting cartridge loader scratch media type 81
 - tape management 8
 - threshold, defining 261
- shortcut keys 297
- SMS (Storage Management Subsystem)
 - aggregate group 4
 - automated tape storage 1
 - cartridge entry processing 23
 - configuration elements 4
 - creating definitions with ISMF 55
 - creating the SMS definitions 52
 - data class construct 4
 - DFSMSrmm support for sharing TLDS 44
 - display commands for:
 - cartridge loader scratch media type 81
 - drive status 91
 - library status 85
 - OAM status 82
 - storage group status 95
 - volume status 97
 - management class 4
 - manual tape storage overview 2
 - partitioning 40
 - setting the cartridge loader scratch media type 81
 - sharing, multiple SMS complexes 39
 - sharing tape volumes 43
 - stopping OAM 102
 - storage class construct 4
 - storage group construct 4
 - storage management policy overview 4
 - support for libraries 3
 - system group description 5
- software volume categories
 - description 35
 - TCDB volume error status field and the MTL 37
 - updating the TCDB volume error status field in an ATLDS 36
- stacked volume
 - composite library 89
 - description 14
 - distributed library 89

- stacked volume *(continued)*
 - export 27
 - exported category 99
 - identification of 19
 - import 21
 - importing
 - status message 22
 - logical volume 20
 - reuse 21
- START OAM
 - command syntax 72
- status
 - drive 91
 - library 85
 - OAM 82
 - returning the library manager to operational
 - status 69
 - storage group 95
 - volume 97
- storage class
 - description 4
 - maintaining 63
- storage group
 - blank storage group 5
 - defining 5
 - description 4
 - displaying status 95
 - maintaining 65
 - mountable tape volume selection panel 56, 63, 278
- storage management policy
 - overview 4
- syntax
 - CBRXLCS macro
 - FUNC=CUA 111
 - FUNC=EJECT 120
 - FUNC=EXPORT 130
 - FUNC=IMPORT 132
 - FUNC=MCE 115
 - FUNC=QVR 124
 - FUNC=TVE 128
 - DISPLAY SMS,LIBRARY 85
 - DISPLAY SMS,OAM 82
 - DISPLAY SMS,STORGRP 95
 - DISPLAY SMS,VOLUME 97
 - LIBRARY DISABLE 79
 - LIBRARY DISPCL 81
 - LIBRARY DISDRV 91
 - LIBRARY EJECT 75
 - LIBRARY EXPORT 79
 - LIBRARY IMPORT 78
 - LIBRARY RESET 80
 - LIBRARY SETCL 81
 - MODIFY OAM 102
 - OAM DUMP 102
 - OAM QUERY 104
 - OAM RESTART 74
 - PTPDATA function 137
 - PTPMC function 133
 - START OAM 72
 - STOP OAM 102
 - VARY SMS 73, 75

- system
 - cartridge entry processing 23
 - connectivity, displaying 91
 - libraries, changing 49
 - library sharing among multiple systems 39
 - system group definition 4
 - TCDBplex 40
- system group
 - overview 4

T

- tape
 - application selection 259
 - automated tape storage 1
 - bulk entry and eject 9
 - Cartridge Eject Installation Exit (CBRUXEJC) 174
 - Cartridge Entry Installation Exit (CBRUXENT) 166
 - CBRSPUXE, Tape Cartridge Entry Exit 217
 - CBRSPUXJ, Tape Cartridge Eject Exit 224
 - CBRSPUXV, Volume Not in Library Exit 231
 - Change Use Attribute Installation Exit (CBRUXCUA) 159
 - defining a manual library 263
 - defining the scratch volume threshold 261
 - displaying tape drive status 91
 - displaying the cartridge loader scratch media type 81
 - EJECT line operator 295
 - ejecting from an automated tape library
 - dataserver 25
 - entering a cartridge into an automated tape library
 - dataserver 19
 - entering a cartridge into an manual tape library 109
 - management selection menu 258
 - media requirements 33
 - media types
 - cartridge system tape (MEDIA1) 31, 35, 93, 167
 - enhanced capacity cartridge system tape (MEDIA2) 31, 35, 93, 167, 261
 - extended high performance cartridge tape (MEDIA4) 24, 31, 35, 93, 167, 261
 - high performance cartridge tape 11, 24, 31, 35, 93, 167, 261
 - mountable tape volume application 276
 - mountable tape volume selection entry panel 277
 - primary option menu 257
 - private volume description 7
 - scratch tape description 7
 - setting the cartridge loader scratch media type 81
 - tape library define 259
 - tape library list panel 283
 - terminology 1
 - volume list selection menu 276
 - Volume not in Library Installation Exit 182
 - volume requirements 24
 - volume restrictions 25
 - volume types 7
- tape configuration database (TCDB) 37
 - altering records 67
 - changing the use attribute 68

- tape configuration database (TCDB) *(continued)*
 - changing to non-SMS-managed 68
 - coexistence support 45
 - defining the eject default attribute 261
 - ICF support 6
 - library manager volume list 69
 - operational status 69
 - partitioning 40
 - querying volume residency 110
 - retrieving data from 67
 - TCDBplex 40
 - using the sample exit (CBRUXVNL) 69
- tape device selection information (TDSI)
 - as used by CBRXLCS 157
 - attributes 34
 - coexistence support 45
 - definition 33
 - parameter list 157, 158
 - processing for volumes 116
- Tape Library Dataserver
 - 3494 subsystem attachment
 - 3490E magnetic tape subsystem 11
 - cartridge storage cells 11
 - convenience input output station 12
 - description 10
 - high-capacity output facility 12
 - IBM TotalStorage Enterprise High Performance Tape System 11
 - library manager 12
 - storage configurations 31
 - 3495 ATLDS
 - convenience input and output facility 10
 - description 13
 - external high-capacity input and output facility 9
 - high-capacity input and output facility 9
 - library manager (ATLDS) 10
 - manual mode terminal 10
 - storage configurations 31
 - subsystem attachment 3495 ATLDS 13
 - 3495 MTL
 - description 11
 - storage configurations 31
 - automated tape storage overview 1
 - defining a tape library 257
 - defining a composite library 257
 - field parameters 260
 - name restrictions 259
 - ejecting a tape cartridge 25
 - entering a tape cartridge (automated tape library dataserver) 19
 - library sharing among multiple systems 39
 - manual tape storage overview 2
 - retrieving data from a disabled ATLDS 67
 - sharing with DFSMSrmm 44
 - virtual tape server
 - description 11
 - logical library partitioning 16
 - stacked volumes 14, 16
 - tape volume cache 16
 - utilization of the 3590 Storage Capacity 16
 - virtual device characteristics 13

- Tape Library Dataserver *(continued)*
 - virtual tape server *(continued)*
 - virtual volume characteristics 13
 - volume requirements 24
 - volume restrictions 25
- tape volume information (TVI)
 - description 153
 - mapping macro 154, 157
- tape volumes, entering 78
- test volume eligibility (TVE)
 - CBRXLCS macro syntax 128
 - description 110
 - return and reason codes 129, 130, 139
 - test volume eligibility 128, 130, 132

U

- usage requirements
 - CBRUXCUA 165, 166
 - CBRUXEJC 182
 - CBRUXENT 174
 - CBRUXVNL 194

V

- VARY SMS command
 - tape drive 75
 - tape library 73
- verify
 - prerequisites 45
 - testing volume eligibility (TVE) 110
 - volume location 64, 286
 - VTs logical volume entries 287
- virtual tape server
 - description 11
 - exporting logical volumes 27
 - importing logical volumes 19, 22
 - logical library partitioning 16
 - peer-to-peer data (PTPDATA) 137
 - peer-to-peer mode control (PTPMC) 133
 - stacked volumes 14, 16
 - tape volume cache 16
 - using with GDPS 18
 - utilization of the 3590 storage capacity 16
 - virtual device characteristics 13
 - virtual volume characteristics 13
- volume
 - altering the volume record 67, 289
 - auditing a tape library 286
 - changing from private to scratch 113
 - changing from scratch to private 113
 - changing to non-SMS-managed 68
 - checking volser for uniqueness 22
 - confirm audit request 287
 - confirming private to scratch alteration 293
 - defining scratch threshold limits 261
 - defining the eject default attribute 261
 - displaying the cartridge loader scratch media type 81
 - displaying volume status 97
 - ejecting a specific volume 75

- volume (*continued*)
 - ejecting from a library 295
 - entering a tape cartridge (automated tape library dataserwer) 19
 - error status, audit results 288
 - ISMF mountable tape volume application 276
 - alter entry panel 289
 - selection entry panel 277
 - volume list selection menu 276
 - media type descriptions 261
 - private volume description 7
 - query volume residence (QVR) 110
 - record 7
 - recovering volume catalogs 66
 - recovering volume entries 66
 - requirements 24
 - restrictions 25
 - retrieving from a disabled ATLDS 67
 - scratch tape description 7
 - serial number criteria 278
 - setting the cartridge loader scratch media type 81
 - sharing 43
 - software volume categories 35
 - specifying volume location 76
 - tape types 7
 - tape volume information description 153
 - testing volume eligibility (TVE) 110
 - Volume not in Library Installation Exit 69, 182
- volume expiration date 78
- volume not in library installation exit 69
 - creating the exit 57
 - description 182
 - parameter list 188, 192
 - return codes
 - device allocation 193
 - job step processing 192, 193
 - library mount 193, 194
 - usage requirements 194

Readers' Comments — We'd Like to Hear from You

z/OS

**DFSMS Object Access Method Planning,
Installation, and Storage Administration
Guide for Tape Libraries**

Publication No. SC35-0427-01

Overall, how satisfied are you with the information in this book?

	Very Satisfied	Satisfied	Neutral	Dissatisfied	Very Dissatisfied
Overall satisfaction	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

How satisfied are you that the information in this book is:

	Very Satisfied	Satisfied	Neutral	Dissatisfied	Very Dissatisfied
Accurate	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Complete	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Easy to find	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Easy to understand	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Well organized	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Applicable to your tasks	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Please tell us how we can improve this book:

Thank you for your responses. May we contact you? ☐ Yes ☐ No

When you send comments to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute your comments in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Name

Address

Company or Organization

Phone No.

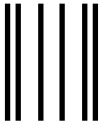


Cut or Fold
Along Line

Fold and Tape

Please do not staple

Fold and Tape



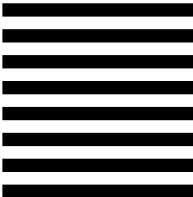
NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED IN THE
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL

FIRST-CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 40 ARMONK, NEW YORK

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

International Business Machines Corporation
Information Development
Department 61C
9000 South Rita Road
Tucson, AZ 85775-4401



Fold and Tape

Please do not staple

Fold and Tape

Cut or Fold
Along Line



Program Number: 5694-A01



Printed in the United States of America
on recycled paper containing 10%
recovered post-consumer fiber.

SC35-0427-01

